



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Edw T 1718.72.133



Harvard College Library

FROM

Mrs F. H. Sleeper

Cambridge

31 July 1915



3 2044 102 775 707

Eduet 1718.72.133



**Harvard College Library**

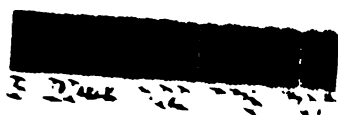
**FROM**

Mrs F. H. Sleeper

Cambridge

31 July 1915







**AHN'S METHOD**  
**OF LEARNING THE**  
**GERMAN LANGUAGE.**

**REVISED**

**BY**

**GUSTAVUS FISCHER.**

**FIRST (PRACTICAL) COURSE.**

**FOURTH EDITION.**

**NEW YORK:**  
**E. Steiger.**

**1872.**

Educ T 1718.72.133

~~Educ T 1268.71.5~~



Mrs. F. H. Sleeper,  
Cambridge.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1871, by  
H. Steiger,  
in the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

E. STEIGER, NEW YORK,  
Printer and Electrotypist.

## P R E F A C E.

---

Ahn's METHOD OF LEARNING THE GERMAN LANGUAGE consists of a Practical and a Theoretical Course. The former contains progressive exercises in both languages, beginning with the simplest elementary forms, and in the natural progress of the course gradually expanding with the different forms of inflection and the most important parts of Syntax, till the student may be considered sufficiently familiar with the language to begin reading German text. The different exercises are preceded by special vocabularies and as many rules as the student would need to render the exercises without mistakes. The First Part of the Practical Course is preliminary, being intended to give the beginner a GENERAL idea of German forms and constructions. The Second Part reviews the preliminary exercises in a more complete and systematic manner; and the Third Part chiefly contains exercises on tenses, moods, reflexive and compound verbs, conjunctions, prepositions and syntactical idioms. A general vocabulary, appended to the Course, facilitates the rendering of words that have already occurred in previous exercises without being repeated in the special vocabularies.

For the gradual acquirement of German handwriting a special, and—we hope—efficient provision has been made at the close of the Course, designed to accompany the single exercises, but so that the beginner may or may not make use of it, the Course itself being in neither case interfered with. Pronunciation has been treated in a preliminary chapter.

The Theoretical Course contains a brief and systematic abstract of grammatical rules, to be studied either separately, or in connection with the Practical Course. Paradigms have been given no more than necessity required, but those given are complete. Either Course will occupy no more than one

**College-Term.** In schools a longer time should be devoted to the study of each Course.

The Editor has in the First and Second parts of the Practical Course mainly reproduced Ahn's work as it was originally written by him, but the numerous errors and practical incongruities and inconveniences have been carefully corrected. Many sentences in the exercises have been rejected, and others have been introduced whenever it seemed necessary. Many new rules have been added, since in the original work no account was taken of the method of instruction peculiar to our country. The Third Part of the Practical Course, the weakest in Ahn's original Method, has been entirely re-written in such a way as Ahn probably would have adopted, had he written for this country and at this day. The stock of words used, has been greatly enlarged, since the small number of words in Ahn's Method by which he builds up and rebuilds all his sentences, are always leading to great practical inconveniences, however desirable it may be to confine first beginners to as few words as possible.

With the same view, the whole Theoretical Course, which in no wise comes up to the requirement of this country and of this time, has been entirely written anew, and only the general division of the work into chapters has been retained. In this Theoretical Course the grammatical material has been selected in accordance with the principle that the student should master the leading facts of the language in the directest and plainest way possible, in order to arrive by the shortest road at the reading of text. Due regard has been always paid to 'conversational language' in the Practical Course, while in the Theoretical Course the preparation of the student for 'reading' has been the main object.

We deemed it necessary to add a complete index referring to both Courses, not doubting that this addition will meet the approval of all that shall use the work.

An absolute or even relative 'completeness' cannot be expected in a work of this kind. Indeed, no grammar extant — be considered 'complete.' No grammarian can do more — select 'something' out of the inexhaustible store of the

living language, discover the secret and silent laws which have produced the forms of this 'something,' and call a collection of such laws 'a grammar.' How many details should be thus presented, depends on the tact of the grammarian. But to the 'end of language' no grammarian has yet come, and in this sense all grammars are (more or less) incomplete.

Whether *we* have been successful in *our* selections, whether or not we have omitted many things that ought to have been explained, and explained many things that ought to have been omitted, the reader must decide. Indeed, in this method of 'selection' consists almost the whole art of a grammarian. In the present work many rules will be found which will be in vain looked for in other grammars, and many will not be found which other grammarians are in the habit of presenting. Whatever may be thought of such deviations from the accustomed ruts (often regarded as almost sacred with a peculiar superstition), we always had our reasons for either the omission or the addition, which reasons, although they have nowhere been presented, the attentive reader will without difficulty discover 'between the lines'. But we hope that no essential law of the language will be missed, and that both the teacher and the student will find explicitness in our different statements to be commensurate with the lesser or greater difficulty of the subject. A glance at any of the different chapters, for instance those on adjectives, prepositions, conjunctions and the subjunctive mood, will fully bear out these remarks. The terminology adopted is the one which is universally used in Germany. Nobody will now find fault with such expressions as 'STRONG and WEAK verbs or nouns'. All recent German grammarians and lexicographers (we believe without a solitary exception) have adopted these terms\*, and

---

\* The expressions **STRONG** and **WEAK** in reference to declension and conjugation have been introduced by JACOB GRIMM in the first edition of his German Grammar (1817). The following ideas have led to the universal adoption of these terms. A **STRONG** verb has strength enough in its root to dispense with the help of auxiliary endings in the imperfect (*ſchlagen—ſchlug*); but the roots of **WEAK** verbs have no such power, attaching auxiliary endings for that purpose (*loben—lobte*). A **STRONG** NOUN or ADJECTIVE is one which forms distinctive endings, so that it may be declined without the help of an article, and yet show its case, gender and number (*ſiſch—ſiſches*, etc.), while

we consider it greatly reprehensible to substitute for 'technical terms' expressions made by ourselves for whatever reason; not to mention the inconvenience arising from the use, along with our grammars, of German dictionaries in which the familiarity of the reader with such terms is presupposed. The owner of the WORD ought to determine its NAME. Should we not be greatly astonished, if in an English grammar, written in Germany, *our* terms 'POSSESSIVE CASE, PROGRESSIVE FORM, POTENTIAL MOOD, etc.' were ignored, and replaced by terms unintelligible to us? The reading pieces in Ahn's original *Method* are replaced by other pieces which seemed to us better adapted to the wants of the beginner.

We close with the remark that (except the parts of Ahn's original work mentioned above) no use has been made and no authority followed of any existing grammar. We have tried to develop the different laws of the language from the material which during a close study of German literature for almost a quarter of a century, has accumulated under our hands. The form and wording given to our rules and their methodical arrangement are the results of our experience, during an almost equal period, as a teacher of German in College, in schools of both sexes, and as an instructor of private pupils. We doubt not that errors will be detected, and we shall be grateful to have our attention called to them.

---

**WEAK** nouns and adjectives do not distinguish cases or numbers, and hence must have an auxiliary article or other word to show in what case, number or gender they are placed (*der gute, des guten, dem guten, etc.; des Hirten, dem Hirten, etc.*). Formerly the strong verbs were improperly called **IRREGULAR** or **OLD** verbs.

NEW BRUNSWICK, April 18th, 1871.

***Gustavus Fischer.***



## The Pronunciation.

### I. THE ALPHABET.

The German Alphabet is composed of the following 26 letters:

Written.	Printed.	Written.	Printed.	Written.	Printed.
a <i>A a</i>	A a	j <i>J j</i>	J j	s <i>S s</i>	S s
b <i>B b</i>	B b	k <i>K k</i>	K k	s <i>ſ ſ</i>	ſ ſ
c <i>C c</i>	C c	l <i>L l</i>	L l	t <i>T t</i>	T t
d <i>D d</i>	D d	m <i>M m</i>	M m	u <i>U u</i>	U u
e <i>E e</i>	E e	n <i>N n</i>	N n	v <i>V v</i>	V v
f <i>F f</i>	F f	o <i>O o</i>	O o	w <i>W w</i>	W w
g <i>G g</i>	G g	p <i>P p</i>	P p	x <i>X x</i>	X x
h <i>H h</i>	H h	q <i>Q q</i>	Q q	y <i>Y y</i>	Y y
i <i>I i</i>	I i	r <i>R r</i>	R r	z <i>Z z</i>	Z z

There are three softened vowels (Umlaute):

ä	<i>Ä ä</i>	Ä ä	ä ä	ö	<i>Ö ö</i>	Ö ö	ö ö	ü	<i>Ü ü</i>	Ü ü	ü ü
	(Äe)				(Öe)				(Üe)		

### COMPOUND AND DOUBLE CONSONANTS.

ch	<i>Ch ch</i>	ck	<i>Ck ck</i>	st	<i>St st</i>
ss	<i>Ss ss</i>	ß	<i>ß ß</i>	sch	<i>Sch sch</i>
		ff	<i>Ff ff</i>	tz	<i>Tz tz</i>

\* or *J*

## II. SIMPLE VOWELS.

1. Every vowel is pronounced uniformly in whatever words of the language it may occur. But every vowel-sound has a long and a short pronunciation:

2. Vowels followed by two consonants or a double consonant are generally pronounced short; followed by one consonant they are generally long.

3. *A*, *a* long is pronounced almost like *a* in *father*: *Vater*, *laben*, *Frage*.

Short *a* has no exact equivalent in English: *Alter*, *banfen*, *Gasse*.

4. *E*, *e* long is pronounced almost like *a* in *care*, as the first syllables in the words *Rebe*, *geben*, *Efel*.

Short *e* is pronounced like *e* in *end*, as: *Geld*, *Sett*, and the first syllables of *besen* and *Ende*.

The letter *e* in final syllables and in inflectional endings has generally the English obscure sound, as the two last syllables in *lebende*, *sanfterer*, and the final syllables in *Vater*, *Garten*, *Tage*. There is no other obscure sound in German but *e*.

5. *I*, *i* long is pronounced like English *ee* (*tree*), as: *Tiger*, *Bibel*, *mir*.

Short *i* has the sound of *i* in *ill* or *in*: *Irthum*, *finden*, *Kind*.

6. *O*, *o* long is pronounced like English *o* in *hope*: *Ofen*, *oder*, *Pol*, *roth*.

Short *o* has no exact equivalent in English. It keeps a middle between English *u* in *sun* and *o* in *hope*: *kommen*, *Gold*, *jollen*.

7. *U*, *u* long is pronounced like English *o* in *move*: *Blut*, *Fuß*, *Bruder*, *gut*.

Short *u* sounds like *u* in *full* or double *oo* in *good*: *Mund*, *Thurm*, *Butter*, *mußte*.

8. *Ij*, *ij* occurs in modern orthography only in words taken from the Greek language, and is pronounced as German *i* would be in its place: *System*, *Styl*.

## III. SOFTENED VOWELS.

1. *Ä*, *ä* long is pronounced as German long *e* (English *a* in *care*): *Äbel*, *Väter*, *Vär*, *stäts* (or *stets*).

Short ä has exactly the sound of German short e: äfter, Gärten, Rälte.

2. Ö, ö long has no equivalent sound in English; it is pronounced as French *eu* in *feu*: böfe, tönen, Göthe.

Short ö has no equivalent in English; it is pronounced as French *eu* in *jeune*: können, völlig, Körner.

3. Ü, ü long has no equivalent sound in English; it is pronounced like French *u* in *rue*: üben, müde, Güte.

Short ü has no equivalent in English and is pronounced like French *u* in *nul*: Müller, ftürmifch, wünfchen.

OBSERVATION.—In order to pronounce ö the mouth must be placed in the position in which o is pronounced; but the vowel e (German) must be sounded. To pronounce ü, we sound the letter i (German), having the mouth in the position to pronounce u (German).

#### IV. DOUBLE VOWELS.

They are: aa, ee, oo. They are sounded like a, e, o long: Saaf, Meer, Moos. Guard against pronouncing the double vowels ee and oo like English ee and oo.

#### V. DIPHTHONGS.

They are: ai, au, ei, eu, äu and the obsolete ah and eh. The diphthong ou occurs only in words taken from the French, and is then pronounced like German long u, as: Courage, Tour, Louis. The diphthongs oi and oh exist in some proper nouns, and are pronounced like English oi: Voifenburg, Bohm. All diphthongs have only a long sound.

1. Ai (ai) and ei are pronounced alike, and sound like English i in *wine*: Raifer, Mai, feiden, Wein.

2. Au (au) is pronounced like English *ou* in *house*: Baum, laufen, blau.

3. Eu (eu) and äu are pronounced alike, and have no exact equivalent in English. Their pronunciation comes nearest to English oi in *boil*: Freund, Eule, Feuer, Säule, Bäume, Gräuel (Greuel).

## VI. SIGNS OF LENGTHENED VOWELS.

1. Frequently the length of vowels is marked by certain letters, connected with them. These are: 1) the consonant *h*, 2) the vowel *e*, 3) the repetition of the same vowel.

2. The letter *h* as lengthening sign (in which case it, of course, is not pronounced) occurs after all the vowels: *mañlen*, *Fehler*, *ihr*, *wohl*, *Uhr*; *Ähre*, *Röhler*, *Mühle*.

3. The letter *e* as lengthening sign occurs only after *i*. The combination *ie* is always pronounced like *i* (German) long: *regieren*, *Sieg*, *viel*, *dieser*.

**Obs.**—But final *ie* in some words taken from foreign languages is pronounced like English *ta* in *Virginia*: *Familie*, *Julie*, *Elie*. The same is the case in regard to the endings *ier* of national nouns and *ien*, as: *Spanier*, *Gallier*, *Asien*.

4. The doubling of vowels takes place with *a*, *e* and *o*, but not with *i*, *u*, or the softened vowels and the diphthongs.

**Obs.**—Since very frequently the length of vowels is not indicated at all (see the examples above, No. II.), all these lengthening signs are deemed superfluous, and modern orthography has a tendency to diminish them, and spell words with the simple vowels only.

## VII. CONSONANTS.

1. *B*, *b* is pronounced as in English, but *b* final has the sound of *p*: *ab*, *Weib*, *Trieb*.

2. *C*, *c* before *e*, *i*, *h*, *ä* and *ö* is pronounced like *ts*: *Cäfar*, *Citron*, *Cylinder*, *Cölibat*, *Ceder*.

Before consonants, the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *ü*, and at the end of words it is pronounced like *f*: *Carneval*, *Cocarde*, *Creole*, *Clerus*, *Curie*, *Cürassier*, *Pic*.

**Obs.**—The letter *c* is only used in words taken from foreign languages. Many writers have commenced to discard the use of *c*, if pronounced like *f*, and substitute the letter *f* for it. Words taken from the Greek should be always spelled with *f*: *Aritil*, *Socrates*.

3. *Ch*, *ch*, in the beginning of words, occurs only in words taken from foreign languages, and is generally pronounced like *s*: *Chor*, *Christ*, *Charakter*. But before *i* it has the German

aspirate sound (see below): China, Chirurg. In words taken from the French, it is pronounced like *sh*, when it has this pronunciation in French: Chef, Chauffee, Charlatan.

In the middle or at the end of the word its pronunciation is twofold, depending on the preceding letter. Neither has an equivalent in English. It has a guttural sound after *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*: Dach, machen, Koch, pochen, Buch, suchen, auch, rauchen. It has an aspirate sound after any other letter or diphthong: Blech, stehen, Zeichen, riechen, Licht, mächtig, möchte, flüchtig, räuchern, auch, Mädchen, welcher, Köschen.

Chs or chs is generally pronounced like *x* (*ks*): Wachs, sechs, Fuchs, Büchse. But if *s* or *ß* belongs to an inflectional ending, or the *ch* belongs to a different radical in which the following *s* or *ß* is not contained, the *ch* has either the aspirate or guttural sound: des Buchs (genitive of Buch), höchst (superlative of hoch), nächst (superlative of nahe), wachsam (from wachen and sam), nachsehen (from nach and sehen).

4. D, ð at the end of words is pronounced like *t*: Reid, Kind, wild, bald.

5. G, g at the beginning of a syllable is pronounced like *g* in *good*: gehen, groß, Wagen, legen.

At the end and the middle of syllables the pronunciation is not fully settled. After *i* and *ie* all give it the aspirate pronunciation of *ch*: selig, Sieg, siegte. After *n* at the end of words it has the pronunciation of *k*: Gesang, lang, Ring. After other letters some pronounce it invariably like *g* in *good*, while others give it the pronunciation of *ch*, either aspirate or guttural according to the previous letter. Both pronunciations have equally good authority: Tag, Weg, legt, ragt, beugt, säugt, Vogt, Trug.

Obs.—Some pronounce *g*, if between two vowels, with a sound between *ch* and *g* (hard). This pronunciation is inelegant and has no good authority. In Segen. Regen, wagen, the *g* ought to be pronounced exactly as in *good*. It is best for beginners to pronounce *g* in all instances as *g* in *good*, except when it is final after *n* or *i*. The student is then sure to have always an unobjectionable pronunciation.

If *ng* is not final it has the pronunciation of English *ng* in *singer*, *bringer* or *springer*, not as *ng* in *longer*, *stronger* or *finger*, as: Finger, lange, Menge, Fingling, fangen.

Edinet 1718.72.133



Harvard College Library

FROM

Mrs F. H. Sleeper

Cambridge

31 July 1915



3 2044 102 775 707

Edw T 1718.72.133



Harvard College Library

FROM

Mrs F. H. Sleeper

Cambridge

31 July 1915





3 2044 102 775 707



**AHN'S METHOD**  
**OF LEARNING THE**  
**GERMAN LANGUAGE.**

**REVISED**

**BY**

**GUSTAVUS FISCHER.**

**FIRST (PRACTICAL) COURSE.**

**FOURTH EDITION.**

**NEW YORK:**

**E. Steiger.**

**1872.**

13.

<b>Klein</b> , little, small;	<b>kleiner</b> , smaller;
<b>alt</b> , old;	<b>älter</b> , older;
<b>groß</b> , great;	<b>größer</b> , greater;
<b>jung</b> , young;	<b>jünger</b> , younger;
<b>fleißig</b> , diligent;	<b>fleißiger</b> , more diligent.

**Nützlich**, useful; **unglücklich**, unhappy; **der Hund**, the dog; **die Katze**, the cat; **die Sonne**, the sun; **der Mond**, the moon; **als**, than, as.

Obs.—In forming the comparative of an adjective, the radical vowel a generally changes into ä; o into ö; and u into ü. All comparatives, without exception, are formed by adding *er* to the positive.

Mein Bruder ist älter als ich. Ich bin jünger als mein Freund. Karl ist größer als Luise. Dieser Mann ist größer als wir. Der Hund ist treuer als die Katze. Das Pferd ist schöner und nützlicher als der Hund. Dieses Kind ist fleißiger als du. Sie sind glücklicher als Ihr Bruder. Karl ist stärker als ich. Wir sind zufriedener als ihr. Luise ist höflicher als deine Schwester. Ist Ihr Bruder jünger als Sie? Er ist älter, aber kleiner als ich und Sie. Er ist unglücklicher als Sie, aber Sie sind trauriger als er.

14.

My brother is more diligent than thou. Thou art not younger than he. He is taller and stronger than I. Your son is younger than this child. The moon is smaller than the sun. Art thou older than I? This dog is finer than this cat. Your sister is politer than you. I am more contented than thou. You are richer than we. We are more unhappy than you. This dog is more useful than your horse. Is your sister older than my mother?

15.

<b>Gut</b> , good;	<b>besser</b> , better;
<b>hoch</b> , high;	<b>höher</b> , higher;

*Demonstrative pronouns*: { **dieser**, diese, dieses, this, this one;  
                                  { **jener**, jene, jenes, that, that one.

**Das Eisen**, the iron; **das Blei**, the lead; **der Stahl**, the steel; **die Erde**, the earth; **schwer**, heavy; **hart**, hard; **theuer**, dear; **so**, so, as; **zu**, too.

Obs.—Demonstrative and all other adjective pronouns are placed in the gender of the nouns to which they refer.

As in the second part of a comparison is translated by als; in the first part by so.

Mein Buch ist schöner als jenes. Meine Feder ist besser als diese. Der Stahl ist härter als das Eisen. Dieser Berg ist höher als jener. Die Kage ist nicht so treu als der Hund. Das Blei ist nicht so hart als das Eisen. Ist Ihr Haus nicht größer als jenes? Ist das Blei theurer als das Eisen? Der Mond ist nicht so groß als die Erde. Dieses Kind ist fleißiger als jenes. Jene Frau ist ärmer als diese. Unser Garten ist nicht so lang und schön als dieser.

16.

(The) lead is heavier than (the) iron. This tree is not so high as that. Is this book not better than that? Our garden is smaller than this one. This house is higher than that one. (The) iron is more useful than (the) lead. I am not so old as he. (The) lead is not so dear as (the) steel. Our town is larger and finer than this one. We are not so rich as this man, but we are more contented than he.

17.

<i>Singular.</i>	ich habe, I have;
	du hast, thou hast;
	er, sie hat, he, she has;
<i>Plural.</i>	wir haben, we have;
	ihr habt, Sie haben, you have;
	sie haben, they have.

Die Uhr, the watch; das Messer, the knife; Recht, right; Unrecht, wrong; Heinrich, Henry; Ludwig, Lewis; für, for; auch, also; warum, why.—I am right, I am wrong, ich habe Recht, ich habe Unrecht (not ich bin Recht or Unrecht).

Ich habe Recht. Du hast Unrecht. Ich habe ein Buch. Du hast eine Feder. Mein Bruder hat eine Uhr. Wir haben ein Haus. Ihr habt ein Pferd. Karl und Luise haben eine Kage. Hast du eine Schwester? Hat dieser Mann eine Tochter? Habt ihr ein Kind? Diese Uhr ist für meine Mutter. Diese Feder ist für Karl. Haben Sie noch Ihre Mutter? Warum hast du mein Messer? Ich habe dein Messer nicht.

18.

Charles, hast thou my pen? Louisa, hast thou my book? Henry has thy pen, and Lewis has thy book. Thou art right. My son is wrong. We have a book and a pen. Have you also a horse and a watch? This knife is for Henry. Is this watch for thy mother? Has your friend a knife? Charles and Lewis have a horse. Has your father still a sister? Is this flower for my daughter? Are you right or wrong? Have you my pen? I have not your pen.

19.

*Past Participles:* gekauft, bought; verkauft, sold; gefunden, found; verloren, lost; genommen, taken; gesehen, seen.

*Obs.*—In all principal sentences the past participle is detached from the auxiliary and placed at the end of the sentence. — Noch nicht (not nicht noch), not yet.

Ich habe mein Buch verloren. Hast du mein Messer gefunden? Ich habe dein Messer nicht gefunden. Wo ist meine Feder? Hast ihr meine Feder? Wir haben deine Feder nicht. Mein Vater hat dieses Pferd gekauft. Wir haben unser Haus verkauft. Wo hast du meine Uhr gefunden? Warum haben Sie meine Uhr genommen? Ich habe Ihre Mutter und Ihre Schwester gesehen. Warum hat Ihr Vater dieses Haus nicht gekauft? Hat dein Bruder meine Feder genommen? Er hat deine Feder nicht genommen. Haben Sie meine Uhr noch nicht gefunden?

20.

Where hast thou found this book? Have you lost your pen? Has your father bought this horse? Why have you sold your watch? Why have you not taken my pen? My brother has found thy knife. We have seen thy mother. I have not yet seen this woman. Charles and Lewis have lost their mother; they are very sad.

21.

<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>	<i>Objective.</i>
Der Vater,	den Vater,	the father;
dieser Vater,	diesen Vater,	this father.

Der König, the king; der Hut, the hat; der Stocß, the stick, the cane; der Brief, the letter; oft, often; schon, already.

*Past Participles*: geschrieben, written; erhalten, received.

**Obs.**—The direct object is placed in the accusative case. The accusative in the neuter and feminine is the same as the nominative.—If the article or pronoun belongs to two coordinate nouns of different genders, the article and pronoun must be repeated in German before every noun: der Vater und die Mutter, the father and mother.

Ich habe den König gesehen. Hast du den Brief erhalten? Meine Schwester hat den Brief noch nicht geschrieben. Heinrich hat den Stocß verloren. Mein Vater hat diesen Garten und dieses Haus gekauft. Wo habt ihr diesen Hund und diese Kage gefunden? Ich habe diesen Mann schon oft gesehen. Warum haben Sie diesen Hut genommen? Wir haben diesen Brief gefunden. Hat dein Bruder diesen Stocß verloren?

22.

We have sold the house and the garden. Have you bought this dog and this horse? I have seen the man and woman, the son and daughter. I have not written this letter. Where have you found this book and cane? Has thy brother bought this tree? This letter is for this man. Hast thou lost this hat? Hast thou not taken this book and pen? Hast thou already seen the king? I have not yet seen the king.

23.

<i>Nom.</i>	ein Garten,	{ a garden.	<i>Nom.</i>	mein Hund,	{ my dog.
<i>Accus.</i>	einen Garten,		<i>Accus.</i>	meinen Hund,	

Der Vogel, the bird; der Stuhl, the chair; der Tisch, the table; der Bleistift, the pencil; der Nachbar, the neighbor; froh, vergnügt, glad.

**Obs.**—The accusative masculine sing. of all adjective pronouns (See No. 9, 11, 15) is formed by the ending *en*. The *e* of this ending is generally dropped in *unser* and *euer* (*unfern*, *euern*).—The preposition *für* requires the next noun in the accusative.

Mein Bruder ist sehr froh; er hat einen Vogel. Hast du einen Brief erhalten? Ich habe meinen Hut verloren. Haben Sie meinen Hund schon gesehen? Wir haben einen Tisch und Stuhl gekauft.

Mein Bruder hat deinen Stock genommen. Wo hast du deinen Bleistift gekauft? Wir haben unsern Vater und unsere Mutter verloren. Ich habe Ihren Brief nicht erhalten. Hat dein Bruder unsern Garten und unser Haus schon gesehen? Unser Nachbar hat den König gesehen. Hast du diesen Vogel gekauft oder jenen?

24.

We have lost our dog. This man has lost a son and a daughter. Where have you found my pencil? Have you already seen my brother and mother? I have bought a hat for my sister. Our neighbor has found thy knife and cane. Where hast thou bought this table? Thy brother has taken my chair. Have you written a letter? We have found this stick and that one. We have not seen your pen. I have written this letter for my father.

25.

<i>Nom.</i>	sein, seine, sein,	} his, its.	ihr, ihre, ihr,	} her.
<i>Accus.</i>	seinen, seine, sein,			

Gelesen, read (past participle); gekannt, known; der Onkel, the uncle; die Tante, the aunt; der Fingerhut, the thimble; die Schere, the scissors; Frau, wife, woman.

Mein Freund ist traurig; sein Vater und seine Mutter sind krank. Meine Tante ist zufrieden; ihr Sohn und ihre Tochter sind sehr fleißig. Heinrich hat seinen Stock, seine Uhr und sein Messer verloren. Luise hat ihren Fingerhut, ihre Feder und ihr Buch verloren. Guer Onkel hat sein Haus und seinen Garten verkauft. Diese Frau hat ihren Mann und ihr Kind verloren. Diese Tochter hat einen Brief für ihre Mutter geschrieben. Karl hat seinen Vater nicht gekannt. Die Tante hat deinen und meinen Brief gelesen.

26.

The father has lost his son. The mother has lost her daughter. My uncle has sold his watch. Our aunt has sold her scissors. Henry has found his pencil. Louisa has found her thimble. I have seen this man and his son, this woman and her daughter. My mother has lost her pen and her knife.



My brother has taken his hat. I have seen your aunt; has she still her horse? This man is very sad; he has lost his wife. Charles has written a letter for his father. My aunt has bought this book for her son.

27.

*Nominative.* die Mutter, the mother; diese Mutter, this mother;  
*Genitive.* der Mutter, of the mother; dieser Mutter, of this mother.

Die Magd, the maid-servant; die Königin, the queen; die Nachbarin, the (female) neighbor. *Past Participles:* angekommen, arrived; abgereist, departed.

Die Mutter der Königin ist angekommen. Der Vater der Nachbarin ist abgereist. Ich habe den Garten der Tante gesehen. Haben Sie den Bleistift der Schwester gefunden? Diese Frau ist die Schwester der Nachbarin. Dieser Mann ist der Bruder der Magd. Das Kind dieser Frau ist immer krank.

28.

The hat of the mother is beautiful. The sister of the queen is not beautiful. Is the father of the servant arrived? Are you the brother of the (female) neighbor? I am the sister of this woman. Hast thou taken the chair of the sister? Have you seen the horse of the aunt? We have known the father of this servant. The pencil of this woman is too small.

29.

*Masc.* *Nom.* der Vater, the father; dieser Vater, this father;  
*Gen.* des Vaters, of the father; dieses Vaters, of this father;  
*Neuter.* *Nom.* das Kind, the child; dieses Kind, this child;  
*Gen.* des Kindes, of the child; dieses Kindes, of this child.

Der Schuhmacher, the shoemaker; der Schneider, the tailor; der Gärtner, the gardener; der Kaufmann, the merchant; der Arzt, the physician; das Zimmer, the room; das Volk, the people; der Herrscher, the ruler.

*Obs.*—All masculine and neuter nouns ending in *er, el, en* take *s* in the genitive singular. All other neuter and most of the other masculine nouns, not ending in *e*, take *es* or *s* in the genitive. Feminine nouns are indeclinable in the singular.

Die Magd des Schneiders ist krank. Der Sohn des Nachbarn ist noch sehr jung. Die Blume des Gärtners ist sehr schön. Der Gar-

ten des Königs ist sehr groß. Der König ist der Herrscher des Volkes. Die Frau des Arztes ist immer zufrieden. Ich habe den Garten des Onkels gesehen. Wir haben das Pferd des Kaufmanns gekauft. Hast du den Bleistift des Bruders genommen? Wo ist die Magd des Schuhmachers? Die Thüre des Zimmers ist immer offen. Die Tochter dieses Mannes ist abgereist. Wir haben die Mutter dieses Kindes gekannt. Der Garten dieses Hauses ist klein.

30.

This man is the brother of the gardener. This woman is the sister of the shoemaker. This child is the son of the tailor. The door of the house is not open. I have seen the son and daughter of the physician. We have seen the horse of the merchant. The servant of the neighbor is the sister of this gardener. Why is the door of this room open? We have known the son of this merchant. The dog of the neighbor is faithful. The mother of this child is arrived.

31.

<i>Nom.</i> ein Vater,	eine Mutter,	ein Kind;
<i>Gen.</i> eines Vaters,	einer Mutter,	eines Kindes.

Der Regenschirm, the umbrella; das Federmesser, the penknife; gestern, yesterday.

Obs.—The pronouns *mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer*, are declined like *ein*, *eine, ein*; *jener* (that) is declined like *dieser*.

Sind Sie der Sohn eines Arztes? Ich bin der Sohn eines Kaufmanns. Haben Sie das Haus meines Nachbars gekauft? Der Bruder deines Freundes ist gestern angekommen. Wo ist der Regenschirm deines Onkels? Hast du das Zimmer meiner Schwester gesehen? Wir haben den Brief deiner Mutter gelesen. Mein Onkel hat das Haus Ihres Vaters gekauft. Ich habe den Stod Ihres Bruders verloren. Der Garten unsers Nachbars ist sehr groß. Unsere Magd ist die Tochter eures Gärtners. Wo ist der Regenschirm unserer Mutter? Karl hat den Fingerhut seiner Schwester genommen. Luise hat das Federmesser ihrer Tante genommen. Die Mutter jenes Kindes ist krank. Der Sohn jener Frau hat mein Messer gefunden.

32.

I have found the hat of the child. Are you the servant of my uncle? I am the servant of your tailor. The penknife of thy brother is very good. The pen of thy sister is not good. The house of our aunt is large. Henry has lost the letter of his father. Louisa has found the pen of her brother. Is the garden of our uncle as fine as this one? (See No. 15.) We have found the hat of your neighbor's son (the hat of the son of your neighbor). Lewis has read the letter of his friend. Louisa has bought a flower for a child of her sister.

33.

*Nom.* der Bruder, the brother;

*Dat.* dem Bruder, to the brother;

*Nom.* das Buch, the book;                      die Schwester, the sister;

*Dat.* dem Buche, to the book;                der Schwester, to the sister.

SYNOPSIS.

<i>Nom.</i> der, die, das,	dieser, diese, dieses;
<i>Gen.</i> des, der, des,	dieses, dieser, dieses;
<i>Dat.</i> dem, der, dem,	diesem, dieser, diesem;
<i>Acc.</i> den, die, das,	diesen, diese, dieses.

*Gehört*, belongs. *Past Participles*: geliehen, lent; gegeben, given; geschickt, sent; versprochen, promised; gezeigt, shown. *Die Freundin*, the (female) friend.

Obs. 1.—The dative singular of nouns ending in *er, el, en* takes no ending. The dative singular of nouns that take *es* or *s* in the genitive has the ending *e*, but this ending may be always dropped.

2. The dative generally precedes the accusative.

3. The English emphatic form of the verb, formed by the auxiliary *to do* must always be rendered by the common form in German, without any auxiliary: *Does he belong* (belongs he), *gehört er?* *He does not belong* (he belongs not), *er gehört nicht*.

Dieses Haus gehört dem Onkel meines Nachbars. Jener Garten gehört der Tante meines Freundes. Ich habe dem Vater einen Brief geschrieben. Sie hat der Freundin ihrer Schwester eine Blume gegeben. Karl hat der Schwester sein Federmesser geliehen. Hast du dem Arzte mein Buch geschickt? Ich habe diesem Kinde einen Vogel versprochen. Heinrich hat dieser Frau unsern Regenschirm geliehen.

Luiſe hat dieſem Manne unſern Garten gezeigt. Ich habe meine Feder dem Freunde meines Bruders gegeben. Dieſes Buch gehört meinem Vater nicht.

34.

This hat belongs to the gardener. This house belongs to the mother of my friend. I have written to my uncle and aunt. My sister has lent her thimble to the friend (fem.) of your brother. My uncle has sent a watch to the son of your neighbor (fem.). Have you given a chair to this child? Have you lent an umbrella to this woman? Does this garden belong to the king? No, it belongs to the sister of the king. We have sold our horse to the friend of our uncle. Does this knife belong to this or that servant?

35.

*Nom.* ein Buch, a book;            eine Feder, a pen;  
*Dat.* einem Buche, to a book;    einer Feder, to a pen.

Der Vetter, der Couſin, the couſin; die Baſe, die Couſine, the (female) couſin; Amalie, Amelia; die Gärtnerin, the (female) gardener or the gardener's wife.

A book of my father's, } ein Buch meines Vaters;  
a book of my father,    }  
a book of my mother's, } ein Buch meiner Mutter.  
a book of my mother,    }

SYNOPSIS.

<i>Nom.</i> ein, eine, ein,	mein, meine, mein,	unſer, unſere, unſer;
<i>Gen.</i> eines, einer, eines,	meines, meiner, meines,	unſeres, unſerer, unſeres;
<i>Dat.</i> einem, einer, einem,	meinem, meiner, meinem,	unſerem, unſerer, unſerem;
<i>Acc.</i> einen, eine, ein,	meinen, meine, mein,	unſeren, unſere, unſer.*

Dieſer Garten gehört einem Schuhmacher. Dieſes Meſſer gehört einer Magd. Luiſe hat meinem Vater einen Brief geſchrieben. Heinrich hat meiner Mutter eine Blume gegeben. Ich habe Ihrem Onkel mein Pferd geliehen. Sie haben unſerer Tante Ihr Haus verkauft. Karl hat ſeinem Freunde ein Buch geſchickt. Amalie hat ihrer Freundin einen Fingerhut geliehen. Dieſer Mann hat eurer Nachbarin einen Vogel geſchickt. Haſt du meinem Vater dieſe Uhr gegeben? Haſt ihr unſerer Baſe einen Bleiſtift geliehen? Eine Magd meiner Mutter hat ihren Fingerhut verloren.

\* The e of the ending is generally dropped in unſers, unſerm, unſern.

36.

I have lent my pen to a friend of my brother's. Hast thou given thy cat to a friend (fem.) of my sister's? We have given the letter to a servant of the physician's. Have you sent this flower to our gardener? This garden belongs to my cousin (masc. and fem.). This umbrella does not belong to your brother. Does this pen belong to thy brother or to thy sister? Has Henry written to his father or to his mother? Has Louisa written to her uncle or aunt? Have you seen the gardener's wife? I have not seen her, but I have seen her brother.

37.

Ich spreche, I speak, or I am speaking, or I do speak;  
wir sprechen, we speak, or we are speaking, or we do speak;  
ich werde geliebt, I am loved;  
er wird geliebt, he is loved.

Obs.—The preposition *von*, *of*, *from*, is followed by the dative: *von dem Vater* (*of*, *from* the father).

*Of* is translated by the genitive, if it depends on a substantive: the father of the friend, *der Vater des Freundes*.

*Of* is translated by *von*, if it depends on a verb, not governing the genitive. Verbs governing the genitive will be marked as such: I speak of thy father, *ich spreche von deinem Vater*.

*By* governed by a passive verb is translated by *von* with the dative: Ich werde von meinem Sohne geliebt, I am loved by my son.

Ich habe das Buch des Arztes gesehen. Haben Sie dieses Buch von dem Arzte erhalten? Wir haben den Garten unsers Nachbars gekauft. Haben Sie diesen Garten von Ihrem Nachbar gekauft? Ich habe diese Uhr von meinem Onkel erhalten. Heinrich hat einen Brief von seinem Vater und seiner Mutter erhalten. Ich spreche von dem Könige und der Königin. Wir sprechen von Ihrem Bruder und Ihrer Schwester, von diesem Manne und dieser Frau. Sprechen Sie von meinem Vetter oder meiner Vase? Heinrich wird von seinem Vater und seiner Mutter geliebt.

38.

I have received this horse from my friend. I have bought this cat of thy sister. Louisa has received an umbrella from

her uncle and a watch from her aunt. I speak of this dog and of this cat, of this bird and of this flower. We are speaking of your cousin (masc. and fem.). Amelia is loved by her uncle and aunt. Our (fem.) gardener has received a letter from her son and daughter. Henry is the son of this shoemaker and Louisa is the daughter of this tailor.

39.

Schön, beautiful; schöner, more beautiful; der schönste, the most beautiful;  
gut, good; besser, better; der beste, the best;  
hoch, high; höher, higher; der höchste, the highest.

Das Thier, the animal; der Löwe, the lion; der Tiger, the tiger; das Metall, the metal; das Silber, the silver; das Gold, the gold.

Obs.— The superlative is formed by adding ste or ste, and softening the radical vowel, that is changing a into ä, o into ö and u into ü.

Die Katze ist nicht so stark als der Hund. Der Löwe ist stärker als der Tiger. Der Löwe ist das stärkste Thier. Mein Nachbar ist reicher als Sie; er ist der reichste Mann der Stadt. Das Gold ist schwerer als das Silber. Das Eisen ist nützlicher als das Silber. Das Eisen ist das nützlichste Metall. Luise ist schöner als Amalie; aber Heinrich ist das schönste Kind. Ludwig ist jünger als du; er ist der jüngste Sohn unsers Nachbarn. Karl ist älter als ich; er ist der älteste Sohn meines Onkels. Der Hund ist sehr treu. Der Hund ist das treueste Thier. Dieses Buch ist besser als jenes. Du bist der beste Freund meines Bruders. Das Haus dieses Kaufmannes ist das höchste der Stadt. Sie ist die böseste Frau der Stadt.

40.

Louisa is very beautiful; she is more beautiful than her sister, but the most beautiful child is Amelia. This tailor is the happiest man in (of the) town. Henry is more diligent than Lewis, but Charles is the most diligent son of your friend. He is the oldest, but also the most wicked man in town. You are not so poor as my cousin, but the poorest man is my father. My chair is too high; this one is higher; but the highest chair belongs to my mother. Your pen is very good; my pen is better; but the best pen is that (die) of my father.

44

41.

INTERROGATIVE SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

*Nom.* wer, who?

*Dat.* wem, to whom?

von wem, of whom, from whom?

*Acc.* wen, whom?

für wen, for whom?

*Nom. and Acc.* was, what?

Es, it; etwas, something, anything; nichts, nothing, not—anything; Jemand, somebody, anybody; Niemand, nobody, not—anybody; da, there.

Obs. — The personal pronoun of the third person has three genders: er, he; sie, she; es, it. If the English *it* refers to *things*, masculine in German, it is not translated by *es*, but by *er*; if it refers to things of feminine gender, it is translated by *sie*; if to neuters by *es*: *the chair* — *it is high*, *der Stuhl* — *er ist hoch*; *the flower* — *it is beautiful*, *die Blume* — *sie ist schön*; *the book* — *it is useful*, *das Buch* — *es ist nützlich*.

Wer ist da? Es ist der Schneider; es ist Heinrich. Wer ist jener Mann? Es ist der Schuhmacher; es ist der Sohn des Arztes. Wer hat diesen Brief geschrieben? Wem gehört dieser Hund? Er gehört unserm Nachbar. Wem gehört diese Uhr? Sie gehört meiner Schwester. Wem haben Sie den Hut gegeben? Von wem haben Sie diese Blume erhalten? Wen haben Sie gesehen? Was haben Sie verloren? Ich habe nichts verloren. Haben Sie etwas gefunden? Wo ist Ihr Bruder? Er ist nicht hier. Ist Jemand da? Niemand ist da. Hat Jemand meine Feder genommen? Niemand hat sie genommen.

42.

Who is there? It is my tailor; it is Charles. Who is that woman? She is the wife of the shoemaker; she is the servant of the neighbor. To whom have you lent your knife? To the son of the gardener. To whom has your brother sold his dog? To the sister of my friend. From whom hast thou received this bird? From the father of this woman. What have you bought? I have not bought anything (bought nothing). Of whom do you speak? I am speaking of your cousin. Has anybody read my letter? Nobody has read your letter. Have you seen anything? I have seen your watch. It is here. For

whom have you sent this chair? It belongs to your father. To whom does that pen belong? It belongs to my gardener (fem.). Whom have you sent? I have sent my maid-servant. Where is my pen? It is not here; it is there.

43.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

*Nom.* welcher, welche, welches, which or what;

*Dat.* welchem, welcher, welchem, to which, to what;

*Acc.* welchen, welche, welches, which, what (objective case).

Der Tischler, the joiner; der Rod, the coat; in, in or into; mit, with; bei, with (at the house of).

*Past Participles:* gegangen, gone; ausgegangen, gone out; gesprochen, spoken; gemacht, made, done.

Obs.—(1) *What* is translated by *welcher* etc. only if followed by a noun.  
(2) The prepositions *mit* and *bei* govern the dative (*mit wem*, with whom etc.).  
(3) The preposition *in* governs the dative, if it corresponds to *in*, the accusative, if it means *into*.

Welcher Tischler hat diesen Tisch gemacht? Welche Magd hat diesen Brief geschrieben? Welchen Hund haben Sie gekauft? Welche Uhr hast du verloren? Welches Haus hat Ihr Vater verkauft? Von welchem Volke sprechen Sie? Mit welchem Freunde bist du ausgegangen? In welchem Garten hat er den Vogel gefunden? Welche Feder hast du da? Welcher Frau hast du dein Messer gegeben? Wo haben Sie meinen Bruder gesehen? Bei Ihrem Onkel, bei Ihrer Mutter. Mit welcher Frau haben Sie gestern gesprochen? Mit der Frau meines Nachbarn. Wo ist Dein Bruder? Er ist in meinem Hause; er ist bei meiner Mutter; bei dem Gärtner. Er ist in den Garten gegangen. Karl hat seinen Bruder in das Zimmer geschickt. Von wem haben Sie diese Uhr gekauft? Ich habe sie in dem Garten gefunden.

44.

Where is your sister? She is in her garden. With whom has she spoken? With her cousin (fem.). Where is your cousin? He is with (at the house of) his friend. Is your father



gone out? He is gone out with the physician. Which letter have you written? What book have you read? What have you found in the garden? Which pen have you taken? What house have you bought in (the) town? I have yesterday spoken with your brother at the house of your neighbor. From what gardener hast thou received this flower? Where have you lost your thimble? At the house of my father. With whom has (ist) your brother departed? Which cane have you lost? Have you sent the maid-servant into the garden? I have sent the servant into the house of my father. Has (Ist) Charles gone into his room? What tailor has made this coat? My sister has made it for her brother.

45.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Nom.	{	welcher, welche, welches	}	who or which (that);
		der, die, das		
Dat.	{	welchem, welcher, welchem	}	to whom, to which;
		dem, der, dem		
Acc.	{	welchen, welche, welches	}	whom, which, that (obj. case).
		den, die, das		

Der Apfel, the apple; die Birne, the pear; der Schüler, the scholar, the pupil; jemals, ever.

*Past Participles:* gegessen, eaten; gespeist, dined.

Obs.—(1) Relative pronouns are placed in the gender of the preceding noun to which they refer (antecedent).—(2) Clauses beginning with a relative pronoun, require the auxiliaries to be placed at the end, immediately after the participles.—(3) In such clauses simple verbs without participles are also placed at the end of the clause.

Wir haben einen Bruder, welcher (der) sehr groß ist. Ihr habt eine Schwester, welche (die) sehr klein ist. Mein Sohn hat ein Buch, welches (das) sehr nützlich ist. Der Garten, welchen (den) dein Onkel gekauft hat, ist sehr schön. Die Feder, welche mein Vetter gefunden hat, ist sehr gut. Ich habe das Haus gesehen, welches Ihr Vater gekauft hat. Haben Sie einen Fingerhut gefunden, den meine Schwester verloren hat? Hast du den Apfel gegessen, welchen du in dem Garten gefunden hast? Ich habe die Birne gegessen, die ich in der Stadt gekauft habe. Hier ist der Mann, welchem Sie Ihren Brief gegeben haben. Hier ist die Frau, welcher wir unsern Hund verkauft

haben. Hier ist der Arzt, von dem wir so oft sprechen. Ein Mann, der von einem Freunde geliebt wird, ist reich. Hier ist mein Nachbar, bei dem ich gestern gespeist habe. Wo ist Ihr Freund, mit dem Sie gestern gesprochen haben? Karl ist der beste Schüler, den ich jemals gekannt habe. Es ist das theuerste Buch, das ich jemals gekauft habe. Das Buch, in welchem du gelesen hast, ist nicht gut.

46.

I have a dog which is very little. We have a cat that is very fine. My father has bought a horse which is beautiful. Your friend who has bought this house, is in (the) town. The woman who has made this coat, is very diligent. The child that has lost his penknife, is very sad. Where is the man whom I have seen at the house of thy father? The man with whom (at whose house) we have dined, is departed. Hast thou found the man for whom I have bought this watch? Have you found the man to whom you have lent your watch? Have you seen the umbrella which my mother has bought? Hast thou found the pear which thy brother has lost? We have seen the horse which your uncle has sold. Where is the thimble which you have found? I have taken the pencil which my cousin has bought. Henry has eaten the apple which his brother has received. Have you seen the woman of whom we speak? Have you read the letter which I have written? Have you found the boy to whom this penknife belongs? Where is the pen with which you have written this letter? The man with whom you have (find) arrived, is departed. Your brother is the most diligent man that I have ever seen. The highest house that is in this city, belongs to my father.

47.

CORRELATIVES.

<i>Masc.</i>	{ derjenige, der (welcher)	{ he who	} the one that
	{ der, welcher (der)		
<i>Fem.</i>	{ diejenige, die (welche)	{ she who	
	{ die, welche (die)		
<i>Neuter (1)</i>	{ dasjenige, das (welches)	{ that which	
	{ das, welches (das)		
<i>Neuter (2)</i>	{ dasjenige, was	{ that which (what).	
	{ was, was		
	{ was		

Derjenige, den, the one whom (which); derjenige (der), mit dem, the one with whom; der (die, das) meines Bruders, that (the one) of my brother.

Obs. — (1) The English *that which*, if it may be replaced by *the one that*, must be rendered by the masculine *derjenige, der* etc., if it refers to things masculine in German. Referring to things feminine, it must be translated by the feminine *diejenige, die* etc.: *that (the letter) which we have written, derjenige (der Brief), den wir geschrieben haben.* — (2) The second form of the neuter (*dasjenige, was; das, was; or was* alone) is used, if the English *that which* may be replaced by *what*, and not by *the one that*, so that it refers to things "in general": *That which (what) you have said, is true, das, was (dasjenige, was or was alone) Sie gesagt haben, ist wahr.*

Derjenige (der), welcher (der) zufrieden ist, ist reich. Dieser Fingerring ist besser als der meiner Schwester. Diese Uhr ist kleiner als die deines Bruders. Dieses Haus ist schöner als das unsers Nachbarn. Ich habe meinen Hut verloren und den meines Vaters. Wir haben deine Feder gefunden und die deines Freundes. Heinrich hat mein Zimmer gesehen und das meines Onkels. Hast du meinen Stock genommen oder den meines Bruders? Das ist nicht deine Blume, das ist die meiner Mutter. Haben Sie mein Messer oder das des Gärtners? Sprechen Sie von meinem Sohne oder von dem des Arztes? Das Pferd, welches wir gekauft haben, ist jünger, als das Ihres Vaters. Meine Mutter ist nicht diejenige, die diesen Hut gekauft hat. Dieser Brief ist nicht der, den ich geschrieben habe. Diese Uhr ist die, welche ich gefunden habe. Was ich gelesen habe, ist sehr traurig. Der, mit dem ich gesprochen habe, ist mein Freund. Das, was du meinem Vater versprochen hast, ist noch nicht angekommen. Dieses Pferd ist theurer, als dasjenige, welches wir gekauft haben. Dieser Stahl ist nicht härter, als der, den dein Vater geschickt hat. Diese Uhr ist nicht besser als die, welche ich deiner Schwester geliehen habe.

He who is rich, is not always contented. Are you (*a woman*) the one that has taken this umbrella? She who has written this letter, is not in this town. My brother is not the one to whom this watch belongs. That horse is not that which we have bought. This pencil is not that which I have found. This table is the one which your joiner has made. This flower

is that which your sister has sent. This steel is harder than that which your father has sent. That which you have written, is sad. What your father has sent is here. That which we have read of your brother is very sad. The room of my neighbor is larger and higher than that of my friend. This umbrella is finer than that which we have bought. Have you taken my pen or that of my sister? This is not your pencil; it is that of my brother. I speak of my book and of that of your friend. Louisa has lost her thimble and that of her mother. Thou hast eaten my apple and that of my cousin. My watch is better than that of my cousin (fem.). I have received your letter and that of your brother. He whom you have sent, has shown this letter to my father. My son is not the one for whom you have made that coat. This man is the one of whom we have spoken. This steel is harder than that of thy friend.

49.

<i>Nom.</i> Heinrich, Henry;	Zuise, Louisa;	Deutschland, Germany;
<i>Gen.</i> Heinrichs { of Henry; Henry's;	Zuizens { of Louisa; Louisa's;	Deutschlands, of Germany;
<i>Dat.</i> Heinrich, to Henry;	Zuizen, to Louisa;	Deutschland, to Germany;
<i>Acc.</i> Heinrich, Henry;	Zuise or Zuizen, Louisa;	Deutschland, Germany.

Wilhelm, William;	Spanien, Spain;	Köln, Cologne;
Johann, John;	Italien, Italy;	Brüssel, Brussels;
Emilie, Emily;	Preußen, Prussia;	Lyon, Lyons;
Johanne, Jane;	Rußland, Russia;	Hauptstadt, capital;
Frankreich, France;	Wien, Vienna;	Kaiser, emperor;
geht, goes;	wohnt, lives;	heißt, is called.

Wie heißt dein Vetter? what is your cousin's name? what is your cousin called?  
Der Hut Heinrichs or Heinrichs Hut, the hat of Henry, Henry's hat.

Obs.—(1) Proper names of all descriptions take s, never es, in the genitive; those of females in e take ns. — The dative of proper names never takes e, but is generally like the nominative; those of females in e take n.

(2) Proper names may be declined with the definite article, especially in the dative without a preceding preposition (dem Heinrich, to Henry). If so declined they do not take any ending (des Heinrich, der Zuisse).

(3) Instead of the genitive of proper names denoting places, the preposition von with the dative is more frequent: der König von Preußen, the king of Prussia (rarely: der König Preußens).

(4) The English preposition *to* or *for* before names of places if depending on verbs of motion, is translated by *nach* with the dative. *At* before names of places is translated by *in* with the dative. — Names of countries and cities are of neuter gender.

Mein Bruder heißt Heinrich und meine Schwester heißt Luise. Der Vater Wilhelms ist angekommen. Die Mutter Luise's ist abgereist. Ludwigs Onkel ist sehr reich. Emilie's Hut ist sehr schön. Haben Sie diesen Hund von Heinrich oder von Ferdinand erhalten? Amalie hat dem Johann ihre Feder geliehen. Karl hat der Emilie eine Blume gegeben. Gehört dieser Garten dem Ludwig oder der Karoline? Wo ist Wilhelm? Er ist mit Karl und Joseph ausgegangen. Wohnt Ihr Onkel in Brüssel oder in Paris? Geht Ihr Vetter nach Wien oder nach Berlin? Ist Paris größer als Lyon? Ist Ihr Freund von Köln oder von Berlin? Wie heißt dein Nachbar? Er heißt Sampson. Wie heißt die Hauptstadt von Frankreich? Wer ist König von Preußen? Wie heißt die Königin von England? Berlin ist die größte Stadt (city) von Deutschland. Petersburg ist die Hauptstadt des Kaisers von Rußland. Der König von Spanien ist ein Sohn Victor Emanuels. Hast du Emilien meine Uhr geliehen? Ich habe eine Blume von Amalien erhalten.

50.

My cousin's name is John. The daughter of our gardener (fem.) is called Jane. Art thou Charles's or Ferdinand's brother? Where are Henry and Lewis? They are in John's room; they are gone out with William. Have you lent your pen to Henry? Who has given this flower to Louisa? We have received a letter of Lewis; he is at Cologne. The sister of Charles is very small. Caroline's hat is too large. My uncle lives in Vienna, and my cousin John in Paris. My friend Reiley goes to Berlin; his brother William is arrived from Holmdel. Have you seen John and Jane? My garden is larger than that of Emily. Louisa has (ist) gone out with Jane. Henry has (ist) departed for Brussels with his friend Joseph. What is your son's name? What is the capital of Italy called? Who is the king of Spain? Victor Emanuel is the father of the king of Spain.

## PART II.

### 51.

*Plural. Nom.* die Tische, the tables;  
*Gen.* der Tische, of the tables;  
*Dat.* den Tischen, to the tables;  
*Acc.* die Tische, the tables.

*Nom.* Die Stadt Berlin (not von Berlin or Berlins), the city of Berlin;  
*Gen.* der Stadt Berlin, of the city of Berlin etc.

Obs. — Most of the nouns that form their genitive in *es*, and many feminine nouns of one syllable, take the ending *e* for the plural. The radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u* and *au* of such nouns are changed in the plural into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *äu*. The dative plural of all words ends in *n*.

Die Freunde meines Vaters sind angekommen. Die Söhne unsers Nachbars sind sehr fleißig. Die Stühle, welche wir gekauft haben, sind sehr schön. Haben Sie die Städte Wien und Berlin gesehen? Karl hat die Hütte Wilhelms und Ferdinands gefunden. Mein Vater hat die Briefe Ihres Onkels nicht erhalten. Die Pferde sind nützlicher als die Hunde. Die Mägde unsers Nachbars sind sehr fleißig. Die Aerzte in dieser Stadt sind sehr reich. Wem haben Sie die Stöcke meines Bruders gegeben? Die Hauptstädte der Könige von Sachsen (Saxony) und Baiern (Bavaria) sind sehr schön. Dieser Garten gehört den Söhnen meines Nachbars.

### 52.

Thy brother has bought the dogs of my neighbor. The friends of Charles are ill. Have you seen the horses of our uncle William? The cities of Cologne and Strasbourg (Strasbourg) belong to the king of Prussia. Where are the hats of my sister Emily? I have given your umbrella to the maid-servants. Your brother is gone out with the sons of our neighbor (fem.). I speak of Henry's and William's friends. To whom have you sold the trees of my brother?

53.

Der Zahn, the tooth;	der Ring, the ring;
der Fuß, the foot;	die Gans, the goose;
die Hand, the hand;	der Thurm, the tower, steeple;
der Schuh, the shoe;	warm, warm; kalt, cold;
der Strumpf, the stocking;	weiß, white.

*Past Participles*: gebracht, brought; gemohnt, resided; erobert, conquered.

*Plural (of all genders).*

<i>Nom.</i> diese, these;	jene, those;	welche, which (what) or who;
<i>Gen.</i> dieser, of these;	jener, of those;	welcher, of which (what), of whom;
<i>Dat.</i> diesen, to these;	jenen, to those;	welchen, to which (what), to whom;
<i>Acc.</i> diese, these;	jene, those;	welche, which (what), whom.

Obs. 1.—The plurals of the possessives are meine, seine, ihre (her), unsere, eure, ihre (their), Ihre (your), being for all genders alike. They all are declined like the plural diese. All pronominal adjectives are placed in the plural, if their governing nouns are of this number: her shoes, ihre Schuhe; our friends, unsere Freunde; their tables, ihre Tische; your tables, Ihre Tische (eure Tische).

2. The relative welcher is placed in the plural (welche, etc.) if the antecedent (No. 45, Obs. 1) is in that number: die Tische, welche Sie gekauft haben, *the tables which (that) you have bought.*

Deine Zähne sind sehr weiß. Meine Füße sind sehr kalt. Ihre Hände sind warm. Hat der Schuhmacher meine Schuhe gebracht? Wer hat meine Strümpfe genommen? Wo haben Sie diese Gänse gekauft? Haben Sie meine Bäume schon gesehen? Von welchen Bäumen sprechen Sie (do you speak)? Von den Bäumen, welche ich von dem Gärtner der Königin gekauft habe. Unsere Freunde sind schon abgereist. Wer hat diese Briefe geschrieben? Mein Vater hat seine Pferde und Hunde verkauft. Mein Nachbar hat Briefe von seinen Söhnen erhalten, welche in Berlin sind. Hat Jemand meine Ringe gefunden? Niemand hat deine Ringe gesehen. Karl wird von seinen Freunden geliebt.

54.

Charles and Henry have lost their canes. The shoemaker has not made your shoes. Where have you bought these tables and chairs? From whom have you received these pencils? My feet are very small. My sister has lost her thimbles. I have received these letters from my friends. These steeples

are higher than those. These animals are very fine. These servants are very lazy. Have you already seen our hats and our rings? Your hands are very white. I have found these rings in my uncle's garden. What steeples of Paris have you seen from those mountains? Of what cities do you speak? I am speaking of the cities which the king of Prussia has conquered in France. My sons to whom you have sold your horses, are departed for Berlin. The cities in which we have resided, are Berlin, Vienna, and Cologne.

55.

*Sing. Nom.* aller, alle, alles, all.

*Plur. " alle; Gen. aller; Dat. allen; Acc. alle.*

das Kind, the child;	das Dorf, the village;
das Buch, the book;	das Blatt, the leaf;
das Haus, the house;	das Loch, the hole;
das Volk, the people;	das Huhn, the chicken;
das Glas, the glass;	das Bild, the picture;
das Band, the ribbon;	das Kalb, the calf;
das Land, the country;	der Wurm, the worm;
das Kleid, the dress;	der Wald, the forest;
das Schloß,* the castle;	der Mann, the man, the husband.

**Obs.**—All these nouns are exceptions from the general rule, and form their plurals by adding *er*, softening the radical vowel. Substantives ending in *thum* follow the same rule, as: *Irrthum, Irrthümer* (mistake). The dative plur. adds *n*.

Diese Häuser sind höher als jene. Jene Bänder sind schöner als diese. Deine Bücher sind nützlicher als die Bücher Luigens. Diese Mutter hat ihre Kinder verloren. Der König hat seine Schlösser verkauft. Von wem haben Sie diese Gläser erhalten? Wer hat diese Kleider gemacht? Dieser Mann ist sehr alt; er hat alle seine Zähne verloren. Diese Völker sind nicht glücklich. Heinrich und Wilhelm haben alle ihre Bücher verloren. Alle eure Briefe sind angekommen. Der Vater ist mit allen seinen Kindern abgereist. Diese Dörfer sind sehr schön. Von welchen Dörfern sprechen Sie? Haben Sie den Kindern des Nachbarn einen Vogel gegeben? Wer hat alle diese Fische in meinen Tisch gemacht?

\* Final *ß*, if an ending is added to it, changes into *ff*, whenever the vowel preceding it is short.



56.

Where are your children? My children are gone out. Who has bought all these ribbons? Henrietta has lost all her books. We have seen all your houses. Have you also seen the castles of the king? This tree has lost all its leaves. My neighbor has sold all his chickens. I have found this book in all countries and cities which I have seen. Charles has written letters to all his friends. I have the pictures of all my children. The men who have dined with your friend, have (find) already departed. I have spoken with these men of the books which you have written.

57.

Der Stiefel, the boot;  
der Spiegel, the mirror;  
der Löffel, the spoon;  
die Nadel, the needle, pin;

die Gabel, the fork;  
der Schnabel, the beak;  
das Mädchen, the girl;  
der Italiäner, the Italian.

Sie wohnen, they live; sie gehören, they belong.

Obs.—(1) Masculine and neuter nouns in er, el, en add no endings in nominative, genitive and accusative plural, but those in er and el add, as usual, n in the dative, and some of them, as Bruder, Vater, Schnabel, Vogel, Garten, Apfel, soften their radical vowels.—(2) Feminine nouns in er and el add n in every case of the plural, except die Mütter and die Töchter, which take n in the dative only.

Die Schneider und Schuhmacher in dieser Stadt sind alle reich. Diese Engländer sind sehr fleißig. Meine Brüder sind alle krank. Haben Sie meine Schwestern gesehen? Wo haben Sie diese Löffel, Messer und Gabeln gekauft? Die Fenster Ihres Zimmers sind offen. Wir haben diese Vögel in den Wäldern gefunden. Die Tiger sind sehr stark. Diese Mädchen sind sehr glücklich. Sind meine Töchter ausgegangen? Sind meine Zimmer nicht sehr schön? Hat ihre Tante alle diese Spiegel gekauft? Wer hat die Bücher und Federn dieses Mädchens genommen? Wem gehören diese Gärten und Häuser? Luise und Henriette haben ihre Nadeln verloren. Der Schuhmacher hat Ihre Schuhe und Stiefel noch nicht gebracht. Jene Männer sind Italiäner. Diese Gärten gehören meinen Brüdern. Ich habe in diesen Zimmern gewohnt.

58.

The shoemaker has brought your shoes and boots. The houses of this village are all very fine. Bring us (Bringen Sie uns) the spoons, forks, and knives. Where have you bought these needles? Your brothers and sisters are arrived. Our mothers have seen the gardens of the king. My sons have bought the mirrors of my neighbor. Horses are bigger than tigers. These Italians live in the city of Berlin. The beaks of those birds are long.

59.

Eins (ein) one;

zwei, two;

drei, three;

vier, four;

fünf, five;

sechs, six;

sieben, seven;

acht, eight;

neun, nine;

zehn, ten;

elf, eleven;

zwölf, twelve;

dreizehn, thirteen;

vierzehn, fourteen;

fünfzehn, fifteen;

sechzehn, sixteen;

siebzehn, seventeen;

achtzehn, eighteen;

neunzehn, nineteen;

zwanzig, twenty;

die Aufgabe, the lesson, exercise;

\*das Jahr, the year;

die Woche, the week;

\*der Monat, the month (pl. e);

\*der Tag, the day;

die Stunde, the hour;

der Knabe, the boy;

seit, since, ago (governs the dative).

Obs. — (1) Substantives of whatever gender, ending in *e*, (except a few neuters) take *n* in all cases of the plural, and never soften their radical vowels.—(2) The English *there is* is rendered by *es ist*, and *there are* by *es sind*, if *there* has no local meaning, and is merely expletive. If *es ist*, *es sind*, do not begin the sentence and are preceded by words other than conjunctions, the pronoun *es* is omitted.—(3) The form *eins* (one) is only used in numeration, or when *one* refers to a neuter noun mentioned before. Else it takes the form *ein*, *eine*, *ein*, and is declined exactly like the indefinite article.

In unserm Hause sind vierzehn Zimmer. In diesem Zimmer sind zwei Tische und zwölf Stühle. Unser Nachbar hat fünf Kinder: drei Söhne und zwei Töchter. Wir haben vier Katzen und drei Hunde. In eurem Garten sind fünfzehn Bäume. Das Jahr hat zwölf Monate; der Monat hat vier Wochen; die Woche hat sieben Tage. Ich habe von meinem Vater sechs Äpfel† und acht Birnen

\* Masculine and neuter nouns, not ending in *e*, which do not soften the radical vowel, are marked with an asterisk.

† If the softened vowel is a capital, the softening is generally indicated by an *e*, added to it.

erhalten. Mein Onkel hat meiner Schwester ein Federmesser und zwanzig Federn gegeben. Hast du schon alle deine Aufgaben gemacht? Johann hat noch nicht seine Aufgaben gemacht. Haben Sie noch nicht gespeist? Ich habe [schon] seit drei Stunden gespeist. Ist Ihr Vater noch nicht angekommen? Er ist [schon] seit zwei Tagen angekommen. Mein Onkel hat seit acht Tagen nichts gegessen. Mein Bruder ist neun Jahre alt, aber meine Schwester ist noch nicht sieben Jahre alt.

60.

My father has three houses and two gardens. This man has five boys and four daughters. My friend has seven sisters. We have received six letters. In this town there are twenty shoemakers. My cousins (fem.) have bought two cats. My cousin is seventeen years and two months old. My mother has bought six knives, twelve forks, and eighteen spoons. Our joiner has made three tables and ten chairs. We have received this week fifteen chickens and three calves. William has eaten five apples and four pears. Henry arrived (is arrived) three days ago. My uncle departed (is departed) a year ago. Charles and Ferdinand have made six exercises. There are two holes in this door. In this town there is one physician. The gardener has given three flowers to my children. I have seen one of your sisters. This house belongs to one of my friends.

61.

\*Das Brot, the bread;  
das Fleisch, the meat;  
die Äpfel, the apples;

Brot, bread, some bread, any bread;  
Fleisch, meat, some meat, any meat;  
Äpfel, apples, some apples, any apples.

Der Wein, the wine;  
das Bier, the beer;  
\*das Wasser, the water;  
das Gemüse, the vegetables;  
der Zucker, the sugar;  
der Kaffee, the coffee;  
geben Sie mir, give me;  
wollen Sie? will you [have], do you want?

die Kirsche, the cherry; *plum*  
die Pflaume, the plum;  
die Tinte, the ink;  
die Suppe, the soup;  
man findet, one finds, they find;  
getrunken, drunk (participle);  
er macht, he makes;  
gefälligst, if you please.

Ich habe Brot und Fleisch gegessen. Wir haben Kirschen und Pflaumen gekauft. Mein Bruder hat Wein getrunken und ihr habt Bier und Wasser getrunken. Der Schuhmacher macht Schuhe und

**Stiefel.** Der Tischler macht Tische und Stühle. Man findet bei diesem Kaufmann Bücher, Federn, Tinte und Bleistifte. Geben Sie mir Suppe und Gemüse. Hier ist Wein und Wasser, und da ist Kaffee und Milch. Haben Sie auch Zucker? Wir haben Messer und Gabeln, Tassen und Gläser gekauft. Der Gärtner hat Laiben Kirchen und Blumen gegeben. Haben Sie schon Kaffee getrunken? Man findet in jenem Hause Spiegel, Regenschirme, Bänder, Fingerhüte und Nadeln. Meine Freundin hat von ihrem Onkel Birnen und Pflaumen erhalten. Wir haben Löwen, Tiger, Ragen und Hunde gesehen. In dieser Stadt sind Schneider und Schuhmacher, welche sehr reich sind. Wollen Sie Suppe oder Gemüse? Geben Sie mir gefälligst Fleisch und Brot.

62.

Will you [have] some wine or some beer, some milk or some water? Give me, if you please, some soup, vegetables, meat, and bread. Where does one find (finds one) ink and pens? Have you children? Has your father bought trees or flowers? My brother has books and friends. Here is coffee and sugar. My neighbor has birds, dogs, and horses. We are speaking of towns and villages, of houses and gardens. What have you done? We have done our lessons; we have written letters. We have eaten apples and plums, and we have drunk some wine and beer. Do you want these spoons or those? Have you sold any wine to my brothers? Have you bought any cherries of my brothers?

63.

Wenig, little, few;  
viel, much; viele, many;  
genug, enough;  
mehr, more;  
weniger, less, fewer;  
wie? how?

das Obst, die Frucht, the fruit;  
das Geld, the money;  
der Pfeffer, the pepper;  
das Salz, the salt;  
der Senf, the mustard;  
der Mensch, man (pl. die Menschen).

**Obs.**—(1) *There is* and *there are* are often translated by *es gibt* (literally: *it gives*), instead of *es ist* and *es sind*, both for singular and plural nouns. Both expressions differ only slightly. The noun, following *es gibt*, is placed in the accusative, and the pronoun *es* in this connection can never be omitted. — (2) *Wenig*, *weniger*, *viel* may be left undeclined in most instances;

but *mehr* is never declined.— (3) The English *man* is rendered either *Mann* or *Mensch*. The word *Mann* is confined to the adult male sex, while *Mensch* means a human being in general.

Heinrich hat viel Geld; er hat mehr Geld als ich. Geben Sie mir ein wenig Fleisch. Ich habe genug Brot. Du hast zu viel Salz und Pfeffer. Wir haben weniger Obst als ihr. Luise hat weniger Federn als Henriette. Karl hat mehr Aufgaben gemacht als Ludwig. Hast du so viel Geld als mein Bruder? Es gibt wenig Menschen, welche zufrieden sind. Geben Sie Henrietten nicht zu viel Senf! Mein Bruder hat zu viel Wein getrunken. Dieser Mann hat viele Blumen. Wie viele Hunde hat Ihr Vater? Es gibt dieses Jahr wenig Kirschen, aber viel Pflaumen. Mein Freund hat diese Woche mehr Briefe erhalten als ich. Hat dein Vater so viele Bücher als mein Onkel? Geben Sie mir gefälligst ein wenig Tinte. Wollen Sie noch (any) mehr? Ich habe genug. Gibt es nicht viel Gemüse in diesem Lande?

64.

There is much fruit this year. Our gardener has many trees and flowers. Will you have a little meat or some vegetables? Have you mustard enough? I have salt and pepper enough. Our neighbor has much money; he is very rich. Give a little wine to this woman. This man has few friends, but he has many dogs and cats. There are many birds in this forest. How many physicians are there in your town? Have you as many apples and pears as we? We have not so many as you, but we have more plums and cherries than you. Charles has fewer friends than Henry. This tree has fewer leaves than that one. There are (sind) too many chairs in this room. Is (gibt) there more than one physician in this town? How few men are there that are contented!

65.

Das Stück, the piece;	*das Dutzend, the dozen;
die Flasche, the bottle;	der Korb, the basket;
die Tasse, the cup;	die Leinwand, the linen;

† *Little* is translated by *klein*, if it is opposed to *great* or *large*; but by *wenig*, if opposed to *much*.

*das Pfund, the pound;	das Taschentuch, the pocket-handkerchief;
die Elle, the yard, ell;	*der Handschuh, the glove;
*das Paar, the pair;	das Loth, the (half) ounce;
der Zoll, the inch;	der Käse, the cheese;
das Hemd, the shirt;	der Schinken, the ham.
die Halsbinde, the cravat;	

Obs.—The words *Pfund, Loth, Paar, Duzend, Fuß, Zoll* and some other masculine and neuter nouns, when used as units of measurement, weight and computation are not declined. The preposition *of*, following any noun denoting measure, etc. is not expressed in German.

Meine Mutter hat der Henriette drei Paar Handschuhe, sechs Paar Strümpfe, zwei Duzend Hemden und einen Korb Kirschen geschickt. In diesem Koffer sind zehn Ellen Leinwand, vier Taschentücher und sechs Halsbinden. Mein Bruder hat zwei Paar Schuhe und ein Paar Stiefel gekauft. Wir haben dem Freunde unsers Onkels zwanzig Pfund Zucker und zehn Flaschen Wein geschickt. Geben Sie mir ein Stück Käse, eine Flasche Bier und ein wenig Senf. Ich habe ein Glas Wein getrunken und ein Stück Schinken gegessen. Wir haben bei unserer Freundin eine Tasse Kaffee getrunken. Geben Sie mir ein Glas Wasser und ein Stück Zucker. Meine Schwester hat zwei Pfund Kirschen und ein Pfund Pflaumen gekauft. Wir haben ein Duzend Stühle bei dem Tischler unsers Onkels gekauft. Ich habe von dem Gärtner einen Korb Blumen erhalten. Dieses Haus ist zwanzig Fuß hoch.

66.

The shoemaker has made a pair of shoes for Louisa and two pair of boots for William. We have drunk two glasses of wine and three glasses of beer. Give me a bottle of water and a little meat and bread. Will you have a piece of ham or cheese? My aunt has bought a dozen of cravats, two dozen of shirts, and ten pair of gloves and stockings. How many shirts have you? I have three dozen. This linen is very fine; how many yards have you bought? I have bought twenty yards. That (das) is not enough for ten shirts. My uncle has given to Henry a penknife, twenty pens, two cravats, and a pair of gloves. Ferdinand has bought a pound of plums, six ounces of coffee, and two yards of ribbon. Will you have a cup of

coffee or a glass of wine? Give me, if you please, a glass of water. My brother is six feet three inches high.

67.

Jeder, jede, jedes, every, each;	die Kugel, the bullet;
schlecht, bad;	die Freundin, the (female) friend;
hübsch, pretty;	der Lehrer, the teacher;
tobt, dead;	der Weg, the way, the road;
berühmt, renowned;	der Engländer, the Englishman;
weise, wise;	das Leben, the life;
goldent, golden, gold (adj.);	*das Schicksal, the fate;
silbern, silver (adj.);	das Mädchen, the girl;
kurz, short, brief;	das ist, that is.

Obs. 1.—Predicative adjectives take no endings of declension: *der Mann ist gut*.

2. Adjectives not predicative (that is connected with a noun expressed or understood) must take certain endings of declension either according to the **WEAK** or according to the **STRONG** scheme of declension.

3. The **STRONG** scheme of declension is the one by which the definite article and the determinatives (*dieser, jener, jeder, welcher*) are declined. It consists of the endings *er, e, es, em, en*.

4. The **WEAK** scheme consists of the endings *e* and *en* only: *e* for the nominative sing. of all genders and the accusative sing. feminine and neuter; *en* for all the other cases.

5. The **WEAK** declension is used whenever any adjective is preceded by the definite article, or by a determinative (*dieser, etc.*).

*Nom. Sing.* *der (dieser) gute Mann; das (dieses) gute Kind;*

*Gen.* " *des (dieses) guten Mannes, etc.*

*Nom. Plur.* *die guten Männer, etc.*

Jedes Haus hat ein Dach. Jede Kugel macht ein Loch. Er hat jeden Freund verloren. In jeder Stadt gibt es einen Arzt. [Der] gute Heinrich ist krank. [Die] kleine Sophie ist sehr hübsch. Das arme Kind hat seine Mutter verloren. Das ist der höchste Baum in unserm Garten. Lisette ist die fleißigste von unsern Mägden. Dieser reiche Engländer wohnt bei meinem Onkel. Wo haben Sie diese goldene Nadel gefunden? Wem gehört dieses große Haus und jener schöne Garten? Heinrich ist mit [dem] kleinen Karl ausgegangen. Wir haben gestern bei der guten Emilie Kirschen gegessen. Wer wohnt in diesem schönen Schlosse? Wie heißt diese schöne Blume?

† Of after superlatives may be expressed by the genitive or the preposition *von*.

Wo haben Sie diesen schlechten Wein und dieses schlechte Brot gekauft? Der Löwe und der Tiger sind die stärksten Thiere. Das sind die glücklichsten Tage meines Lebens. Geben Sie diesem armen Manne ein wenig Wein! Der Vater dieses kleinen Mädchens ist todt. Das ist das Schicksal jedes großen Mannes. Die schönen Dörfer jenes Landes sind berühmt. Er hat meinem Freunde die besten Zimmer in seinem Hause gegeben. Die Söhne der weisesten Väter sind oft dumm (dull).

68.

Not every king is great and wise. Every year has twelve months, and every week seven days. We have seen books and pictures in each room. The diligent scholar is loved by every teacher. The new house of my brother is sold. I have read the long letter of your friend. He has spoken of the sad fate of this young man. The father of (the) little Henry is dead. The daughter of this old woman is sick. Give this flower to my young friend (male and female). Which hat have you taken? I have taken my white hat. Which watch and which ring have you sold? We have sold the silver watch and the gold ring. The short roads are not always the best.\* Are there any lions and tigers in the cold countries of the earth? The dresses of these young girls are too long. The fates of the greatest men are often sad. I have resided in the best houses of the city.

69.

Kein, keine, kein, no (adj.);  
these are. das (dies sind);

kein Freund, no friend;  
the business, das Geschäft.

Obs. 1.—If adjectives are preceded by the nominative sing. or the neuter accusative sing. of ein, kein or of any possessive (mein, dein, unser, etc.), they are declined after the **STRONG** declension, and take the endings of dieser, diese, dieses: mein guter Vater, unser gutes Kind.

2. If adjectives are preceded by any other case of ein, kein, mein, etc., they are declined after the **WEAK** declension: meines guten Vaters, etc.

Unser Gärtner ist ein guter Mann. Eure Gärtnerin ist eine gute Frau. Emilie ist ein sehr gutes Kind. Wir haben einen guten Vater und eine gute Mutter. Heinrich hat ein schönes Pferd und einen

\* Adjectives whose nouns are understood, must be translated as if the nouns were expressed.



schönen Hund. Luise hat große Zähne, aber eine kleine Hand und einen kleinen Fuß. Ferdinand ist mit meinem jüngeren Bruder ausgegangen. Henriette ist mit meiner älteren Schwester abgereist. Geben Sie dieses Brot einem armen Kinde! Dieses Federmesser gehört einem jungen Manne, der bei unserm Nachbar wohnt. Ludwig ist der Sohn eines reichen Kaufmanns. Wir haben keinen guten Wein und kein gutes Brot. Wer hat meine silberne Uhr und meinen goldenen Ring genommen? Wir haben unsern besten Freund verloren. Eure kleinen Kinder sind sehr gut. Es gibt dieses Jahr keine guten Kirschen. Mein Onkel hat seine schönsten Pferde verkauft. Bist du mit deinen neuen Stiefeln zufrieden? Hast du schon von unsern guten Pflaumen gegessen? Ich habe ein besseres Pferd und einen größeren Hund, als Sie. Karl ist ein hübscherer Knabe als Heinrich.

70. \*

Charles is a good boy. Emily is a pretty girl. That is a happy mother. That is a very good wine. Where is my little Henry, my good Louisa? We have a very rich uncle. William has an old father. Iron is a useful metal. The dog is a faithful animal. I have received a new umbrella and a gold watch. My neighbor has done much business (plural in German) this year. Give this bottle of wine to a poor man or to a poor woman. I have no friend in this town. Have you no good pens for this child? Our best friends are dead. This joiner makes no good chairs. These are the tables and books of our youngest children. A horse is a more useful animal than a dog. Thou hast written a longer letter than I.

71.

Vortreflich, excellent;	der Fleiß, the diligence;
roth, red;	die Statue, the statue;
lebenswürdig, amiable;	das Vergnügen, the pleasure;
der Marmor, the marble;	das Papier, the paper;
die Gefahr, the danger;	gerettet (past part.), saved.

Obs.—If the adjective is not preceded by an article or any other determinative word, it is inflected after the *strong* declension.

Hier ist guter Schinken, gute Suppe und gutes Brod. Haben Sie gutes Papier und gute Tinte? Wir haben schlechten Wein und gutes Wasser getrunken. Unser Gärtner hat vortreffliches Obst.

Unsere Magd hat guten Senf, aber schlechten Pfeffer gekauft. Eduard hat gute Freunde und nützliche Bücher. Mein Onkel hat schöne Gärten und große Häuser. Euer Nachbar hat treue Hunde. Johann, geben Sie mir ein Glas Wasser! Wollen Sie kaltes oder warmes Wasser? Meine Schwester hat ein Paar hübsche Handschuhe gekauft. Paris und London sind schöne Städte. Heinrich hat ein Paar neue Schuhe erhalten. Liebe Schwester! Ich habe deinen Brief mit großem Vergnügen gelesen. Karl hat seine Aufgabe mit rother Tinte geschrieben.

72.

Have you any good mustard? We have good bread and good meat. Your gardener has very fine flowers. These children have fine dresses. We have faithful friends, amiable brothers, and useful books.\* Give me some better cheese and better bread. At (bei) this merchant's one finds pretty gloves, fine penknives, and good pens. Iron and silver are very useful metals. You have always excellent wine. My brother is not gone out, he has too much business (plur.). Henry has bought good paper and good ink. We speak of good coffee, of excellent fruit, and new dresses. You have done your lesson with great diligence. Poor friend, how little money have you made! This statue is made of white marble. He has saved the life of his friend with great danger.

73.

Der, die, das erste, the first;	der, die, das letzte, the last;
der, die, das zweite, the second;	unartig, naughty;
der, die, das dritte, the third;	der Theil, the part;
der, die, das vierte, the fourth;	der Band, the volume;
der, die, das zwanzigste, the twentieth;	nur, only; die Klasse, the class.

Der wievielte? what day of the month? what (in order)? \*

der erste Januar, the first of January;

der Monat Mai, the month of May.

- Obs.—(1) The ordinals from 2 to 20 add *te* to the cardinals; from twenty upwards they add *ste*. They decline *weak*, if preceded by the definite article.  
 (2) Names of the months and the days of the week are masculine.

\* If an ordinal numeral is expected in the answer.

Der junge Mann ist sehr fleißig; er ist der erste in der Klasse. Karl ist der zweite; Heinrich ist der dritte; Johann ist der vierte; [der] kleine Wilhelm ist der fünfte; Paul ist der sechste; Franz (Francis) ist der achte; Gustav ist der neunte; [der] unartige Eduard ist der elfte und [der] faule Ludwig der letzte. Zwei ist der fünfte Theil von zehn. Fünf ist der vierte Theil von zwanzig. Ein Tag ist der siebente Theil einer Woche. Den wievielften haben wir (is it) heute? Wir haben heute den dreizehnten oder den vierzehnten. Ist es nicht der zwanzigste? Mein Vater ist den dritten Mai abgereist, und den zehnten Dezember angekommen. Haben Sie den ersten und zweiten Band? Ich habe nur den ersten.

74.

Louisa is the first in the class; Pauline is the second; (the) little Josephine is the third; Emily is the fifth; (the) pretty Sophy (Sophie) is the ninth; Jane is the fifteenth; (the) naughty Caroline is the last. Three is the sixth part of eighteen. A week is the fourth part of a month; and a month is the twelfth part of a year. What day of the month is it (have we)? It is today the eleventh or the twelfth. We (are) departed on the second of May and arrived on the sixteenth. Which volume have you taken? Have you taken the third and the fourth? I have only taken the third.

75.

Der, (die, das) meine, der, (die, das) meinige, meiner, meine, meines,	} mine;	der etc. deine, der etc. deinige, deiner, e, es,	} thine;
--	---------	--	----------

der seine, etc., his; der ihre, etc., hers; der unsere, unsrige, etc., ours;  
der eure, etc., (Ihre, Ihrige), yours; der ihre, etc., theirs.

Schwer, difficult (hard), heavy; leicht, easy (not difficult), light (not heavy);  
der (das) Lohn (sing?), the wages (plur.).

Obs.—(1) *Mine, thine*, etc., if used predicatively (after *bin, bist, ist, sind*) are rendered by *mein, dein*, etc., without article and ending: Das Haus ist mein, die Häuser sind mein, the house is mine, the houses are mine.—  
(2) *Der meine, meinige; der deine*, etc., are used, if a noun, previously mentioned is understood: Dein Haus ist größer, als das meine (meinige) or als meines. These expressions are also used predicatively, but with peculiar

meanings (which may be orally indicated by the teacher).—(3) Der meine, der meinige, etc. decline **WEAK**: *Gen.* des meinen (meinigen); *Plur.* die meinen (meinigen), etc. *Meiner*, *deiner*, etc., decline **STRONG**: *Gen.* meines; *Dat.* meinem; *Plur.* meine.

Dieses Buch ist mein. Diese Federn sind nicht dein. Diese Uhr ist unser. Dein Vater ist größer als der meinige. Meine Mutter ist kleiner als die deine. Unser Buch ist nützlicher als das Ihrige. Mein Sohn ist nicht so alt als der deinige. Euer Pferd ist jünger als das unsere. Unsere Bücher sind nützlicher als die euren. Mein Vater hat seine Uhr verloren; Heinrich hat auch die seinige verloren. Meine Schwester hat die ihre verkauft. Mein Vater hat deinen Brief und den meinen gelesen. Meine Tante hat ihren Garten und den unsrigen verkauft. Hat dein Bruder meinen Stock oder seinen genommen? Hat Luise meinen Fingerhut oder ihren gefunden? Deine Aufgaben sind leichter als die meinigen. Diese Bäume sind höher als die unseren. In unserer Stadt sind mehr Aerzte als in eurer. Karls Bild ist gut; aber deines (deins) ist vortrefflich. Mein Bruder ist größer, als deiner. Unsere Aufgabe ist schwerer als eure. Er hat meinem Bruder mehr Äpfel gegeben, als deinem. Wir geben unserer Magd höheren Lohn, als ihr der euren.

76.

This basket is mine; these gloves are ours. The city is ours. My thimble is as fine as yours. Your umbrella is not so large as mine. My son is more diligent than thine. My friend has sold his house and mine. My sister has eaten her apple and thine. Has Louisa taken my pen or hers; my pencil or hers? Henry has read my books and yours. Your sisters are younger than ours. We speak of our friend and of yours. Is my room smaller than thine? I have promised a book to your son and to mine, to your daughter and to mine. I speak of my tasks and of thine. This castle belongs to my uncle and to yours. What wages are higher, yours or mine? Are your last lessons harder or easier than ours? Are thy bullets heavier or lighter than his? Emily's room is prettier than mine, but mine is larger than hers. Are the wages of the Englishman higher than thine or those of the Italian?

77.

*Singular.*

*Nom.* er, he; sie, she; es, it;


*Acc.* ihn, him; sie, her; es, it;

*Plural.*

sie, they;

sie, them.

Ja, yes; nein, no (answering particle).

 For the use of the gender see No. 41.

Haben Sie meinen Stock? Ja, ich habe ihn. Haben Sie meine Uhr? Nein, ich habe sie nicht. Haben Sie mein Messer? Ich habe es nicht. Haben Sie meine Schuhe? Ja, ich habe sie. Wo ist mein Hund? Ich habe ihn nicht gesehen. Wer hat meine Feder genommen? Dein Bruder hat sie genommen. Wo hast du dieses Taschentuch gefunden? Ich habe es in Ihrem Zimmer gefunden. Diese Vögel sind sehr schön. Von wem hast du sie erhalten? Deine Schwester ist sehr fleißig; meine Mutter liebt sie sehr. Haben Sie meinen Oheim gekannt? Ich habe ihn nicht gekannt. Dies ist ein nützliches Buch; haben Sie es schon gelesen? Wo ist mein Fingerhut? Ich habe ihn Ihrer Schwester gegeben; sie hat ihn verloren. Hat Jemand meine Gabel genommen? Karl hat sie genommen. Wen hat der Gärtner alle diese Blumen geschickt? Er hat sie Ihrer Mutter geschickt. Haben Sie diese Uhr für Ihren Bruder gekauft? Nein, ich habe sie nicht für ihn gekauft. Haben Sie eine für Ihre Schwester gekauft? Nein, ich habe keine Uhr für sie gekauft.

78.

Has the tailor brought my coat? Yes, he has brought it. Hast thou already done thy lesson? I have not yet done it. Have you seen my new room? No, I have not yet seen it. Where hast thou bought these pretty rings? I have bought them in Paris. I have received a letter from my aunt, have you read it? Have you already seen the king? I have not yet seen him. You have a good pen; give it to my sister. Where are your gloves? I have lent them to your aunt. Where is your umbrella? Give it to this child. My aunt is dead; did you know her? What books have you there? Have you read them? Where is thy dog? My father has sold it. Have you received any letters for your father? No, I have received no letters for him. Have you bought these books for your mother? No, I have not bought them for her.

79.

*Perfect Tense:* ich bin gewesen, I have been;  
du bist gewesen, thou hast been;  
er ist gewesen, he has been;  
wir sind gewesen, we have been;  
ihr seid gewesen, you have been;  
sie sind gewesen, they have been.

Der Herr, the gentleman;  
das Fräulein, the (unmarried) lady;  
die Dame, the lady (married or  
unmarried);  
zusammen, together;  
heute, to-day;  
glücklich, happy, successful;  
lange (adv. of time), long, a long  
time;

der Morgen, the morning;  
ein halber, eine halbe, ein halbes,  
half a, one half of;  
viertel, quarter, (one) fourth of;  
einmal, once;  
zweimal, twice;  
dreimal, three times;  
viertmal, four times;  
niemals, nie, never

Obs.—(1) The nouns Herr, Frau, Fräulein are used as titles and addresses (Mr., Sir, Madam, Mrs., Miss). *Mr.* and *Sir* are translated by Herr; *Mrs.* by Frau; *Madam* by the French Madame, if a married lady is addressed. In the address of an unmarried lady Fräulein is used. *Miss* is translated by Fräulein. — (2) If Herr is used before the names of persons spoken of, it is declined with or without the article; in the plural the article must always be used, and mostly in the genitive singular. — (3) Herr takes in all cases of the singular n, and in all cases of the plural en. — (4) The words Herr, Frau, Fräulein are used idiomatically, if relatives or friends of the person addressed are spoken of without mentioning their names: Ihr Herr Freund (your friend); Ihr Herr Vater, Bruder, Sohn; Ihre Frau Mutter; Ihr Fräulein Schwester. (5) Of after fractions is generally not translated, the following noun, if the numerator of the fraction is more than one, being placed in the plural: drei viertel Ellen (but drei viertel Pfund. See No. 65).

Wer ist hier gewesen? Herr Moll ist hier gewesen; er hat dieses Buch gebracht. Bist du bei dem Schuhmacher gewesen? Ich bin heute bei Ihrem Schuhmacher gewesen; er hat Ihre Stiefel schon gemacht. Wo seid ihr diesen Morgen gewesen? Wir sind bei unserm Freunde Karl gewesen, welcher sehr krank ist. Dieser Herr ist drei Jahre in Wien gewesen, und seine Brüder sind sehr lange in Konstantinopel gewesen. Du bist nicht fleißig gewesen, du hast deine Aufgaben noch nicht gemacht. Ich bin gestern bei Frau Röder gewesen; sie ist eine sehr liebenswürdige Dame. Ist Fräulein Emilie oft in dieser Stadt gewesen? Sie ist schon dreimal hier gewesen. Haben Sie

Herrn Scholl gekannt? Ich habe ihn in Berlin gekannt; wir sind oft zusammen ausgegangen. Wie lange sind Sie in Madrid gewesen? Ich bin nur ein halbes Jahr da gewesen, aber ich bin drei viertel Jahre in Paris, und ein viertel Jahr in Wien gewesen. Haben Sie die Herren Nollet schon gesehen? Ja, Madame, ich habe sie gestern bei einem meiner Freunde gesehen. Ist meine Mutter hier gewesen? Nein, [mein] Fräulein; ich habe Ihre Frau Mutter nicht gesehen; aber Ihr Herr Vater und Ihr Herr Bruder sind diesen Morgen einmal hier gewesen.

80.

Has [there] been anybody in my room? Yes, your son has been there. Has the tailor been here? No, he has not yet been here. Hast thou been at the joiner's? No, I have not yet been there. We have many flowers; we have been in the garden of Mr. Nollet. Have you also been at Mr. Moll's? My brother has never been more contented than to-day; he has received from his uncle a beautiful gold watch, and half a dozen pocket-handkerchiefs. How long have you been in Paris? We have been there six months. These gentlemen have done much business (plur.); they have been very successful. Are Messrs. N. already departed for Cologne? They are departed this morning with their uncle; I have seen them at Mrs. Sicard's. Has Miss Louisa been here to-day? No, Madam, your sister has not been here; I have seen her three quarters of an hour ago at your brother's [house]. Give me half a yard of (von) this linen. Have you ever known my father? Yes, I have seen him three or four times at your sister's.

81.

*Imperfect Tense:* ich war, I was;  
du warst, thou wast;  
er war, he was;  
wir waren, we were;  
ihr waret, you were;  
sie waren, they were.

*Chemals*, formerly; *die Schule*, the school; *als*, when.

**Obs.** — When a clause begins with *als*, *when*, the verb is placed at the end of the clause.

Wo warst du diesen Morgen? Ich war bei meinem Vetter, welcher von Frankfurt angekommen ist. Mein Bruder und ich waren bei deinem Vater. Ihre Tante war schon abgereist. Herr Moll war ehemals sehr reich; er hat seit zehn Jahren viel verloren. Waren Sie noch nicht bei Herrn Mably? Ich bin gestern da gewesen, aber er war ausgegangen. Wie alt war Ihr Herr Bruder, als er in Köln war? Er war neunzehn oder zwanzig Jahre alt. Wir waren nicht zusammen; er war in Köln und ich war in Düsseldorf. Meine Schwestern waren lange in Brüssel bei Herrn Rollet. Warum sind Sie gestern nicht gekommen? Ich war gestern krank. Waren diese Herren immer so reich? Haben Sie immer so viele Freunde gehabt? Warst du diesen Morgen in [der] Schule? Ich bin heute nicht in [der] Schule gewesen. Ich war in [der] Stadt, als Sie gestern bei meinem Vater waren.

82.

I was formerly much happier; I was young and strong. Wast thou always as contented as to-day? My father was formerly very rich. My sisters were very ill yesterday. How old were you when you were in France? I was fifteen years and six months old. Was my room open when I was in school? No, but the windows were open. This girl was much prettier when she was young. John and William were always your friends. Were you not at my brother's when you were in town? I have known your father when you were still a child.

83.

*Imperfect Tense:* ich hatte, I had;  
 du hattest, thou hadst;  
 er hatte, he had;  
 wir hatten, we had;  
 ihr hattet, you had;  
 sie hatten, they had.

Die Eltern, the parents;  
 der eine, the one;

jetzt, now;  
 der andere, the other.

Obs.—Ein and ander, when not followed by a noun, decline **WEAK** or **STRONG**, according to the rules for ordinary adjectives.

Du hattest gestern einen neuen Hut; hast du ihn verloren? Der Hut, den ich gestern hatte, gehört meinem Bruder. Ihr hattet viele



Freunde, als ihr noch jung waret; warum habt ihr jetzt so wenige? Wir haben mehr Freunde als ihr. Mein Onkel hat alle Pferde, die er ehemals hatte, verkauft. Ich hatte zwei Schwestern; die eine war in Wien, die andere in Berlin; hast du sie gekannt? Ich habe diejenige gekannt, die in Berlin war; hatte sie nicht zwei Töchter? Hatten Sie nicht vier Häuser in der Stadt? Sie haben Recht; aber ich habe zwei von diesen Häusern verkauft; ich hatte in dem einen gewohnt, und mein Bruder in dem andern.

84.

I had formerly little money; but I am now richer than you. You were (*had* in German. See No. 17) wrong, my dear friend; but your brothers were right. Nobody had any money for my brother when he was in Cologne. Did you have (*had you*) your lessons when you were yesterday in school? No, I was sick; but my brother had all his lessons. Hadst thou still thy parents when thou wast in Boston? Where had you your books when you were in the house of your sister? My brother had them in his room. We had few friends when we were in Berlin, but we had many when we were in Cologne. Where are the little dogs which Miss Emily had when she was at your mother's? She has sold the one, and the other is dead. How many servants had you when you were in France? What had you in your hands when you were in your room? I had a piece of sugar in the one hand, and two little bullets in the other.

85.

<i>Nom.</i> ich, I;	du, thou;	er, he;	sie, she;	es, it;
<i>Dat.</i> mir, to me;	dir, to thee;	ihm, to him;	ihr, to her;	ihm, to it.

<i>Infinitives</i> :	kaufen, to buy;	thun,† to do;
	verkaufen, to sell;	machen,† to make, to do;
	geben, to give;	lesen, to read;
	leihen, to lend;	sehen, to see;

schreiben, to write.

Wachsam, watchful;	die Zeit, the time;
Rust haben, to have a mind;	die Güte, the kindness.
*der Thaler, the dollar;	

Ich kann, I can; du kannst, thou canst; er kann, he can; wir können, we can; ihr könnt, you can; sie können, they can. *Inf.*: können, to be able.

† Machen and thun are thus distinguished in German: thun is to act for any purpose; machen, to act for the production of a work.

**Obs.**—(1) All German infinitives end in *n* (mostly in *en*).— (2) English infinitives with *to* must generally be rendered by German infinitives with *zu*. If the English infinitives lose their sign *to*, the German corresponding infinitive is generally employed without *zu*: *ich kann lesen, I can read; ich habe zu thun, I have to do*.— (3) The German infinitive is placed last in the ordinary sentence, but so that it precedes the past participle, if there is one.

(4) The English objective case (*me, thee, him, etc.*) must be translated by the German *dative*, if we may supply the preposition *to*: *Give me (to me) your pen, geben Sie mir Ihre Feder*.— (5) Personal pronouns in the accusative or dative (without prepositions), must generally be placed before the accusative or dative of substantives, and before all other adjuncts of the verb.

Kannst du mir dieses Buch leihen? Ich kann dir dieses Buch nicht leihen; es gehört meinem Vetter Heinrich. Wer kann diesen Brief lesen? Ich kann ihn lesen; er ist sehr gut geschrieben. Wir können diesen Morgen nicht schreiben. Warum könnt ihr nicht schreiben? Wir haben keine Tinte. Können Sie meinem Bruder Ihre Uhr leihen? Ich kann ihm meine Uhr nicht leihen, ich habe sie dem Herrn S. verkauft. Haben Sie meiner Schwester eine Feder gegeben? Ich habe ihr keine Feder gegeben. Haben Sie Lust, diesen Hund zu kaufen? Ich habe keine Lust, ihn zu kaufen; er ist nicht wachsam. Hat Ihr Bruder heute nichts zu thun? Er hat drei Briefe zu schreiben. Wir haben noch zwei Aufgaben zu machen. Ich hatte gestern das Vergnügen, Ihr Fräulein Schwester zu sehen. Haben Sie Zeit, diesen Brief zu lesen? Ich habe jetzt keine Zeit, ihn zu lesen. Können Sie mir einen Regenschirm geben? Ich kann Ihnen keinen geben, ich habe nur einen. Ihr Herr Bruder hat die Güte, mir den seinigen zu leihen. Sind Sie gestern bei meiner Tante gewesen? Nein, ich war gestern nicht bei ihr; ich hatte zu viele Geschäfte.

Can you do that exercise? Yes, I can (do it); but my brother cannot (can it not do). Will you (Wollen Sie) lend me your penknife? I cannot lend thee my penknife; my sister has taken it. Have you given a pen to my cousin? Yes, I have given him one. Hast thou sold thy dog to my sister? I have not sold her my dog. Canst thou not lend me twenty dollars? I cannot do it to-day. We can read this book. These gentlemen cannot write their letters; they have no paper. Hast

thou a mind to buy a pair of boots? Has your brother a mind to sell his ring? Had you the kindness to give a glass of water to this poor man? My friend had the pleasure to see his parents. I had no time to read all these letters. My father had the kindness to buy me a gold watch. Hast thou seen it? I have not yet seen it. Have you been with Ferdinand to-day? I have been with him this morning.

87.

<i>Nom.</i> wir, we;	ihr (Sie), you;	sie, they;
<i>Dat.</i> uns, to us;	euch (Ihnen), to you;	ihnen, to them.
gehen, to go;	sein, to be;	
kommen, to come;	wenn, if;	
trinken, to drink;	unwohl, unwell; man, one;	
essen, to eat;	das Unglück, the misfortune;	
haben, to have;	das Paar, the pair, the couple.	

ich will, I will; du willst, thou wilt; er will, he will; wir wollen, we will; ihr wollt, you will; sie wollen, they will. *Inf.:* wollen, to be willing.

Obs.—Clauses introduced by *wenn* require the verb to be placed last in the clause; the same as in relative sentences (No. 45).

Willst du mit mir gehen? Ich kann nicht mit dir gehen, ich habe keine Zeit. Ich will dir ein schönes Buch leihen, wenn du fleißig bist. Kann dein Bruder heute nicht kommen? Er hat keine Lust zu kommen; er ist unwohl. Wir wollen jetzt unsere Aufgaben machen. Wollen Sie ein Glas Wein trinken? Nein, aber ich will ein Stück Fleisch oder Käse essen. Wollen Sie ein wenig Senf und Salz? Können Sie uns diesen Band leihen? Ich kann Ihnen diesen Band nicht leihen, mein Bruder will ihn haben. Man kann nicht unglücklicher sein, als dieser junge Mann; er hat seine Eltern und seine Brüder und Schwestern verloren. Wer will diesen Apfel? Ich will ihn haben. Was wollt ihr jetzt thun? Wir wollen ein Paar Briefe schreiben. Ich will euch einen Korb Kirschen geben, wenn ihr fleißig sein wollt. Wollen Sie die Güte haben, mir eine Nadel zu geben? Ich habe jetzt keine, ich kann Ihnen keine geben. Haben Sie Zeit, mit uns zu gehen? Ich habe keine Zeit, mit Ihnen zu gehen.

88.

What hast thou to do? I have nothing to do. Wilt thou read this book? Yes, I will read it. How is (Was macht) thy

brother? He is unwell, he cannot come. Where can one buy these fine penknives? One can buy them at our neighbor's. Will you give us a little ink? Can your sister lend us her penknife? What do these gentlemen want (what will these etc.)? These ladies will buy an umbrella. One cannot be more unhappy than I [am], one cannot have more misfortune than I. Give us something to drink. What will you [have]? Will you have wine or water? Have I not lent you my cane? No, you have not lent it to me. Where are your brothers? I have sold them my dog. These men are very rich; all these houses belong to them.

89.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	mir, { to me; to myself;	dir, { to thee; to thyself;
		• { ihm, ihr, ihm, to him, to her, to it; sich, to himself, to herself, to itself, to one's self.	
<i>Acc.</i>	mich, { me; myself;	dich, { thee; thyself;	{ ihn, sie, es, him, her, it; sich, himself, herself, itself, one's self.
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	uns, { to us; to ourselves;	euch, { to you; to yourselves;
		{ ihnen, to them (Ihnen, to you); sich, to themselves, (to yourselves, to yourself).	
<i>Acc.</i>	uns, { us; ourselves;	euch, { you; yourselves;	{ sie, them (Sie, you); sich, themselves, (yourselves, yourself).

*Infinitives.*

loben, to praise;  
schlagen, to beat, to strike;  
waschen, to wash;  
verletzen, to hurt;  
spielen, to play;  
erlauben (with dat.), to permit, to allow;  
verteidigen, to defend;  
beschuldigen, to accuse;  
entschuldigen, to excuse;  
handeln, to act;  
retten, to save;  
sprechen, to speak, to talk;  
schneiden, to cut;  
aussetzen, to expose;  
in Acht nehmen (with Acc.), to take care of;

*Past Participles.*

gelobt, praised;  
geschlagen, beaten, struck;  
gewaschen, washed;  
verletzt, hurt;  
gespielt, played;  
erlaubt, permitted, allowed;  
verteidigt, defended;  
beschuldigt, accused;  
entschuldigt, excused;  
gehandelt, acted;  
gerettet, saved;  
gesprochen, spoken, talked;  
geschnitten, cut;  
ausgesetzt, exposed;  
in Acht genommen, taken care of.

Der Advocat, the lawyer; das Geschick, the ability; der Muth, the courage; die Seife, the soap; der Staub, the dust; die Armee, the army; der Verdacht, the suspicion; vorsichtig, cautious; unvorsichtig, incautious; angenehm, pleasant; unangenehm, unpleasant; so, thus; da (conjunction), since; weil, because.

Obs—(1) Weil and da (since) require the following verb to be at the end of the clause (No. 45).—(2) Adjectives are generally preceded by their qualifying words or adjuncts: Es ist mir angenehm, it is pleasant to me.

Der Lehrer hat dich gelobt, weil du fleißig gewesen bist. Dein Bruder ist ein böser Knabe; er hat mich gestern geschlagen. Hast du dich schon gewaschen? Ich habe mich noch nicht gewaschen; aber Heinrich hat sich schon seit einer Stunde gewaschen. Ich habe mich heute mit einem Messer verletzt. Karl hat sich auch geschnitten; er hat mit seinem Federmesser gespielt. Wollen Sie uns erlauben, in Ihrem Garten zu spielen? Ich will es euch erlauben, wenn ihr die Blumen in Acht nehmen wollt. Warum seid ihr heute nicht ausgegangen? Wir wollen uns in Acht nehmen, weil wir krank gewesen sind. Es ist leicht, sich in Acht zu nehmen, wenn man vorsichtig ist. Dieser Advocat hat dich mit großem Geschick vertheidigt. Du hast Unrecht, dich zu vertheidigen, da dich noch Niemand beschuldigt hat. Es ist Unrecht, sich zu vertheidigen, wenn man nicht beschuldigt ist. Sie können sich nicht entschuldigen, [meine] Herren; Niemand kann sich entschuldigen, der so gehandelt hat. Es kann Ihnen nicht schwer sein, theurer Freund, sich zu entschuldigen, da Sie völlig (perfectly) Recht haben. Es ist meiner Schwester sehr unangenehm, sich in dieser Gefahr zu sehen.

90.

It is very pleasant to me, to hear you speak thus. It is easy for (to) you to accuse me if I cannot defend myself. Hast thou hurt thyself, when thou wast in my room? I have not hurt myself, but William has hurt himself with his fork. How can you permit yourself to hurt the trees in my garden? Thou art right to take care of thyself, since thou hast been sick. These boys have struck me to-day; but thy brother has defended me with great courage. William's father has beaten us, because we have played in his garden. Children, I cannot praise you to-day, because you have not done your lessons. (My) gentlemen, you have not been wise; to excuse one's self if one

is not accused, is incautious. Charles had cut himself when he was in your garden. Will you give me some soap and water? I will wash myself, and clean myself of the dust. Why have you not been in school, children? We have already excused ourselves with (bei) the teacher. Our army is lost, it cannot save itself. These men have exposed themselves to a great danger. You have exposed yourselves to(a)grave (schwer) suspicion, since you have taken what does not belong to you.

91.

Sagen (past part. gesagt), to say, to tell;	einen Besuch machen, to pay a visit;
schicken, to send;	solcher, solche, solches (strong declension), such;
glauben (past part. geglaubt), to believe;	feindlich, hostile;
wissen, to know;	dort, there (at that place);
versprechen, to promise;	die Bekanntschaft, acquaintance;
fürchten (past part. gefürchtet), to be afraid;	der Feind, the enemy;
sich weigern (past part. geweigert), to refuse);	daß, that (conjunction);
	Alles, was, all that, everything that;
	Nichts, was, nothing that.

*Inf. müssen:* ich muß, I must; du mußt, thou must; er muß, he must; wir müssen, we must; ihr müßt, you must; sie müssen, they must.

*I have been in New York for a year, ich bin [schon] seit einem Jahr in New York.*

**Obs.**—(1) Clauses, introduced by daß require the verb to be at the end of the clause (No. 45).—(2) The indefinite pronoun man is only used in the nominative, and is translated by *one*, by the indefinite *people* or by *they*: Man muß sagen, *one (they) must say*. Often man may be rendered by an English passive construction: man glaubt, *it is believed*.—(3) The accusative of personal pronouns generally precedes the dative.

Können Sie mir sagen, wo Herr Moll wohnt? Ich kann [es] Ihnen nicht sagen. Wollen Sie mir diese Feder leihen? Ich kann sie Ihnen nicht leihen, sie gehört mir nicht. Ich muß heute dem Fräulein S. einen Besuch machen; sie ist gestern mit ihrer Mutter angekommen. Mußt du schon gehen? Wo sind meine Schuhe? Hat der Schuhmacher sie noch nicht gebracht? Nein, er will sie dir in einer Stunde schicken. Wie kannst du [es] wissen? Er hat [es] mir gesagt. Dein Bruder muß noch seine Aufgaben machen. Wir müssen

Alles thun, was unsern Eltern und Lehrern angenehm ist. Ihr müßt meinen Vetter besuchen; er ist seit drei Wochen krank. Heinrich und Wilhelm müssen viele Bücher haben. Man muß nicht ausgehen, wenn man krank ist. Man muß sich nicht vertheidigen, wenn man nicht beschuldigt ist. Sie müssen nicht Alles glauben, was man Ihnen sagt. Sie müssen sich nicht solcher Gefahr aussetzen. Man glaubt, daß die Preußen die feindliche Armee geschlagen haben. Man sagt, daß der Feind sich nicht länger vertheidigen kann. Man glaubt nicht, daß du dies Buch geschrieben hast. Sie müssen sich in Acht nehmen, wenn Sie in meinen Garten gehen wollen. Sie müssen wissen, daß Ihr Freund Karl sich geweigert hat, mir jene Bücher zu schicken. Warum hast du dich geweigert, nach Wien zu gehen? Ich habe mich nicht geweigert, nach Wien zu gehen; aber ich muß fürchten, daß ich dort keine Geschäfte machen kann. Wir haben uns geweigert, dir unser Haus zu verkaufen, weil es für dich zu groß ist. Wir sind schon seit vier Wochen in der Stadt, aber Niemand hat uns einen Besuch gemacht.

92.

My friend had the kindness to send me a basket of cherries. You have not yet sent me my book. Who has taken my pen? I cannot tell (it) thee. This penknife belongs to my brother; thou must give it to him. Charles will not lend me his umbrella. Why will he not lend it to thee? One must not pay visits if one is unwell. One must promise nothing that one cannot do. One must never praise one's self. I can promise you a great pleasure if you will make the acquaintance of my friend; you must pay him a visit. I cannot believe (it) that you have such suspicion. It is said that you have been for two years in this country. It has been said that you have refused to pay a visit to your sick brother. We have not refused to write this letter, but we must be cautious in this affair (Geschäft). Must we not be afraid that our friends have lost all (that) they have? We will do nothing that can be unpleasant to you, but you must have the kindness to do what you have promised to us.

---

## PART III.

93.

*Present Indicative. Sing.* 1. ich lobe, I praise, I am praising, I do praise;  
2. (du lobest),\* du lobst, thou praisest, etc.;  
3. (er lobet), er lobt, he praises;

*Plural.* 1. wir loben, we praise;  
2. (ihr lobet), ihr lobt, you praise;  
3. sie loben, they praise.

*Imperative. Sing.* lobe (du), praise (thou);

*Plural.* lobt (ihr), praise (you);  
loben Sie, praise (you) [for polite conversation].

finden, to find;	wünschen, to wish, to desire;
suchen (with acc.), to seek, to look for;	arbeiten, to work, to labor;
wohnen, to dwell, reside, live;	das Tuch, the cloth;
bringen, to bring;	die Straße, the street;
bedauern, to regret, to pity;	der Buchhändler, the bookseller;
bauen, to build;	Jedermann, every body;
reiten, to ride;	scharf, sharp;
tadeln, to censure, to blame;	ganz, whole.

Obs.—1. The *e* in the endings of the 2d and 3d pers. sing. and 2d plural is always used if the infinitive ends in *den* or *ten* (finden, arbeiten). In verbs with infinitives in *eln* and *ern* (tadeln, bedauern) the *e* of the ending is dropped in all persons, except the 1st pers. sing.

2. The demonstrative pronoun *that*, used without a noun, and referring to something mentioned before, or pointed at, is rendered by the neuter *das* or *dies* (instead of *dieses*).

3. Mixed fractions are placed wholly before the following noun: *zwei und eine viertel Meile*, two miles and a quarter.

Was suchen Sie? Ich suche meine Feder. Mein Bruder sucht seinen Bleistift. Wir suchen unsern Hund. Diese Kinder suchen ihre Bücher. Wo kaufen Sie Ihr Papier? Wir kaufen unser Papier

\* The forms enclosed in parentheses are obsolete.



bei dem Buchhändler. Ich finde meinen Stock nicht. Wer hat meinen Stock genommen? Ich glaube, daß Ihr Bruder ihn genommen hat. Ich liebe diesen Knaben nicht; er ist immer unartig. Du liebst deinen Lehrer. Gott liebt die guten Menschen. Gute Kinder lieben ihre Eltern. Ist es wahr, daß Ihr Onkel sein Haus verkauft? Wie theuer verkaufen Sie die (a) Elle von diesem Tuche? Ich verkaufe die (a) Elle dieses Tuches zu (at) vier Thalern. Das ist sehr theuer. Findest du nicht, Heinrich, daß das sehr theuer ist? Ja, ich finde es sehr theuer. Wir verkaufen aber viel von diesem Tuche. Jedermann findet es schön. Schicken Sie mir drei und eine halbe Elle! Wissen Sie, wo ich wohne? Ja, Sie wohnen in der Karlsstraße. Ich muß wünschen, daß Sie sich ein wenig in Acht nehmen. Warum tadelt ihr eure Freunde? Ich fürchte, daß ihr nie Jemand lobt. Mein Freund Karl arbeitet den ganzen Tag; er ist ein sehr fleißiger Knabe. Bringe mir meinen Stock, Wilhelm; ich will ausgehen. Leihen Sie mir gefälligst Ihr Federmesser! Hier hast du es, aber schneide dich nicht; es ist scharf.

94.

What are you doing? I am reading the book which your brother has lent me. You read too much. Why do you not write? I have already written three letters. My cousins never write. You always blame your cousins; you must not blame them. What art thou doing? I am doing my exercise. What is thy sister doing? She is working. Can you tell me where Mr. N. lives? He lives in (the) William street. Dost thou live with (bei) thy uncle? No, I do not live with him. We regret that thy father is sick. Do you know, that your uncle is building a new house? Where is your little brother? I believe that he is playing in the garden. I am afraid that thou playest too much, my son; thou must play less and work more. Has your brother found my watch? He finds all (that) he seeks. I can not excuse you if you are acting thus. Write this letter for me, if you please. Tell my brother that he must go to Vienna with thee. Do not excuse thyself! I believe what thou sayest to me. My father wishes that thou ridest to the village, and buyest there ten pounds of

sugar and twenty yards of linen. How much coffee have you bought? Three pounds and three quarters.

95.

*Imperfect Indicative.* ich lobte, I praised, I did praise, was praising;  
du lobtest, thou praisedst, etc.;  
er lobte, he praised;  
wir lobten, we praised;  
ihr lobtet, you praised;  
sie lobten, they praised.

Besuchen, to visit;	antworten, (with dat.), to answer;
versuchen, to attempt, to try, to en-	senden, to send;
töbten, to kill;	[deavor; kennen*, to know;
beabsichtigen, to intend;	lernen, to learn;
verlassen, to quit, to leave;	begleiten, to accompany;
sich begeben, to proceed, to betake	amüsiren, to amuse;
one's self;	der Versuch, the attempt;
denken, to think;	der Tod, the death;
sich beschäftigen, to occupy one's self;	die Absicht, the intention, design;
brennen, to burn;	die Verstärkung, the reinforcement;
reden, to speak;	die Reise, the journey;
bemerken, to perceive;	die Ankunft, the arrival;
hinreichen, to be sufficient;	das Geld, the money;
helfen, (with dat.), to help;	die Wohnung, the residence;
ausführen, to accomplish;	der Bote, the messenger;
erwarten, to expect;	das Wetter, the weather;
anzeigen, to announce;	während, ** while.

Obs.—1. The imperfect ending is etc in regular verbs ending in *ben*, *ten*, *gnen* and *chnen* (ich redete, arbeitete, es regnete), except *senden* and *wenden*, which generally form *sandte*, *wandte*.

2. The imperfections of *bringen* and *denken* are *brachte* and *dachte*; of *brennen*, *brannte*; *kennen*, *kannte*; *nennen*, *nannte*; *rennen*, *rannte*.

3. *Wollen* forms regularly *wollte*; *können* makes *konnte*, and *müssen*, *mußte*, both without softening the vowel. Ich wollte is translated by *I was willing*, *I intended*, *I was going to*, *I wished*; ich wollte nicht, *I was unwilling*, *I did not choose*; ich mußte, *I was obliged to*; ich konnte, *I could*.

4. If conjunctions that throw the verb to the end of the clause (*daß*, *als*, *wenn*, *da*, *weil*, *während* etc.) precede their principal sentences, the verb of the latter is placed before its subject:

ich gehe, wenn er kommt, I go if he comes,  
wenn er kommt, gehe ich, if he comes, I go.

\* *Kennen* (to know) means 'to have an acquaintance with somebody or something'; *wissen*, (to know) means 'to have a knowledge of something.'

\*\* *Während* requires the verb to be at the end of the clause.

5. In this instance (Obs. 4) the principal sentence is often preceded by the adverb *so*, which in that position cannot be expressed in English: Wenn er kommt, *so* gehe ich.

6. Feminine nouns consisting of more than one syllable, except those in *funft* and *niß*, take *en* in all cases of the plural, without softening the radical vowel. For feminine nouns in *el* and *er* see p. 33.

Ich war in dem Garten, als dein Bruder uns besuchte. Als Booth Abraham Lincoln tödtete, war ich in Deutschland. Ich wünschte deinen Bruder in Wien zu sehen, da ich ihn in Berlin nicht sehen konnte. Da ich alles Geld verloren hatte, beabsichtigte ich meine Uhr zu verkaufen. Da ich Paris verlassen mußte, so wollte ich mich nach Köln begeben. Wir machten keinen Versuch nach der Stadt zu gehen, weil es den ganzen Tag regnete. Weil Niemand für deinen Bruder redete, so versuchten wir [*es*], ihn zu vertheidigen. Wir spielten in dem Garten, während dein Bruder in seinem Zimmer arbeitete. Während wir bei dir speisten, brannte unser Haus. Als wir dich nicht im Hause bemerkten, dachten wir, daß du dich im Garten beschäftigtest. Wenn du dich weigerst, uns deine Absichten zu sagen, so können wir dir nicht helfen. Daß dein Bruder in unserer Stadt wohnte, konnte ich nicht wissen.

96.

I did not attempt to proceed to Paris since my money was not sufficient for the journey. We did not expect the arrival of thy brother, since it rained the whole day. Since my brother refused to help me, I could not accomplish my designs. Since my friends were afraid to come to (*zu*) us, we were obliged to visit them. We were expecting the arrival of your brother, when a messenger brought us your letter that announced his death. We could not yesterday come to town, because the weather was bad. Just (*Gerade*) because he was wrong, I did not answer him. Why did you not send your son, if you could not come to town? If you thought so of him, you did not know the man. My brother was learning his lesson while I accompanied Charles into the garden. While our house was burning, I amused myself with my friend William. That Henry did not choose to come, I could not

know. Since Mr. Davis was going to sell the house in which I lived, I was obliged to look for another residence. When we perceived the designs of the enemy, we sent reinforcements into the village.

97.

*Future Indicative.* ich werde loben, I shall or will praise; I am going to praise;  
 du wirst loben, thou wilt praise;  
 er wird loben, he will praise;  
 wir werden loben, we shall praise;  
 ihr werdet loben, you will praise;  
 sie werden loben, they will praise.

Acht Tage, a week;	der Diener, the man-servant;
vierzehn Tage, a fortnight;	mitnehmen, to take along;
bis*, till, until; in zwei bis drei Ta-	ankommen, to arrive;
gen, in two or three days;	abreisen, to depart;
noch einmal, once more;	hören, to hear;
wieder, again;	regnen, to rain;
morgen, to-morrow;	dauern, to last;
möglich, possible	bleiben, to remain;
der Krieg, the war;	ersuchen, to request;
die Angelegenheit, the affair;	verlieren, to lose.

Obs.—(1) The FUTURE is formed by the verb werden as auxiliary, and the infinitive of the verb without zu. This infinitive in simple sentences must be placed at the end of the clause. The verb werden, not followed by an infinitive, denotes *to become*: sie werden Freunde, they become friends. — (2) Shall in the 2. and 3. pers. sing. and plur. is translated by the verb sollen, which is irregular in the pres. indicative sing.: ich soll, du sollst, er soll. Shall in questions is translated by sollen even in the first person: shall I come, soll ich kommen? — (3) If I will etc. means *to be willing, to intend*, it should be translated by ich will. — (4) The interrogative adverb when is translated by wann.

Ich werde diesen Abend das Vergnügen haben, meinen Onkel zu sehen. Ich werde dir diesen hübschen Ring geben, wenn du fleißig sein wirst. Heinrich wird mir heute ein Paar schöne Handschuhe kaufen. Deine Schwester wird zufrieden sein, wenn sie ihre Aufgabe ge-

\* Bis, if it is used as a conjunction has the verb at the end of the clause.

macht hat. Wenn wir in N. sein werden, werden wir viel Vergnügen haben. Wann werden Sie mich besuchen? Ich glaube, daß wir Sie morgen besuchen werden. Meine Brüder werden heute oder morgen auch kommen. Es wird meinem Vater sehr viel Vergnügen machen (give), sie noch einmal zu sehen. Wann werden Sie Ihrem Freunde Karl schreiben? Ich werde ihm in acht bis vierzehn Tagen schreiben. Wollen Sie die Güte haben, mir das Buch zu schicken, welches Sie mir versprochen haben? Ich werde es Ihnen heute schicken, Fräulein. Mein Diener wird es Ihnen bringen. Ihr Freund scheint (seems) arm zu werden. Soll ich Ihnen jetzt helfen, oder soll ich im Garten arbeiten, bis Sie fertig (done) sein werden? Da du dich morgen nach Wien begeben wirst, so ersuche ich dich, meinen Sohn mitzunehmen. Bleiben Sie in Berlin, bis ich dort ankommen werde?

98.

Will you go with us? I do not believe that my father will allow (it to) me. Has the shoemaker brought my boots? No, he will bring them to you this evening. What shall we do now? We will go to town together (together to town). Will you have the kindness to lend me your horse? I shall lend it to you with much pleasure. We shall play to-day in the garden of our uncle; he will allow us. This man is becoming rich. I hear that thou art going to depart for Germany; wilt thou not take along thy children? Mr. Nollet has (is) arrived who desires to speak with you. Tell him that I will not see him. My father will arrive here in [a] short time; will you visit him? Excuse me, I must depart in three or four hours. It will not be possible for (to) me to see him. Since the war will last longer than we expected, it will be better if we remain in the country. Will you accompany us if we go to town? If your friend is losing so much money, he will soon become poor. What will your father say, if he hears that you are going to leave the country? I shall not write you again till I shall come (till I come) to Vienna. Will the weather be good or bad to-morrow? I believe that it is going to rain to-morrow. Shall I try it once more? Do not try it till you have spoken again with me. Do you know that our friend William is going to leave our town?

When is he going to depart? I believe that he will depart in five or six days. If thou wilt (wirst) bring me pen, ink, and paper, I shall try to write that letter for you.

99.

*Present Subjunctive.* *Sing.* ich lobe, I praise (praised etc.);  
du lobest, thou praise (praisedst etc.);  
er lobe, he praise (praised etc.).

*Plur.* wir loben, ihr lobet, sie loben.

*Imperfect Subjunctive.* ich lobte etc. (like imperfect indicative).

*Perfect Indicative.* ich habe (du hast, er hat etc.) gelobt, I have praised.

*Perfect Subjunctive.* ich habe (du habest, er habe, wir haben, ihr habet, sie haben) gelobt.

*Perfect Infinitive.* gelobt haben, gelobt zu haben, to have praised.

*Pluperfect Indicative.* ich hatte (du hättest etc.) gelobt, I had praised.

*Pluperfect Subjunctive.* ich hätte (du hättest etc.) gelobt.

Obs.—1. The present subjunctive generally does not drop the *e* in the endings. The third person sing. is always like the first.

2. The first persons subjunct. present of können, wollen, müssen are: ich könne, ich wolle, ich müsse, and are conjugated like the subjunctive of ich lobe. Haben, to have, makes the pres. subj.: ich habe, du habest, er habe, wir haben, ihr habet, sie haben. Sein, to be, has the pres. subj.: ich sei, du seiest, er sei, wir seien, ihr seiet, sie seien.

3. The imperfect subjunctives of können, wollen, müssen are: ich könnte, (could), wollte, müßte. Haben, sein, bringen, denken soften in the imperf. subjunct. the *a* of their imperfect indicatives: ich wäre (I were), ich dächte, ich brächte. Senden, wenden, brennen, kennen, nennen, rennen form their imperf. subjunct. regularly, restoring the *e* of the infinitives: ich sendete, wendete, brennte, konnte, nannte, rennte.

4. The perfect indic. of haben and sein are: ich habe gehabt, I have had; ich bin gewesen, I have been; perfect subjunctive: ich habe (du habest etc.) gehabt; ich sei (du seiest etc.) gewesen; pluperfect indicative: ich hatte gehabt, I had had; ich war gewesen, I had been; pluperfect subjunctive: ich hätte gehabt; ich wäre gewesen.

5. In clauses introduced by daß the subjunctive is under certain circumstances more generally used than the indicative. This is the case if the clause introduced by daß is dependent on a verb of HEARING, THINKING, BELIEVING or SAYING, in the IMPERFECT or PLUPERFECT tense:

*I believe that he comes, ich glaube, daß er k o m m t ; but:*

*I believed that he came (was coming), ich glaubte, daß er k o m m e.*

Such verbs as require the verbs in the following clause to be in the subjunctive are: denken, überzeugt sein, hören, glauben, wäghen, fürchten, sagen, antworten, schreiben, and the like.


6. In clauses introduced by *that*, the English past tense is translated either by the PRESENT OR IMPERFECT subjunctive, and the English pluperfect either by the PERFECT OR PLUPERFECT subjunctive:

They believed that he *learned*, sie glaubten, daß er lerne (or lerne te).

They said that he *had learned*, sie sagten, daß er gelernt habe (or hätte). But the use of the present and perfect subjunctives must be avoided, when its forms would not be distinguishable from the indicative: ich glaubte, daß sie lernten (not lernen); ich glaubte, daß sie gelernt hätten (not haben).

7. In all these constructions the conjunction *daß* may be omitted, and the verb (subjunctive) of the clause takes its place immediately after the subject: ich glaubte, er sei in der Stadt, I believed he was in the city.

8. The same usage of the subjunctive takes place in clauses introduced by *ob* (whether, if), after the imperfect or pluperfect of verbs of asking (fragen) or doubting (zweifeln): ich fragte ihn, ob er krank sei (or wäre), I asked him whether (if) he was sick.

 If the clause introduced by *daß* depends on verbs in the PRESENT OR FUTURE, the subjunctive is more rarely used than the indicative.

Wähnen, to suppose (wrongly);  
vermuthen, to presume;  
erklären, to declare;  
annehmen, to accept;  
behaupten, to state, to assert;  
bemerkten, to remark;  
scheinen, to seem;  
fragen, to ask (a question);  
versichern, to assure;  
vorbereiten (past part. vorbereitet), to prepare;  
leugnen, to deny;  
zweifeln, to doubt;  
zahlen, to pay;  
überzeugt, convinced;

unzulässig, inadmissible;  
richtig, correct;  
unrichtig, incorrect;  
täglich, daily;  
die Zufuhr, supply, provision;  
der Vorschlag, the proposition;  
die Ansicht, the view;  
die Butter, the butter;  
das Ei (pl. Eier), the egg;  
die Wahrheit, the truth;  
die Gesellschaft, the company;  
die Schlacht, the battle;  
der General, the general;  
\*der Einwohner, the inhabitant;  
ob, whether, if.

Ich glaubte, daß er spiele. Ich glaubte, daß sie spielten. Ich wähnte, daß du krank seiest. Ich wähnte, du seiest krank. Wir vermutheten, daß du deine Aufgaben lerntest. Die Feinde dachten, daß wir keine Zufuhren hätten. Meine Freunde fürchteten, ich sei todt. Er war überzeugt, daß ich mich nach Berlin begeben hätte. Dein Freund erklärte, daß er deinen Vorschlag nicht annehmen könne. Diese Männer hatten behauptet, daß du in Köln wohntest. Ich bemerkte, daß diese Ansicht unrichtig zu sein scheine. Er versicherte mir,

daß er immer diese Absicht gehabt habe. Der Lehrer dachte, daß wir uns nicht vorbereitet hätten. Meine Freunde schrieben mir, sie brächten täglich Butter und Eier nach der Stadt. Wilhelm leugnete, daß er jemals die Absicht gehabt hätte, sein Haus zu verkaufen. Dein Vater fragte mich, ob ich jemals in Wien gewesen sei. Ich zweifelte, ob dieser Mann dir die Wahrheit sage.

100.

My brother thought that thou wast working; but I was afraid that thou wast playing. He supposed [wrongly] that I was wrong. He often told me (told me often) that he had never had such a suspicion. We presumed, Henry was in your company. Were you not convinced that we could not lose that battle? The general declared that these propositions were inadmissible. He stated that the English were sending provisions, and that the inhabitants were bringing them to the city. How could you say that I was living in France? Did I not always say that your views were correct? He remarked that he knew me, and [that] your suspicion could not be correct. My brother asked me whether I had ever had such designs? Henry answered me that he was not prepared to declare his views; he doubted if we could pay that money. I supposed you were accompanying your brother. I was afraid you were dead, since I had heard that you had not been in town for a month.

101.

<i>Future Subjunctive.</i>	ich werde loben, du werdest loben, er werde loben, wir werden loben, ihr werdet loben, sie werden loben.
<i>Conditional.</i>	ich würde loben, I should or would praise; du würdest loben, thou wouldst praise; er würde loben, he would praise; wir würden loben, we should praise; ihr würdet loben, you would praise; sie würden loben, they would praise.

Obs.—1. If a clause, introduced by *if*, is dependent on a verb in the potential mood with *should*, *would*, *could*, *might*, the clause is called HYPOTHETICAL, and requires in German the SUBJUNCTIVE of the IMPERFECT for the English past tense, and the SUBJUNCTIVE of the PLUPERFECT for the



English pluperfect. The conditional should not be used in clauses introduced by wenn (if): *I should praise you, if you were here*, ich würde Sie loben, wenn Sie hier wären; *I should praise you, if you worked (would work)*, ich würde Sie loben, wenn Sie arbeiteten (not arbeiten würden): *I should praise you, if you had worked*, ich würde Sie loben, wenn Sie gearbeitet hätten.

2. In the principal sentence of the hypothetical period the English potential with *should* or *would* is rendered either by the German conditional, or by the subjunctive of the imperfect (pluperfect): Ich würde zufrieden sein (or ich wäre zufrieden), wenn sie angekommen wären, I *should* be pleased if they had arrived. Sie hätten ihn gelobt, wenn Sie hier gewesen wären, you *would have* praised him if you had been here.

3. The English potential with *could* or *might* in the principal sentence is generally rendered by the subjunctive of the imperfect (or pluperfect, see p. 108.) of the modal auxiliary können (ich könnte) with the infinitive of the verb: Er könnte dies thun, wenn er hier wäre, he *could* (*might*) do this if he were here.

4. The imperfect subjunctive of the modal auxiliary müssen (ich müßte) in the principal sentence of hypothetical periods is generally rendered by 'I ought to' or 'I should be obliged to' or by similar circumlocutions: Sie müßten dies wissen, wenn Sie aufmerksam wären, you *ought to* know this if you were attentive. Ich müßte meinen Plan aufgeben, wenn dies der Fall wäre, I *should be obliged to* give up my plan if this were the case.

5. The imperfect subjunctive of the modal auxiliary mögen (ich möchte, see p. 108.) in the principal sentence of hypothetical periods, generally corresponds to 'I should wish to' or 'like to': Ich möchte ihn sehen, wenn es möglich wäre, I *should wish* (*would like*) to see him if it were possible.

6. In all these instances (No. 2—5.) the conditional clause is frequently understood: Was würden Sie thun? what would you do?

7. The English potential with *should* or *would* in clauses introduced by THAT (daß), is expressed either by the subjunctive of the future, or by the conditional (especially with a plural verb). But after verbs of WISHING, *would* is expressed by möchte, or by the imperfect subjunctive of the main verb: Ich hoffte, daß er kommen werde (or würde), I hoped that he *would* come. Er glaubte, daß sie bleiben würden (not werden), he believed that they *would* remain. Ich wünschte, daß sie kommen möchten (or kämen), I wished that they *would* come.

8. In clauses introduced by THAT, *could* generally corresponds to könnte, and *might* to möchte: Er dachte, daß sie nicht kommen könnten, he thought that they *could* not come. Er fürchtete, daß sie kommen möchten, he was afraid that they *might* come.

Ab schneiden, to cut off;  
erreichen, to reach;  
ändern (part. geändert), to change;  
zurückkehren, to return;

wählen, to choose, elect;  
befolgen (part. befolgt), to follow;  
reisen, to travel;  
sich zurückziehen, to retreat;

errichten, to establish;  
 bestätigen, to confirm;  
 bauen, to build;  
 hoffen, to hope;  
 fortsetzen, to continue;  
 der Rhein, the Rhine;  
 der Präsident, the President;  
 der Beschluß, the resolution;  
 der Gefallen, the favor;

der Rath, the advice;  
 der Bürger, the citizen;  
 die Regierung, the government;  
 das Postamt, the post-office;  
 gern, gladly, willingly;  
 spät, late;  
 bald, soon;  
 gesund, healthy;  
 sparsam, economical.

Der General fürchtete, daß die Feinde seine Zufuhren abschneiden würden. Wir fürchteten, daß du zu spät kommen möchtest. Dein Vetter wünschte, daß du dich nach Wien begeben möchtest. Die Einwohner hofften, daß die Feinde die Stadt nicht erreichen könnten. Ich glaubte nicht, daß dein Bruder seine Ansicht ändern werde. Wir vermutheten, daß Karl seine Aufgaben nicht haben würde. Ich dachte du werdest bald zurückkehren. Ich würde glücklicher sein, wenn ich Bücher und Freunde hätte. Ich würde mehr Vergnügen haben, wenn meine Schwestern hier wären. Du würdest nicht so reich sein, wenn du nicht so viele Geschäfte gemacht hättest. Wenn Heinrich Geld hätte, würde er diese Messer kaufen. Ich würde deinen Bruder besuchen, wenn ich Zeit hätte. Wir würden dich nicht tadeln, wenn du fleißiger gewesen wärest. Dein Onkel sagte mir, du würdest morgen nicht kommen. Welchen von diesen Stöcken würdest du wählen? Wem würdet ihr eure Blumen geben? Was würdest du sagen, wenn ich mein Pferd verkaufte? Ich würde dir erlauben zu spielen, wenn du deine Aufgaben gemacht hättest. Wenn du Zeit zu lesen hättest, würde ich dir ein nützliches Buch leihen. Ich würde gern mit dir gehen, wenn mein Lehrer es erlaubte; ich muß heute [noch] drei Briefe schreiben. Ich brächte dir gern deine Bücher, wenn ich sie hätte. Dein Vater wäre jetzt reich, wenn er meinen Vorschlag befolgt hätte. Du hättest Recht, wenn wir in Frankreich wären. Ich schickte dir meinen Diener, wenn er nicht ausgegangen wäre. Wenn wir in Deutschland wohnten, so hättest du nicht so viel Geld verloren. Wenn du dich in Acht genommen hättest, so wärest du jetzt nicht krank. Deine Freunde könnten dir nicht so viel Geld geben, wenn sie nicht reich wären. Ich möchte nach Deutschland reisen, wenn ich mehr Geld hätte. Du könntest dein Geschäft fortsetzen, wenn du vorsichtiger wärest. Er könnte gesund sein, wenn er einen Arzt gehabt hätte.

Ihr müßtet reicher sein, wenn ihr sparsam gewesen wäret. Wenn du meinem Nachbar nicht Geld gegeben hättest, müßte er sein Haus verkaufen. Wenn wir zwei Stimmen (votes) mehr gehabt hätten, so hätte dein Vater Recht gehabt.

102.

We thought that the enemy (pl.) would retreat to the Rhine. Charles did not doubt that you would return in five or six days. The inhabitants wished that the government would establish a new post-office. All citizens expected that the President would confirm these resolutions. We were afraid that you might choose the wrong (unrecht) way. Louisa would be much (sehr) pleased if she had these flowers. Henry would not have so many friends if he were not so kind (gut) and diligent. We should not yet have (be) arrived if we had not received a letter from your father. We should not have sold our house if my father had done more business (pl.). The teacher would blame thee if thou hadst not done thy exercises. I should not believe it if thou hadst not seen it. If I had money I should buy a pound of cherries. If you would tell me where Mr. N. lives, I would give you two dollars. Would you believe that I had done this? Would you do me this favor if I allowed you to amuse yourself this evening? I would do it willingly if I had time. You might be rich now if you had been more cautious in your affairs. Thou mightest live now in a palace (Schloß) if thou hadst followed my advice. If we should receive reinforcements, we could beat the enemy. They could not have defended (verteidigt) themselves if my brother had not helped (geholfen) them. If they had (were) departed yesterday, they ought to be here now (now here). If you had followed your [own] advice, you would be obliged now to leave the country. I should like to build this house for you if you would (were willing to) pay more money. We should like to follow thy advice, if it were possible. [*Use the imperfect instead of conditional in the following sentences.*] I should bring you your pictures to-morrow if they were done (fertig). They would have sent your money a week ago if they had had it. If you had arrived later, you would not have found us in

town. If I were not sick, I should visit you. If thou hadst changed thy resolutions, thou wouldst not have lost thy money. Thou wouldst be lost now if I had not saved (gerettet) thee. If you had had less money, you would have been more economical.

103.

**Ausgehen, to go out.**

ich gehe aus, I go out;  
du gehst aus, thou goest out;  
er geht aus, he goes out;  
wir gehen aus, we go out;  
ihr geht aus, you go out;  
sie gehen aus, they go out.

aufmachen, to open;  
zumachen, to shut;  
zurückschicken, to send back;  
Unterricht nehmen, to take lessons;  
anklopfen, to knock (at a door);  
aufwachen, to awake;  
studiren, to study;  
abschreiben, to copy;  
mittheilen, to communicate;  
anziehen, to put on;  
erkranken, to fall sick;  
aufhören, to cease;  
anfangen, to begin, to commence;  
gestehen, to confess;  
einschén (eine Sache), to be aware (of a thing);

sich ankleiden, to dress (one's self);  
aufstehen, to rise (from bed or a fall, etc.);  
aufgehen, to rise (from the sun, moon, etc.);  
untergehen, to set (of the sun, etc.);  
vorziehen, to prefer;  
die Nachricht, the news;  
die Gewohnheit, the habit;  
die Kommode, the chest of drawers;  
die Reise, the journey;  
die Sache, the thing;  
die Unwissenheit, the ignorance;  
schwarz, black;  
früh, early.

Obs.—1. Verbs having for prefixes syllables that do not occur as words by themselves, are called **INSEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS**. Such prefixes are *be*, *ge*, *ent* (*emp*), *er*, *ver*, *zer*. Most other prefixes of verbs are **PARTICLES** (especially prepositions) which also occur as separate words. Verbs compounded with these are called **SEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS**. The most usual of these particles are: *ab*, *an*, *auf*, *aus*, *bei*, *mit*, *nach*, *vor*, *zu*, *zurück*, *ein*, *fort*, and the compound particles with *her* and *hin* (*hervor*, *herauf*, etc.).

2. The prefixes of the separable compound verbs are detached from the simple verb in the **PRESENT**, **IMPERFECT** and **IMPERATIVE**, if they stand in ordinary (see Obs. 4) sentences. The detached prefixes are removed to the end of the clause: *er zeigte mir den Tod seines Vaters an*, he *announced* to me the death of his cousin.

3. If separable compound verbs are construed with INFINITIVES (with *zu*), the detached prefix is often placed before the infinitive and its adjuncts: *Wir fangen heute an*, das Buch zu lesen (or: *Wir fangen heute das Buch zu lesen an*), we *begin* to-day to read the book.

4. If the separable compound verbs occur in clauses that require the verb to be at the end (No. 45; 95, OBS. 4), the prefixed particles are not detached, but keep their connection with the simple verb, the same as in the infinitive: *Die Knaben, die zu lesen anfangen*, the boys that *begin* to read; *wenn die Knaben zu lesen anfangen*, if the boys *begin* to read, etc.

5. The prepositions *durch*, *über*, *um* and *unter* are in some compounds SEPARABLE, and in others INSEPARABLE: *ich unternehme*, I *undertake*; but: *die Sonne geht unter*, the sun *sets*.†

Ich gehe heute nicht aus; das Wetter ist zu schlecht. Wenn das Wetter schöner wäre, würden wir gern ausgehen. Heinrich, du machst nie die Thüre zu. Kannst du diese Kommode aufmachen? Ich mache mein Zimmer zu, wenn ich ausgehe. Ich schicke Ihnen das Buch zurück, welches Sie mir geliehen haben. Mein Vetter schickte mir gestern den Stof zurück, den ich ihm geliehen hatte. Schreibst du alle diese Briefe ab? Ich muß Ihnen etwas mittheilen. Was wollen Sie mir mittheilen? Ich theile Ihnen eine angenehme Nachricht mit. Welches Kleid ziehst du heute an? Ich ziehe mein schwarzes Kleid an, und meine Schwester wird ihr weißes Kleid anziehen. Meine Nachbarn fangen heute an, ihre Sachen zu verkaufen. Dein Freund setzte gestern seine Reise fort. Während er seine Reise fortsetzte, erkrankte er. Wann hören Sie auf, Unterricht zu nehmen? Wenn ich jetzt aufhörte, würde ich nicht sehr viel wissen. Wann geht die Sonne im Monat März (March) auf? Wenn die Sonne früh aufgeht, geht sie spät unter. Wann stehen Sie auf?

104.

Do you not rise yet? No, I am unwell; I shall not rise to-day. You always rise very late; that is a bad habit. Shut the door, if you please. Open the window. Your brother always opens the door and the windows. Do you not go out to-day? I shall not go out to-day. My brother goes out twice every day (every day twice). I shall send you back your umbrella to-morrow. Send me also back the cane which I

† If such verbs are inseparable, they are marked with an asterisk.

have lent you. What is my son doing? He copies the letters which you have written this morning. If my uncle arrives, I shall communicate to him the good news. Do not communicate him anything. Put on thy new dress. I announced yesterday to my children that you would visit us to-day. Why do you begin again to take lessons? Because I am aware of my ignorance. Are you aware that I was right? No, I am not aware of it. My children begin to study early, and cease [to study] late. Which garden do you prefer, mine or that of my brother? I must confess that I prefer that of your brother. When my servant knocked [at the door] I awoke, dressed myself and perceived that I had slept (geschlafen) too long. My brother departed from Vienna while I was preparing my journey. Why do you not prepare your lessons, children?

105.

<b>Bauen</b> , to build;	fast, almost;
<b>heirathen</b> , to marry;	<b>Friedrich</b> , Frederick;
<b>führen</b> , to conduct;	<b>Oesterreich</b> , Austria;
<b>plündern</b> , to plunder;	<b>der Gesandte</b> , the ambassador;
<b>zerstören</b> , to destroy;	<b>der Graf</b> , the count;
<b>zuhören</b> , to listen;	<b>der Fürst</b> , the prince;
<b>anerkennen</b> , to acknowledge;	<b>der Feldherr</b> , the commander;
<b>heilen</b> , to cure, to heal;	<b>*der Erfolg</b> , the success;
<b>sich bessern</b> , to improve (one's self)	<b>der Soldat</b> , the soldier;
<b>dictiren</b> , to dictate;	<b>der Held</b> , the hero;
<b>vergrößern</b> , to increase, to enlarge;	<b>der Senat</b> , the senate;
<b>verschönern</b> , to embellish;	<b>die Aufmerksamkeit</b> , the attention;
<b>beschiesen</b> , to bombard;	<b>die Republik</b> , the republic;
<b>verwunden</b> , to wound;	<b>die Wunde</b> , the wound;
<b>vorlegen</b> , to submit (place before);	<b>die Zahl</b> , the number;
<b>ablehnen</b> , to decline;	<b>die Bedingung</b> , the condition;
<b>ausverkaufen</b> , to sell out;	<b>der Frieden</b> , the peace;
<b>französisch</b> , French;	<b>der Gehülfe</b> , the assistant;
<b>unbegründet</b> , unfounded;	<b>der Vorrath</b> , the stock.
<b>amerikanisch</b> , American;	<b>der Franzose</b> , the Frenchman.

**Obs.**—1. The **PAST PARTICIPLE** of verbs that make their imperfects in **te** or **ete** is formed by prefixing the syllable **ge** (augment) and adding the ending **t** or **et** to the infinitive, after its ending (**en** or **n**) has been dropped. Verbs in **den** and **ten** take **et**: **loben** — **gelobt**; **ändern** — **geändert**; **reden** — **geredet**. Those verbs that change **e** into **a** in the imperfect (No. 95.) keep that vowel in the participle (**senket** — **gesenkt**; **denken** — **gedacht**, etc.).

2. Verbs with the ending *iren* (*ieren*), and the inseparable compound verbs do not take an augment (*studiren*, *studirt*; *erlauben* — *erlaubt*). Separable compounds insert the augment between the prefix and the simple verb (*auf-hören* — *auf g e hört*). Some compound verbs consist of a separable prefix followed by an inseparable one. These take no augment: *vorbereiten* — *vorbereitet*.

3. About hundred and seventy verbs and their compounds form their past participles by the ending *en*, refusing the ending *te* of the imperfect (*sehen* — *gesehen*; *fallen* — *gefallen*). These verbs are called **STRONG VERBS**, and their conjugation **STRONG CONJUGATION**; all the others (with participles in *et*) are called **WEAK VERBS**, and their conjugation **WEAK CONJUGATION**. See p. 90.

4. Nouns form their genitives in *es* (*s*) or *en* (*n*). The former are of the **STRONG**, the latter of the **WEAK DECLENSION**. Nouns of the weak declension take *en* (or *n* if the nom. ends in *e*, *el* or *er*) in all cases except nom. sing., and never soften their radical vowels in the plural. To the weak declension belong the masculines in *e* (*Knabe*, *Vote*, *Preuße*, etc.), and some other, especially foreign nouns which have dropped their former ending *e* (*Graf*, *Fürst*, *Herr*, *Mensch*, *Feld*, *Soldat*, *Präsident*, etc.).

Mein Bruder hat ein neues Haus in der Friedrichsstraße gebaut. Der französische General hat den Grafen Bismarck nach der Stadt Versailles begleitet. Man sagt, daß der General N. die Tochter eines Franzosen geheirathet habe. Wenn ihr den Fürsten erwartet hättet, so hätte er euch in sein Schloß geführt. Hast du dem Feldherrn den Erfolg der Schlacht angezeigt? Die Soldaten haben die Stadt geplündert und zerstört. Wenn ihr diesen Helden gekannt hättet, würdet ihr wissen, daß dieser Verdacht unbegründet ist. Der Senat hat der Botschaft des Präsidenten mit großer Aufmerksamkeit zugehört. Der Präsident hat die französische Republik anerkannt, und dem amerikanischen Gesandten erlaubt, in Paris zu bleiben. Mein Freund hat drei Jahre in Berlin studirt. Wie haben Sie sich in der Gesellschaft dieses Herrn amüfirt?

What physician has cured the wound of that soldier? Frederick has improved very [much] in the last three months. Do you know the boy? Have you ever seen (the) Count Bismarck? Do you know the conditions of (the) peace which the Prussians have dictated? We had expected the physician, but he has sent his assistant. The Emperor Napoleon has enlarged and embellished the city of Paris very [much]. Have

the Prussians not yet commenced (*strong verb*) to bombard the city? They have killed or wounded a great number of French soldiers. One has almost ceased to speak of this affair. There are few men that have not acknowledged this. The ambassadors of England and Austria have submitted to the King of Prussia other conditions, but it is said that the king has declined them. We have almost sold out our whole stock, but our friends have advised (*anzeigen*) us that they have shipped (*absenden*) another supply.

107.

Der Nefse, the nephew;	beiwohnen (with dat.), to be present at;
das Landgut, the country-seat;	anwenden, to employ;
der Bediente, the (man) servant;	*überraschen, to surprise;
die Vorlesung, the lecture;	verdienen, to deserve;
die Entschuldigung, the excuse;	abholen (with accus.), to call for;
der Koffer, the trunk;	brauchen, to need (a. v.);
der Gasthof, the hotel;	aufrichtig, upright, sincere;
der Fortschritt, the progress;	gefällig, obliging;
die Krone, the crown;	gehörig, proper;
die Strafe, the punishment, penalty;	genügend, sufficient;
leben, to live (be alive);	nicht bloß, nicht nur, not only.

Obs.—1. In SEPARABLE compound verbs, the preposition *zu* as sign of the infinitive is incorporated in the verb and placed immediately after the prefix (*anfangen* — *an zu fangen*).

2. *In order to*, before an infinitive, is rendered by the prepositions *um* --- *zu*: in order to praise, *um zu loben*. *Um* is placed before all adjuncts of the infinitive if there are any: *um morgen nach N. zu gehen*, in order to go to N. tomorrow.

3. If a phrase with *um* — *zu* opens the sentence, the verb of the latter must be placed before the subject. The same is the case if any sentence is opened by an adjunct of the verb (objects, adverbs or prepositions): *Um zu leben, müssen wir arbeiten*, in order to live we must work. *Mit Freunden bin ich streng*, with friends I am strict.

4. German adjectives in their crude forms (without endings) are used as ADVERBS, corresponding to English adverbs in *ly*: *Sie haben richtig geurtheilt*, you have judged *correctly*.

5. If the conjunction *but* stands after a *negative* phrase which it corrects, it is translated by *sondern*, not by *aber*: *Dies ist nicht weiß, sondern schwarz*, this is *not* white *but* black.



6. The **POSSESSIVE CASE** of nouns may generally be rendered by the German genitive *preceding* its noun. In this instance the governing noun, as in English, loses its article (the article or other determinative words, if there are any, always belonging to the possessive case): *the boy's father*, *des Knaben Vater*; *the teacher's book*, *des Lehrers Buch*.

Ich komme, um dir zu sagen, daß ich morgen nach meines Neffen Landgute abreise. Ich habe meinen Bedienten geschickt, um mir ein Pfund Zucker zu kaufen. Wir leben nicht, um zu essen, sondern wir essen, um zu leben. Um glücklich zu sein, muß man zufrieden sein. Um Freunde zu haben, muß man nicht bloß aufrichtig, sondern auch gefällig sein. Ich habe nicht Zeit auszugehen. Haben Sie die Güte, diese zwei Briefe abzuschreiben. Wollen Sie so gut sein die Thüre aufzumachen? Meines Nachbars Sohn hat zwei Pferde zu verkaufen. Ist es noch nicht Zeit aufzustehen? Ich habe das Vergnügen gehabt, deiner Schwester Vorlesung beizuwohnen. Haben Sie Geld, um diesen Ring zu kaufen? Hat dein Vater dir dieses Geld gegeben, um es so schlecht anzuwenden? Des Fürsten Tod hat mich sehr unangenehm überrascht. Deiner Schwester Freundin hat nicht unvorsichtig, sondern sehr weise gehandelt. Ich bin nicht hier, um eure Entschuldigungen anzuhören, sondern um die Strafe, die ihr verdient habt, zu dictiren.

108.

My brother has six letters to copy. Have the kindness to send me back my book. It is time to depart. Which dress do you wish to put on? Allow me to open the window, it is so warm. Excuse me, it is not warm, but cold. You have the bad habit to rise too late; you must not rise late, but as early as you can. A soldier has (is) arrived in order to take along the general's children. I have sent a servant to the hotel in order to call for my sister's trunk. In order to make progress (plur. in German), we must not play, but diligently work. We need more money in order to continue this business properly. In order to prepare [yourself] sufficiently, you will need not one but three hours. The Emperor Napoleon has declared war to the King of Prussia in order not to lose his crown.

*Present Infinitive Passive:* gelobt werden (gelobt zu werden), to be praised

*Present Indicative Passive:* ich werde gelobt, I am praised;  
 du wirst gelobt, thou art praised;  
 er wird gelobt, he is praised;  
 wir werden gelobt, we are praised;  
 ihr werdet gelobt, you are praised;  
 sie werden gelobt, they are praised.

*Passive Form with sein:* ich bin gelobt, I am praised;  
 du bist gelobt, thou art praised etc.

Obs.—1. The present passive is easily distinguished from the future active, the auxiliary werden in the latter being connected with the infinitive, and in the former with the past participle of the verb.

2. The passive with werden is the ordinary form of the German passive, denoting the actual happening or continuing of the action expressed by the verb: die Feinde werden verfolgt, the enemy are pursued (*are being pursued*). The form of the passive with sein denotes a STATE, RESULTING from the action expressed by the verb: das Haus ist verkauft, the house is sold (*is a sold one*), denoting the result of the act of selling, while: das Haus wird verkauft denotes the actual going on of the sale (the house *is being sold*, for instance by an auctioneer). If the action itself and its result are not distinguished, both forms may be used with equal propriety: die Stadt wird (or ist) belagert, the city is besieged. If for the English ordinary passive we use or may use the progressive form of the passive, the German passive takes the auxiliary werden.

3. The passive AGENT (doer of the action) is generally indicated by von with the dative (sometimes by durch): die Stadt wird von den Truppen belagert, the city is besieged by the troops.

4. The conjunction when is translated by wenn (not by als), if it denotes *whenever*, or if the verb stands in the present, perfect or future tenses.

#### SYNOPSIS.

when	{	wann? in questions, direct or indirect;
		wenn, if denoting <i>whenever</i> or if the verb is in present, perfect or future;
	{	als, if the verb is in the imperfect or pluperfect, and does not denote <i>whenever</i> .
if	{	wenn, denoting contingency in conditional clauses;
		ob, if denoting <i>whether</i> after verbs of asking or doubting.

Anstellen, to appoint;

angreifen (part. angegriffen), to attack;

ansetzen, to endow;

anfüllen, to fill;

achten, to esteem;

belohnen, to reward;

besetzen, to occupy;

beneiden, to envy;

beleidigen, to insult;

blühen, to flourish;

ernsten, to harvest;

erheben (p. erheben), to collect;

erstaunen (v. a.), to astonish;  
 erfreuen, to delight;  
 gebrauchen, to use;  
 gelingen, to succeed  
 hassen, to hate;  
 lieben, to love;  
 planiren, to grade;  
 pflastern, to pave;  
 rächen, to avenge;  
 repariren, to repair;  
 säen, to sow;  
 strafen; to punish;  
 täuschen, to deceive;  
 \*umgeben, (strong v.) } to surround;  
 \*umringen  
 \*überhäufen, to overwhelm;  
 \*überzeugen, to convince;  
 verlassen (strong), to leave, quit, desert;  
 verschließen (p. verschlossen), to lock;  
 versorgen, to supply;  
 \*vollenden, to finish;  
 die Abgabe, the tax;  
 die Anlage, the talent;  
 der Antrag, the application;  
 die Arbeit, the work, labor;  
 die Art, the kind;  
 das Dampfboot, the steamboat;  
 der Eisenbahnzug, the railroad-train;  
 die Erbitterung, the animosity;

der Fall, the case;  
 das Feld (pl. Felder), the field;  
 der Frühling, the spring;  
 der Gegner, the adversary;  
 das Getreide, the grain;  
 der Handel, the trade;  
 der Herbst, the autumn;  
 der Käufer, the purchaser;  
 der Laden, the shop;  
 das Landhaus, the villa;  
 die Lebensmittel, (pl.) the victuals;  
 das Lehrbuch, the text-book;  
 der Plan, the plan;  
 der Pole, the Pole;  
 die Regelmäßigkeit, the regularity;  
 der Russe, the Russian;  
 der Sommer, the summer;  
 der Uhrmacher, the watchmaker;  
 das Verdienst, the merit;  
 der Weingarten, the vineyard;  
 geschickt, able;  
 fruchtbar, fertile;  
 reichlich, abundant;  
 sonderbar, odd;  
 unwissend, ignorant;  
 sogleich, presently, directly, immediately;  
 überall, everywhere.

Ich werde von meinem Vater gelobt, wenn ich fleißig bin. Du wirst von deinem Lehrer getadelt, weil du immer faul bist. Der geschickte Mann wird gelobt und der unwissende getadelt. Welche Knaben werden belohnt und welche werden gestraft? Diejenigen, welche fleißig sind, werden belohnt und die, welche faul sind, gestraft. Wir werden von unsern Eltern geliebt; ihr werdet von den eurigen getadelt. Meine Brüder werden von Jedermann geachtet. Wir werden von unsern Feinden gehaßt. Die Abgaben werden jetzt mit der größten Regelmäßigkeit erhoben. Der Krieg wird mit großer Erbitterung fortgesetzt. Wenn ihr von euern Feinden beleidigt werdet, müßt ihr euch nicht rächen. Wir haben unser Haus verlassen, weil es jetzt reparirt wird. Wenn das Getreide gesäet wird, ist es Frühling; wenn es geerntet wird, ist es Sommer oder Herbst. Ist

die Thür verschlossen? Ich bin erstaunt, daß Sie eine Sache (cause) vertheidigen, die nicht vertheidigt werden kann. Unsere Arbeit ist vollendet; wir hoffen, daß du sie loben wirst. Es scheint, daß dieses Dorf von seinen Einwohnern verlassen ist. Sein Zimmer ist mit den sonderbarsten Sachen angefüllt. Er tödtete seinen Gegner, um nicht von ihm getödtet zu werden. Unsere Stadt ist (wird) von den fruchtbarsten Feldern umgeben. Du kannst nicht in die Stadt kommen, da sie von den Feinden besetzt ist (or wird).

110.

I am envied by my friends, but thy merits are acknowledged by all. The king is deceived by his servants\*. The President is daily overwhelmed by applications of every kind. We are overwhelmed with work (plur. in German) which has been in our hands for a year. These books are no more read. What text-books are used in your school? Are the Poles loved or hated by the Russians? Is your work finished? It is not yet finished, but it shall (sollen) be finished presently. I am surprised that your father should have given (transl. *has given*) this permission. Are you not convinced that these plans will succeed? The inhabitants say that they are abundantly supplied with victuals. How is the city of New York supplied with victuals? The railroad-trains and steamboats convey (bringen) them daily to the city. My watch is now repaired; the watchmaker has sent it back to me. My watch is now (being) repaired by the watchmaker. Is thy wound not healed yet? The streets of our city are now being graded and paved. When the shops are filled with purchasers, (the) trade is flourishing. If that work cannot be continued by you, it must be finished by your brother. You are deserted by your friends because they are always insulted by you. We are delighted that your diligence is now better rewarded than\*\* it was formerly the case. Since you are occupied†

\* *Debiente* is a menial servant; *Diener* comprises all kinds of servants. *A servant of God*, ein *Knecht Gottes*. Otherwise *Knecht* is used of the lowest kinds of servants,

\*\* *Als*, than, throws the following verb to the end of the clause.

† *To occupy* is rendered by *besetzen*, if it means *to take possession*: but by *beschäftigen*, if it refers to work.

with too many engagements (Arbeit), we shall appoint another assistant. My brother is expected by his friends while he is expecting them. Our soldiers were obliged to attack the enemy (plur.) in order not to be attacked by them. This man is endowed with the highest talents. The city is everywhere surrounded with villas and vineyards.

111.

*Imperfect Indicative Passive:* ich wurde\* gelobt, I was praised;  
 du wurdest gelobt, thou wast praised;  
 er wurde gelobt, he was praised;  
 wir wurden gelobt, we were praised;  
 ihr wurdet gelobt, you were praised;  
 sie wurden gelobt, they were praised.

*Present Subjunctive Passive:* ich werde (du werdest, er werde etc.) gelobt.

*Imperfect Subjunctive Passive:* ich würde (du würdest, er würde etc.) gelobt.

Obs.—1. The imperfect indicative passive is formed by the auxiliary wurde, the imperfect of the verb werden, to become, whose subjunctive is würde. The imperfect subjunctive passive is easily distinguished from the active conditional, the auxiliary würde in the latter being construed with the infinitive, and in the former with the past participle of the verb.

2. Instead of the ordinary passive with werden in these tenses and moods, a passive with sein is used under the same circumstances as in the present indicative (No. 109, Obs. 2): *Imperfect Indicative:* ich war geliebt, I was loved; *Present Subjunctive:* ich sei geliebt (generally translated by the past tense); *Imperfect Subjunctive:* ich wäre geliebt. Der Laden war geschlossen, the shop was closed, if it means that the shop was a closed one, as a result of its having been closed before. But: der Laden wurde geschlossen, if the act of closing is described (the shop was being closed). If the action itself and its resulting state are not distinguished, we generally use the auxiliary wurde in the imperfect.

3. The use of the subjunctive passive is the same as that of the corresponding active tenses (No. 99. 101.)

Abhauen (strong verb), to cut down;	bedecken, to cover;
abtragen (strong), to pull down;	bedrohen, to threaten;
anreden, to address;	behandeln, to treat;
aufhalten (strong), to delay;	belästigen, to molest;
bedauern, to regret;	berichten, to report;

\* In higher style the form ich ward is used instead of ich wurde, in the singular.

besiegen, to defeat;  
 bewundern, to admire;  
 einladen (strong), to invite;  
 entdecken, to discover;  
 ernähren, to support;  
 erweisen (part. erwiesen), to prove;  
 forträumen, to remove,  
 quälen, to torment;  
 schließen (part. geschlossen), to close;  
 stören, to disturb;  
 trösten, to console;  
 \*unterrichten, to instruct;  
 verlämbden, to slander;  
 vermietthen, to rent;  
 versehen (strong), to provide;  
 verurtheilen, to condemn;  
 verwalten, to administer;  
 wieder aufbauen, to rebuild;  
 der Advocat (weak decl.), the lawyer;  
 der Angriff, the attack;  
 das Auge, the eye;  
 der Angeklagte, the accused;  
 der Bahnhof, the railroad station;  
 der Bettler, the beggar;  
 die Belagerung, the siege;  
 der Eigenthümer, the owner;  
 das Einkommen, the income;

die Einnahme, the revenue;  
 der Gast, the guest;  
 der Gefangene, the prisoner;  
 das Hinderniß, the obstacle;  
 die Kanonade, the cannonade;  
 die Leute (pl.), the individuals;  
 der Marsch, the march;  
 die Partei, the party;  
 der Räuber, the robber;  
 der Richter, the judge;  
 das Schieferdach, the slate-roof;  
 die Schindel, the shingle;  
 das Schiff, the ship;  
 die Schuld, the guilt, the debt;  
 der Seeräuber, the pirate;  
 die Sprache, the language;  
 das Verbrechen, the crime;  
 der Wundarzt, the surgeon;  
 beträchtlich, considerable;  
 deutsch, German;  
 dunkel, dark;  
 froh, glad;  
 leer, empty;  
 prächtig, magnificent;  
 schrecklich, terrible;  
 dort, there;  
 nicht einmal, not even.

In welchem Jahre und von wem wurde Amerika entdeckt? Wer war der Mann, von dem du heute in der Hamiltonstraße angeredet wurdest? Als ich nach Wien reiste, wurde ich überall von Bettlern belästigt. Während du von deinen Freunden bewundert wurdest, wurden wir von unsern Feinden verlämbdet. Ich war erstaunt, daß wir noch nichts von dir gehört hatten. Die Häuser dieser Stadt waren damals mit Schindeln bedeckt; jetzt findet man dort nur Schieferdächer. Mein Freund zeigte mir an, daß seine Wunde noch nicht geheilt sei; er fügte hinzu, daß er von seinem Wundarzte sehr (viel) gequält werde. Meine Brüder in Berlin theilten mir mit, daß sie fast täglich von deinen Freunden eingeladen würden. Wenn ich von meinen Feinden gehaßt würde, so würde ich sie nicht hassen, sondern lieben. Wenn ich von meinen Freunden verlassen wäre, könnte ich mich nicht leicht trösten. Ich würde sehr froh sein, wenn diese

Hindernisse fortgeräumt wurden. Als dieser Brief geschrieben wurde, waren die Augen, die ihn lesen sollten (were to), schon geschlossen. Der Angeklagte wurde von den Richtern verurtheilt, weil das Verbrechen erwiesen war, und seine Schuld nicht bezweifelt\* werden konnte.

112.

The Russians were defeated by the English in the battle of (bei) Inkerman. The city was threatened with a siege, but the threat was treated with contempt by the inhabitants\*\*. The city was threatened with a siege [ever] since the third of March. In what year wast thou sent to Germany by thy friends? The prisoners were defended by able lawyers. In what battle were you wounded? When I departed from the city, I was accompanied by my friends to the railroad station. I was astonished when I heard that my friend Charles was not invited. When we were sailing (reisen) to Europe, our ship was pursued by a pirate. While you were instructed by Mr. Reiley, I was studying Ahn's Grammar of the German Language. We were obliged to quit our house because it was repaired. At that time all hotels of the city were filled with guests, but now they are empty. When it was dark, a terrible cannonade was opened (eröffnen) by the enemy. Was thy wound healed or not when thou wast returning to the city? It was not healed then, but it was treated by the surgeon. The general reported that his march was being delayed by attacks of the enemy. My friend declared that he was abundantly provided with money. He said that he was daily molested by individuals who were disturbing him in his work. If my debts were paid (bezahlen), my income would be sufficient to support me. I would regret very much if these beautiful trees were cut down. Were your streets at that time in good condition (der Stand)? No, they were not even paved; but they are being paved now. If your

---

\* In the passive *to doubt* must be translated by *bezweifeln*, not by *zweifeln*.

\*\* All those adjuncts of the verb which complete its idea, must be placed *after* the passive agent.

house were rented, your revenues would increase (themselves) considerably. Would we pay fewer taxes, if our city were [being] administered by your party? If you were attacked by robbers, would you defend yourself or not? The house was pulled down by the owner in order to be rebuilt more magnificently.

113.

*Perfect Indicative Passive:* ich bin gelobt worden, I have been praised;  
du bist gelobt worden, thou hast been praised;  
er ist gelobt worden, he has been praised;  
wir sind gelobt worden, we have been praised;  
ihr seid gelobt worden, you have been praised;  
sie sind gelobt worden, they have been praised.

*Perfect Subjunctive Passive:* ich sei gelobt worden, du seist (er sei, wir seien, etc.) gelobt worden.

*Pluperfect Indic. Passive:* ich war gelobt worden, I had been praised;  
du warst gelobt worden, thou hadst been praised;  
er war gelobt worden, he had been praised;  
wir waren gelobt worden, we had been praised;  
ihr waret gelobt worden, you had been praised;  
sie waren gelobt worden, they had been praised.

*Pluperfect Subjunct. Passive:* ich wäre gelobt worden, du wärest (er wäre, etc.) gelobt worden.

Obs.—1. The perfect and pluperfect passive are formed by the perfect (ich bin worden) and the pluperfect (ich war worden) of werden† (to become), in connection with the past participle of the verb.

2. The rules No. 99, Obs. 5 and 6, as to the use of the subjunctive and its tense after verbs of BELIEVING, STATING, etc., are applicable to the PASSIVE voice, the same as to the ACTIVE: er glaubte, daß ich in der Schlacht verwundet worden sei oder wäre, he believed that I had been wounded in battle.

3. The PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE is often used in hypothetical periods with the force of the English POTENTIAL with *should (would) have* (or *should, would have been* in the passive): See No. 101, Obs. 2: ich hätte ihn gesehen;

† The verb werden, if not an auxiliary, takes the augment in the participle: ich bin geworden, I have become; ich war geworden, I had become.



*I should have seen him; er wäre von mir gesehen worden, he would have been seen by me.*

4. In ordinary sentences the **PERFECT** is frequently used in German, when in English only the simple **PAST TENSE** would be proper: *ich bin gestern in der Stadt gewesen, I was yesterday in town.*

5. The conjunction *after* is translated by the German conjunction *nachdem*, and the conjunction *before* by *ehe*, *bevor*. All these require the verb to be placed at the end of the clause: *nachdem ich ihn gehört hatte*, after I had heard him; *nachdem er getödtet worden war*,† after he had been killed; *ehe (bevor) er angefangen hatte*, before he had commenced.

Ausführen, to execute;  
benachrichtigen, to inform;  
beseitigen, to remove;  
corrigiren, to correct;  
entlassen (strong v.), to dismiss;  
entmuthigen, to discourage;  
pflegen, to nurse;  
protestiren, to protest;  
\*überfenden, to send over;  
\*übertragen (strong), to confer (upon);  
verhaften, to arrest;  
verlangen, to demand;  
verrathen (strong), to betray;  
vorladen (strong), to summon;  
warnen, to warn;  
Andreas, Andrew;  
der Auftrag, the order;  
die Bank, the bank;

die Bürgschaft, the bail, (to give bail, Bürgschaft leisten);  
die Entschädigung (sing.), the damages;  
das Feuer, the fire;  
der Kläger, the plaintiff;  
die Mühe, the trouble;  
der Prozeß, the law-suit;  
die Präsidentschaft, the presidency;  
der Rathgeber, the adviser;  
die Stelle, the place;  
der Telegraph (weak d.), the telegraph;  
die Wahl, the election;  
der Wechsel, the note (bill of exchange);  
der Zollbeamte, the custom-house officer;  
atlantisch, Atlantic;  
vergeblich, in vain;  
zweifelhaft, doubtful.

*Ich bin von meinem Lehrer gestraft worden, weil ich diese Aufgaben abgeschrieben habe. Du bist von deinem Onkel belohnt worden, weil du seine Uhr gefunden hast. Heinrich ist für seine Mühe nicht belohnt worden. Diese Nachricht ist uns von Herrn Moll mitgetheilt worden. Von wem ist diese Aufgabe corrigirt worden? Es ist mir gesagt worden, daß Sie einen Bedienten suchen. Diese Nachricht ist uns durch (by) den atlantischen Telegraphen übersandt worden. Dieses Geld ist mir gezahlt worden, nachdem ich es zweimal vergeblich verlangt hatte. Nachdem der Präsident Lincoln getödtet worden war,*

---

† In such passive constructions the participle *worden* is sometimes omitted: *nachdem er getödtet war.*

wurde die Präsidentschaft Andreas Johnson übertragen. Wer pflegte euch, als ihr in der Schlacht verwundet worden wart? Karl behauptete, daß diese Nachricht ihm von seinen Freunden noch nicht mitgetheilt worden sei. Unsere Pläne konnten nicht ausgeführt werden, nachdem sie unsern Gegnern verrathen worden waren. Meine Freunde glaubten, daß ich in der Schlacht getödtet worden sei. Die Feinde vermutheten, daß wir durch (by) unsere Niederlage entmuthigt worden wären. Warum antwortet ihr, ehe ihr von eurem Lehrer gefragt worden seid? Die Feinde flohen (fled), bevor [noch] das Feuer von uns eröffnet (opened) worden war. Wenn du meinen Rath befolgt hättest, wärst du nicht von deinem Gegner bei (at) der Wahl besiegt worden. Dieser Vorschlag wäre von mir nicht angenommen (accepted) worden, wenn ich nicht von meinen Rathgebern getäuscht worden wäre.

114.

I have been informed that you have opened (eröffnet) a school in the city of New York. This debt has never been paid. Almost all custom-house officers have been dismissed by the President. Your note has been protested by the bank. After your cousin had been arrested, I was summoned by the judge in order to give bail for him. We continued our journey after these obstacles had been removed. William paid me a visit, before I had been informed that he was here. Before your orders had been executed, we heard that (the) war had been declared. Your brother stated in his letter that he had lost his law-suit and was condemned to pay damages to the plaintiff. It is doubtful whether I would have found bail, if I had been arrested. If I had been in your place, I should not have been defeated by my adversary. If you had had better advisers, you would have been warned by them.

115.

*sich freuen*, to rejoice, to be glad.

<i>ich freue mich</i> , I rejoice, I am glad;	<i>ich habe mich gefreut</i> , I have rejoiced; I have been glad, etc.;
<i>du freust dich</i> , thou art glad, etc.;	<i>du hast dich gefreut</i> ,
<i>er freut sich</i> ,	<i>er hat sich gefreut</i> ,
<i>wir freuen uns</i> ,	<i>wir haben uns gefreut</i> ,
<i>ihr freut euch</i> ,	<i>ihr habt euch gefreut</i> ,
<i>sie freuen sich</i> .	<i>sie haben sich gefreut</i> .

Obs.—1. A great number of German REFLEXIVE VERBS (construed with a reflexive pronoun) correspond to English NEUTER or PASSIVE verbs or to whole phrases: *sich verbreiten*, to spread; *sich täuschen*, to be disappointed; *sich setzen*, to take a seat. The reflexive pronouns (unless governed by prepositions) are generally, but not always, in the accusative. In *sich schmeicheln*, to flatter one's self, *sich einbilden*, to imagine, and several others the reflexive pronouns are datives: *ich schmeichle mir*, etc.

2. The English compounds with *self* (*myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, etc.), are not to be considered as reflexives if they qualify nouns or pronouns with EMPHATIC force. In this case they are rendered by the German indeclinable *selbst* (or *selber*): *Ich habe den Mann selbst gesehen*, I have seen the man himself; *er selbst sagte es*, he said so himself; *ich werde selbst gehen*, I shall go myself.

3. If the English compounds with *self* have both a reflexive and emphatic force (which always is the case when reflexives have the rhetorical accent), they are rendered by the German reflexives in connection with *selbst*: *He has killed himself* (and no other), *er hat sich selbst getödtet*; you must not praise yourselves (but others you may), *ihr müßt euch nicht selbst loben*.

4. The English RECIPROCAL *each other*, *one another* are either translated by the indeclinable *einander*, or, if no ambiguity can arise, by the REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS either alone, or in combination with *einander*: *sie schimpfen sich*, they abuse each other; *wir hassen einander*, we hate each other; *sie stören sich einander*, they disturb each other. Often German reciprocal verbs are expressed by neuter verbs in English: *sich treffen*, to meet (one another); *sich* (mit *einander*) *unterhalten*, to converse.

<i>Abgehen</i> (abgegangen), to leave (neuter verb);	<i>sich begegnen</i> , to meet;
<i>sich amüßiren</i> , to enjoy one's self;	<i>beschädigen</i> , to damage;
<i>andenten</i> , to intimate;	<i>sich bilden</i> , to stoop down;
<i>aufheben</i> (aufgehoben), to pick up;	<i>danken</i> (with dative), to thank;
<i>sich aufhalten</i> (strong), to stay;	<i>sich erinnern</i> (with gen.), to remember;
<i>ansbrennen</i> , to burn out;	<i>sich erkundigen</i> , to inquire;
<i>sich befinden</i> (befunden), to do, to be (of the health);	<i>sich erkälten</i> , to take a cold;
	<i>sich ergeben</i> (strong), to surrender (one's self);

sich einbilden, to imagine;	der Ausschuß, the board;
sich fügen, to submit;	der Beamte, the officer;
gehörchen (with dative), to obey;	das Geldstück, the piece of money;
halten (strong), to keep;	das Gesetz, the law;
herausfordern, to challenge;	der Himmel, Heaven;
sich nähern, to approach;	die Kanonenkugel, the cannon ball;
regieren, to govern;	das Mitglied (plur. Mitglieder), the member;
sich setzen, to take a seat;	die Obrigkeit, the authorities;
treffen (getroffen), to hit;	der Schaden, the damage;
sich trennen (to separate (from one another));	die Sitzung, the session, meeting;
*sich unterhalten (strong), to converse;	die Unternehmung, the enterprise;
*unterrichten, to instruct;	der Vorsitzende, the chairman;
*unterstützen, to support;	die Zustimmung, the approbation, consent;
sich verbeugen, to bow (down);	äußerst, extreme;
verpflichten, to pledge;	bekannt, known (as adj.);
verkennen, to misjudge;	deutlich, distinct;
sich versammeln, to assemble;	gerecht, just;
verursachen, to cause;	lieb, dear;
verwickeln, to implicate;	mehrere, several;
*sich widersetzen (with dative), to oppose, to resist;	müde, tired;
wiedersehen (strong), to see again;	streng, severe;
sich wundern, to wonder;	tödtlich, fatal;
zählen, to number;	wohl, well;
zugeben (strong), to concede;	was machen Sie, how is your health?
die Anforderung, the demand;	Abschied nehmen, to take leave;
die Anordnung, the regulation;	sich (dat.) Bewegung (fem.) machen, to take exercise;
der Anspruch, the claim;	Beifall finden, to meet with favor.
der Argwohn, the suspicion;	

Guten Tag, lieber Heinrich. Ich freue mich, dich wiederzusehen. Wie befindest du dich? Ich befinde mich sehr wohl, seit ich in New York wohne. Was macht dein Bruder? Ist er wohl? Ja, er befindet sich sehr wohl. Was thust du, Ludwig? Ich kleide mich an. Kleidet ihr euch noch nicht an? Wir werden uns später ankleiden. Als die Mitglieder des Ausschusses sich versammelt hatten, wurde das Protokoll (the minutes) der letzten Sitzung vom Vorsitzenden vorgelesen.† Wir bückten uns alle, um nicht von den Kanonenkugeln getroffen zu werden. Warum hast du dich nicht erkundigt, wann der Eisen-

† To read, lesen, vorlesen, ablesen, verlesen. The simple verb lesen denotes *reading in general*; the compounds denote to *read aloud*. In the sentences above the simple verb would be improper.

bahnzug abgeht? Wir haben uns noch niemals den Anordnungen der Obrigkeit widersetzt. Wir erinnern uns dieses Mannes sehr deutlich. Erinnert ihr euch nicht, daß ihr euch verpflichtet hattet, den Gesetzen zu gehorchen? Wir haben selbst nicht geglaubt, daß die Mitglieder sich diesen Anforderungen fügen würden. Wir freuten uns, als wir hörten, daß Sie selbst unsere Ansprüche unterstützen würden. Dein Vater selbst ist in diese Angelegenheit verwickelt worden. Ihr müßt selbst anerkennen, daß meine Anträge gerecht sind. Helft euch selbst, dann (then) wird der Himmel euch helfen. Du verurtheilst dich selbst, wenn du dies zugibst. Wann werden wir uns wiedersehen? Es war nicht bekannt, daß diese Herren sich schon kennen. Die Männer näherten sich einander ohne Argwohn. Karl und Wilhelm suchen sich einander [schon] seit länger (for more) als einer Stunde. Karl und ich begegneten uns gestern dreimal in der Straße. Nehmt jetzt Abschied von einander, liebe Kinder, ihr müßt euch trennen; ihr habt keine Zeit mehr, euch mit einander zu unterhalten. Ich glaube, daß wir uns einander verkannt haben; wir wollen künftig (for the future) gute Freunde sein.

116.

Were you not extremely glad when you heard that this war had been finished (beenden)? I have staid here for more than three months. How did you enjoy yourself in my brother's company? The enemy did not oppose the march of our army. Doest thou not remember my older brother? Remember, my son, that our days are numbered! How do you do, Charles? I am not very well, I have taken a cold. I do not wonder; you take too little exercise. I bowed, when I recognized the President. The ambassador bowed, in order to intimate his approbation. Why doest thou stoop down? In order to pick up a small piece of money that I have lost. I imagined that my enterprise would meet with more favor; but I was mistaken. Why do you not take a seat? You must be tired. I thank you, I cannot stay [any] longer. What damage has been caused by this fire? Several rooms are burned out, but the house itself has not been damaged much. Have you not conceded yourself that this city must

surrender soon and cannot keep (itself) much longer? Have you heard this of the President or of one of his officers †? I have seen myself that the accused has beaten the boy. Who has instructed your brother? Nobody, he has instructed *himself*. You must never be more severe with others than with *yourself*. Those that cannot govern others, cannot govern *themselves*. Will you not send a servant in order to buy these things? No, it is better that I go *myself*. Do you know if these people ‡ know each other? The two soldiers wounded each other; but their wounds were not fatal. We have met to-day, but did not recognize one another. Do you know that two members of the Senate have challenged each other? Mr. Nollet and I have conversed (for) two hours (with each other).

117.

1. Es regnet, it rains; es schneit (schneet), it snows; es friert, it freezes; es blizt, it lightens; es donnert, it thunders; es tagt, the day breaks; es klopft, somebody knocks; es läutet, the bell rings; es ist kalt, it is cold; es wird kalt, it begins to be (is getting) cold.

2. ich friere.....	or es friert	} mich, I am	{ cold;	
ich schwitze.....	„ es schwitzt			perspiring;
ich hungere, ich bin hungrig,	„ es hungert			hungry;
habe Hunger.....	„ es durstet			thirsty;
ich durste, ich bin durstig, habe				warm.
Durst.....	„ es durstet			
ich bin warm.....				

3. Was ist Ihnen? what ails you, what is the matter with you?  
Wie ist Ihnen? how do you feel?

Es ist mir	{ kalt, warm, wohl, unwohl, übel, schwindlig,	I feel I begin to feel	{ cold; warm; well; unwell; sick in my stomach; giddy.
es wird mir			

Es ist mir, als ob.. (with subjunctive), I feel (it seems to me) as if .....  
es kommt mir vor, { daß.... it appears (seems) to me } that...  
als ob ..(with subj.), as if..

† Officer is translated by Beamte, if a civil officer is meant; an officer of the army is translated by Officier.

‡ This people, dieses Volk; these peoples, diese Völker; these people (individuals), diese Leute.

<p>4 es ärgert mich, es ekelt mich, es verbrießt mich (part. verdroßen), es wundert mich (ich wundre mich), es freut mich, es ist mir lieb (ich freue mich), es betrübt mich, es thut mir leid, es schmerzt mich,</p>	<p>daß, ... I am (wenn)...</p>	<p>angry, displeased, disgusted, vexed, irritated,  astonished,  glad, pleased,  grieved, sorry,</p>	<p>that.... (if) ....</p>
<p>5. ich ärgere mich, ich bin ärgertlich, ich esse mich, ich bin verbrießlich, ich bin betrübt, ich bin traurig,</p>	<p>weiß, (daß) I feel (am)</p>	<p>angry, displeased,  disgusted, vexed, irritated, grieved, sorry, sad,</p>	<p>because .</p>

Obs.—1. The number of impersonal expressions is considerably larger in German than in English. Almost every German sentence, not having a mere personal pronoun for a subject, may be cast into an impersonal form, in which case the subject must be placed after the verb: es rollt der Donner, the thunder rolls; es war dies ein neuer Beweis, daß... this was a new proof, that... The impersonal form is generally preferred if indefinite substantives are the subjects: es klopft Jemand, somebody knocks; es ist Niemand da, nobody is there; es ist ein Feuer ausgebrochen, a fire has broken out.

2. Those impersonal expressions that are construed with an accusative or dative (enumerated No 2, 3, and 4) frequently begin with their accusatives or datives in which instance the impersonal es is generally dropped: mich friert, I am cold; mich durstet, I am thirsty; mir ist unwohl, I feel unwell. Those impersonals enumerated No. 4 always drop the es, if the dependent clause (with daß or wenn) is placed at the beginning of the sentence; otherwise the es is more generally retained: mir thut (es) leid, daß, etc., I am sorry that, etc; but: daß Sie nicht kommen, thut mir leid, I am sorry that you do not come. Those expressions enumerated No. 1 never drop the es.

Aussehen (du siehst aus), to look (with  
a clause or with an adjective);  
beherrschen, to rule over;  
brechen (part. gebrochen), to break;  
bellen, to bark;  
gehen (gegangen), to walk, to stop;  
heizen, to warm (heat) the rooms,  
build a fire (in the stove);  
herrschen, to rule, to prevail;

laufen (strong v.), to run;  
mitbringen, to bring along;  
Noth leiden, to suffer;  
reichen, to hand;  
versäumen (strong), to miss;  
verstehen, to understand;  
vorübergehen (strong), to pass;  
wärmen, to warm (a person);  
die Ehre, the honor;

das Gewitter, the thunder-storm;	das Versprechen, the promise;
der Kopfschmerz (pl. die Kopfschmerzen), the headache;	die Ursache, the cause;
die Hausthür, the street-door;	der Westwind, the west-wind;
die Krankheit, the sickness;	dunkel, dark;
die Nacht, the night;	gewöhnlich, ordinary, common;
der Sklave, the slave;	herzlich, sincere;
die Sicherheit, the safety;	naß, wet;
das Schneewetter, the snow-storm;	untreu, faithless;
die Summe, the sum;	durchaus nicht, not at all;
(das) Thauwetter, a thaw;	vielleicht, perhaps;
das Vaterland, one's own country, fatherland;	heute (Abend), heute (Nacht), to-night;
	einst, } once (upon a time). einmal, }

Es ist schlechtes Wetter, there is a storm; it is bad weather.

Es ist Ostwind, the wind is east.

Die Geschäfte gehen schlecht, business is dull.

Es betrifft (past. part. betroffen) mich (mich betrifft) ein Unfall (m.)  
I meet with an accident.

Regnet es? Es regnet noch nicht, aber es wird sogleich anfangen zu regnen. Es hat die ganze Nacht geschneit. Wir werden morgen Schneewetter haben. Es wird kalt, wir müssen bald einheizen. Wird es morgen frieren? Nein, es wird Thauwetter sein. Haben Sie sich [schon] gewärmt? Nein, ich brauche mich nicht zu wärmen; es ist mir durchaus nicht kalt. Was ist dir, Karl? Du siehst blaß aus. Es ist mir nur ein wenig übel; es wird bald vorübergehen. Wie ist dir jetzt? Mir wird besser, ich habe nur [noch] ein wenig Kopfschmerzen. Es scheint, daß es Ihnen schwindlig ist. Nein, ich will Ihnen offen gestehen, daß ich Hunger habe. Durstet euch, Kinder? Es thut mir leid, daß kein Wasser in unserm Hause ist. Wie siehst du aus, Heinrich? du schwitzest; du hast gewiß (I suppose) zu stark (much) gelaufen? Es war mir, als ob ich einen Hund bellen hörte, und ich hörte nicht auf zu laufen, bis ich in Sicherheit war. Was (at what) verdrießt dich? Ich bin ärgerlich, weil ich heute zweimal in meiner Arbeit gestört worden bin. Es hat mich nie mehr gehungert, als gestern. Mich durstet sehr, Mutter, ich möchte (No. 101, OBS. 3) ein Glas Wasser haben. Wenn ihr hungrig wäret, würdet ihr euer Brot gegessen haben. Es wundert mich durchaus nicht, daß Sie dies nicht verstehen. Friedrich der Große sagte, daß es ihn ekele, Sklaven zu beherrschen. Es ärgert mich, daß ich gestern die Vorlesung ver-



säumt habe. Freut es Sie vielleicht, daß Ihre Freunde Noth leiden müssen? Nein, es thut mir herzlich leid, aber ich kann ihnen nicht helfen; ich habe nichts, was ich ihnen geben könnte. Es war uns äußerst lieb, daß ihr Papier und Federn mitgebracht hattet. Ich bin betrübt, weil ich meinen Prozeß verloren habe. Warum bist du traurig? Weil die Geschäfte schlecht gehen. Daß Ihre Frau Mutter nicht länger bei uns bleiben kann, thut uns sehr leid (to be transposed in English). Daß deinen Vater ein so großer Unfall betroffen hat, betrübt mich sehr. Würde es euch nicht schmerzen, wenn eure Söhne ihrem Vaterlande untreu wären? Kommt es dir nicht vor, als ob es geklopft hätte? Ist dein Bruder fleißig? Er ist sehr fleißig; es kann Niemand fleißiger sein, als er. Es sterben jetzt mehr Menschen, als gewöhnlich; was ist die Ursache? Es herrschen jetzt mehr Krankheiten als ehemals.

118.

Is it going to rain? No, it will snow. Will there be a storm to-night? I believe not, the wind is west. Are you afraid† when it lightens and thunders? No, I am not afraid of (vor with a dative) a thunder-storm. Our journey was‡ not finished till the day broke (anbrechen). It will soon begin to be dark; you must lock the street-door, John. It begins to storm, Charles; we must run if we do not want (wollen) to be thoroughly (durch und durch) wet. Why do the bells ring? There must be a fire in the city. I should be very sorry, if that were the case. I am very hungry, let me have (gib mir) a piece of bread. You will be thirsty if you take (essen) too much salt. Do you (already) heat your rooms? It has not been cold enough (in order) to heat [them], but we shall build a fire to-night. Do you feel unwell, Charles? It appears to me as if you looked sick. You are right, I have taken a cold. If this is so, you must walk into the room, and warm yourself. No, I thank you, I cannot stay; I feel too warm already. I begin to feel unwell, will (wollen) you have the kindness to hand me a glass of water?

† *I am afraid*, followed by *that* is translated by *ich fürchte*; also, if *fürchten* is followed by an accusative. But the neuter verb *to be afraid* is rendered by *sich fürchten*.

‡ *Wurde* or *war*?

What ails you to-day? You look as if you had met with an accident. I have (impersonally) met with no accident; but I feel angry because I have missed the railroad train. I felt vexed because Charles had broken his promise. What is the matter with your friend? He feels sorry because he has lost a large sum of money. I am pleased [to hear] that you are well again. I was glad that William had not followed your advice. Nobody has wished yet (to be expressed impersonally) that he should have acted badly (translate: to have acted badly). My friend writes me (impersonally) that he is expecting you. Once upon a time lived a great man (impersonally) who owned (besaß) large palaces (Schloß No. 55) and gardens.

119.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	treffen, to hit.
<i>Past Participle.</i>	getroffen.
<i>Present Indicative.</i>	ich treffe, du triffst, er trifft, wir treffen, ihr trefft, sie treffen.
<i>Present Subjunctive.</i>	ich treffe, du treffest, er treffe, etc.
<i>Imperfect Indicative.</i>	ich traf, du triffst, er traf, wir trafen, ihr tragt, sie trafen.
<i>Imperf. Subjunctive.</i>	ich träre, du träsest, er träre, wir träfen, ihr träfet, sie träfen.
<i>Imperative.</i>	triff, trefft.

Obs.—1. The strong verbs, a list† of which is attached to the Second Part have the following peculiarities:

a) The first pers. imperf. indic. takes no ending, but changes the radical vowel. The past participle retains either the vowel of the infinitive, or takes that of the imperfect, or a vowel different from both: schlagen, geschlagen; suchen, suchte, gesucht; sterben, starb, gestorben.

b) The imperf. subj. adds the ending *e* to its indicative, softening the radicals *a*, *o*, *u* into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*.

c) Most strong verbs with the radicals *a* and *o* soften these vowels in the second and third pers. indicative (ich schlage, du schlägst, er schlägt); and most of those with the radical *e* change this vowel into *i* in the same persons, and in the singular of the imperative, dropping at the same time their final *e* in the latter mood, some of them doubling the final consonant: geben, gib; nehmen, nimm. Some other strong verbs (for instance lassen, laß), drop likewise the final *e* of the imperative. If strong verbs with any of these radicals

† Aber or sondern? Does *I feel angry*? correct the previous clause?

‡ The student should look for every strong verb in the list before attempting to use it. Since none of the many compounds of strong verbs are given in the list, the mode of their conjugation must be ascertained by looking for the corresponding simple verbs.

end in *ben* or *ten* (*then*), they drop the *e* of their endings in the second and third pers. pres. indic., those in *ten* and *then* generally dropping also the *t* of the ending in the third pers.: *rathen*, *räthst*, *räth*; *treten*, *trittst*, *tritt*.

d) Of irregular formation are: *thun*, *that*, *gethan*; *gehen*, *ging*, *gegangen*; *stehen*, *stand*, *gestanden*.

2. Several German verbs governing an infinitive without *zu*, are together with their infinitives rendered by single verbs or various phrases. Such verbs are: *spazieren gehen*, to take a walk; *stehen bleiben*, to stop; *fallen lassen*, to drop; *kennen lernen*, to become acquainted with. Only the last of these infinitives (being the governing verbs) are conjugated, and must in the simple tenses of ordinary sentences precede their dependent infinitives: *ich gehe spazieren*, *ich blieb stehen*, etc.

*Annehmen*, to accept, to take;  
*aufschreiben*, to write down;  
*befehlen*, to command;  
*bitten*, to request, to beg;  
*belauschen*, to watch;  
*einnehmen*, to occupy, to carry;  
*sich erschrecken*, to be frightened, to be scared;  
*fliehen*, to flee;  
*gesten*, to be esteemed, to be worth;  
*etwas gesten*, to be for something;  
*fahren*, to ride (on a vehicle);  
*nachgeben* (with *dat.*), to yield;  
*rathen*, to advise;  
*statt finden*, to take place;  
*sterben*, to die;  
*schlafen*, to sleep;  
*scheinen*, to shine;  
*vergessen*, to forget;  
*sich vergleichen*, to make a compromise;  
*verrathen*, to betray;  
*verschwinden*, to disappear;  
*vertreten*, to represent;  
*zustellen*, to deliver;  
*sich zurückziehen*, to withdraw;  
*das Almosen*, the alms;  
*das ABC*, the ABC, the alphabet;  
*die Bedeutung*, the meaning;  
*die Brieftasche*, the pocket-book;

*der Eigenthümer*, the owner;  
*die Freiheit*, the liberty;  
*das Gebirge*, the mountain-chain;  
*die Gefangennahme*, the capture;  
*die Gewalt*, the force;  
*der Gläubiger*, the creditor;  
*die Hoffnung*, the hope;  
*die Classiker*, the classics;  
*die Ordnung*, the order;  
*der Reiter*, the horseman;  
*die Speise*, the food;  
*die Stärke*, the strength;  
*die Stellung*, the position;  
*der Teller*, the plate;  
*die Truppen*, the troops;  
*die Unordnung*, the disorder;  
*die Unterhaltung*, the conversation;  
*die Verschanzung*, the intrenchment;  
*die Versprechung*, the promise;  
*\*das Verlangen*, the demand;  
*die Verwaltung*, the administration;  
*die Zahlung*, the payment;  
*\*das Wort*, the word;  
*link*, left } side;  
*recht*, right }  
*plötzlich*, sudden;  
*völlig*, fully;  
*zufällig*, accidental.

Wenn du Almosen gibst, laß deine linke Hand nicht wissen, was deine rechte thut. Mein Sohn hält alle seine Versprechungen, da er niemals mehr verspricht, als er halten kann. Nimm meinen Rath

an, und iß nichts von dieser Speise. Man verräth seine Freunde, wenn man sie vergift. Der Advocat, der mich in diesem Prozesse vertritt, gilt viel in unserer Stadt. Die Feinde flohen in großer Unordnung, nachdem ihre Verschanzungen von unsern Truppen eingenommen waren. Die Magd ließ die Teller fallen, weil sie sich erschrocken hatte. Die Reiter blieben plötzlich stehen, als ob sie unsere Stärke und Stellung kennen lernen wollten. Als wir gestern in der Stadt spazieren gingen, fanden wir eine Briefftasche, die wir mitnahmen, um sie dem Eigenthümer zuzustellen. Was that die Regierung, als sie die Nachricht von der Gefangennahme des Kaisers erhielt? Sie gab dem Verlangen des Volks nach und zog sich von der Verwaltung des Staats (state) zurück. Es kam uns vor, als ob die Feinde sich nach der Stadt zurückzögen. Er käme gern wieder, wenn ich ihn bäte, mich zu besuchen. Ich vergäße Alles, was ihr mir gesagt habt, wenn ich es nicht aufschriebe.

120.

Where force commands, the law is (gelten) [for] nothing. Before thou diest, do not forget to put (bringen) thy house in order. Read this letter, and see thyself that our last hope has disappeared. Help me to do my lesson before thou commencest thine. What did your friend when he received the news that these men had stopped (einstellen) their payments? He wrote me that he had made a compromise with his creditors. When Charles arrived in Cologne he found the letters that he had expected. While my son began to learn his ABC, thine was already reading the classics. When we saw that we were watched, we immediately dropped our conversation. When we were riding [on the cars] to New York, the railroad-train suddenly stopped (stehen bleiben) before we came to Newark. Where was your mother when that accident took place? She was taking a walk with my sister. How did you become acquainted with that gentleman? I met (treffen) him accidentally at Count Bismarck's house. We conversed more than an hour, and he invited me to see (besuchen) him at his residence. I advised that lady to take lessons of (bei) Mr. Nollet, if she commenced (subjunct.) to study French†. If you did not sleep so long,

† Uninflected adjective (französisch).

you would be healthier. If the moon were shining now, you would distinctly see (imperf.) the whole mountain-chain. I would gladly die (imperf.), if I could buy (erkaufen) the liberty of my country with my death. They said that they did not fully understand the meaning of his words.

121.

PREPOSITIONS

<i>with Genitive.†</i>	<i>with Dative :</i>	<i>with Accusative :</i>
während, during;	aus, out of (from);	durch, through, by;
wegen, on account of;	nach, after (to);	ohne, without;
	von, from (of, by);	um, around, about;
	zu, to;	gegen, against.

*with Dative or Accusative :*

an, at;  
 auf, upon, on;  
 neben (near) by, beside;  
 unter, under, below, beneath;  
 über, over, above;  
 vor, before, ago.

SIN is often used instead of in dem;			an is often used instead of an dem;		
in	"	"	in das;	an	"
beim	"	"	bei dem;	von	"
zum	"	"	zu dem;	unter	"
zur	"	"	zu der;	auf	"
durch	"	"	durch das;		

Obs.—1. An, in, auf, neben, unter, über, vor govern the ACCUSATIVE, when they express a motion or direction towards an object, or a placing of something *on, before*, etc. an object. If this is not the case, these prepositions govern the DATIVE. In relations other than those of PLACE, the use of the case is regulated according to an analogy to local relations, which is often difficult to determine.

2. The meanings attached above to the prepositions are only approximate and denote the original conception connected with each preposition. Very frequently English prepositions must be rendered by German prepositions not expressing their original meanings:

Auf der See, at sea;                      auf die See, to sea;  
 auf dem Markte, at (in) the market;    auf den Markt, to the market;

† For a complete list of prepositions see the Theoretical Course p. 61.

auf der Post, at the post-office;  
auf dem Ball, at the ball;  
auf dem Lande, in the country (opposite to city);

im Concerte, at the concert;  
im Theater, at the theatre;  
zu Hause, (at) home;  
am Ufer, on the shore;  
an der Wand, on the wall;  
in der Schule, at school;  
zu der Zeit, at the time;  
an dem Tage, on the day;  
am 16ten Mai, on the 16th of May;

bei Nacht (in der Nacht), at night;  
zu Weihnachten, at Christmas;

auf die Post (zur Post), to the post-office;  
auf den Ball (zum Ball), to the ball;  
aufs Land, to the country;

ins Concert, to the concert;  
ins Theater, to the theatre;  
nach Hause, (to) home;  
ans Ufer, to the shore;  
an die Wand, to the wall;  
zur (in die) Schule, to school;  
bis zu der Zeit, (up) to the time;  
bis zu dem Tage, (up) to the day;  
bis zum 3ten Juni, (up) to the 3d of June;

am Morgen, in (on) the morning;  
im vorigen Jahre (voriges Jahr), last year.

3. The preposition *by* cannot be translated by *von* if it does not denote the agent of a passive verb. It is translated by *durch* if it denotes *by means of*.

4. *To* is generally not translated by the mere dative if it denotes the object of a motion in space. If this motion refers to *PLACES*, it is generally translated by *nach*, but also by other prepositions (See Obs. 2). If a *PERSON* is the object of the motion, it is generally translated by *zu*: come to me, komm zu mir.

5. The adverb *bis*, placed before prepositions denoting direction, means *as far as*, *up to*, if referring to space. Referring to countries and towns it is generally connected with *nach*, which may also be left out. ich kam bis (nach) Berlin, I came as far as Berlin. Referring to other localities it is mostly connected with *zu* (bis zum Berge, etc.). But all other prepositions, denoting direction may be connected with *bis* (bis an den Fluß, bis auf den Berg, etc.). Referring to *TIME*, *bis* is translated by *till*, *up to*, and is generally connected with *zu*, which sometimes is dropped: bis zum 2ten März; bis (zu) Weihnachten, etc. *Not till* is rendered by *erst*.

Abfallen (strong), to fall off;  
ansehen (strong), to look at;  
auffallen (strong, w. dat.), to strike;  
ausbreiten, to extend;  
austauschen, to exchange;  
befördern, to forward;  
begehren, to demand;  
begraben (strong), to bury;  
datiren, to date;  
sich drehen, to revolve, to turn;  
ermuthigen, to encourage;

errichten, to erect;  
erringen (strong), to obtain;  
fallen (strong), to fall;  
hängen (strong), to hang;  
liegen (strong), to lie. to be (situated);  
sich rühmen (w. gen.), to boast (of);  
sitzen (saß, gegessen), to sit;  
stellen, to place;  
spazieren fahren, to take a ride;  
umgehen (strong), to associate;  
sich wagen, to venture;

die Achse, the axis;	der Preis, the price;
die Alpen, the Alps;	der Rand, the edge;
die Aussicht, the prospect;	der Rang, the rank;
die Anstrengung, the effort;	der Regen, the rain;
der Ball, the ball;	die Reihe, the row;
das Befinden, the health;	die Revolution, the revolution;
die Bemerkung, the remark;	die Schildwache, the sentinel;
das Boot, the boat;	das Schlachtfeld, the field of battle;
das Concert, the concert;	der Schnee, the snow;
die Einladung, the invitation;	der Schutz, the shelter, protection;
der Einlaß, the admission;	der Sonntag, the sunday;
das Eis, the ice;	die Station, the station;
die Eisenbahn, the railroad;	der Styl, the style;
das Ende, the end;	das Theater, the theatre;
die Erlaubniß, the permission;	die Thür(e), the gate, the door;
Europa, Europe;	das Ufer, the bank (of a river);
der Feldzug, the campaign;	der Umlauf, the revolution (turning);
die Festung, the fortress;	das Vieh, the cattle;
der Fluß, the river;	der Vortheil, the advantage;
die Front, the front;	der Wagen, the carriage;
der Frost, the frost;	der Wall, the rampart;
die Gartenthür, the garden-gate;	die Wand, the wall (inside);
das Gebäude, the building;	der Zimmermann, the carpenter;
der Geburtstag, the birthday;	abwesend, absent;
die Gelegenheit, the occasion;	blau, blue;
der Giebel, the top (of roofs);	breit, broad, wide;
der Gipfel, the top (of trees, etc.);	dicht, dense;
der Graben, the moat, ditch;	eigen, own;
der Himmel, the sky;	einzig, single;
die Hülfe, the help;	entzückend, charming;
die Industrie, the industry;	erheblich, considerable;
die Kohle, the coal;	gar nicht, not at all;
die Leiche, the corpse;	gesegnet, blessed;
die Liste, the list;	nächst, next;
die Macht, the power;	öffentlich, public;
Mailand, Milan;	städtisch, city (adject.);
der Mangel, the want;	tief, deep;
der Markt, the market;	unbedeutend, inconsiderable;
die Mauer, the wall (outside);	unerhört, unheard of;
der Name (gen. Namens), the name;	weit, far;
der Nebel, the fog;	wohlfeil cheap.

Wohin gehen Sie (wo gehen Sie hin)? where (whither) do you go?

Woher (von wo) kommen Sie (wo kommen Sie her)? from where (whence) do you come?

Was ist die Uhr (wie viel Uhr ist es)? what o'clock is it?

Es ist sechs Uhr, it is six o'clock; halb sieben Uhr, half past six; ein viertel nach sechs (auf sieben), a quarter past six; dreiviertel auf sieben (ein viertel vor sieben), a quarter of seven.

Um welche Zeit? at what o'clock?

Um sechs Uhr, at six o'clock.

Wir konnten wegen des strengen Frostes (des strengen Frostes wegen) nicht aus dem Hause gehen. Im vorigen Jahre brachen wir durch's Eis; nach dieser Zeit wagten wir nicht wieder auf's Eis zu gehen. Durch welche Straßen müssen wir gehen, um auf den Markt zu kommen? Die Einwohner gingen auf den Wällen der Festung spazieren. Auf dem Gipfel des Berges hatten wir eine entzückende Aussicht. Wer steht an der Thür? Es ist Herrn Rollet's Diener, der sich nach Ihrem Befinden erkundigt. Warum sehen Sie [sich] die Bilder an, die an den Wänden hängen? Wir standen gestern am Ufer des Flusses, um unsere Freunde zu sehen, die auf dem Schiffe waren. Klopfen Sie an die Gartenthür, und begehren Sie Einlaß! Ist Ihr Bruder zu Hause? Nein, ich habe ihn auf die Post geschickt. An (to) wen wollen Sie diese Briefe schicken? Ich habe nach Hause an meine Freunde geschrieben. Ich saß unter dem großen Baum, der neben unserm Hause steht; unter uns lag die Stadt, und über uns war der blaue Himmel ausgebreitet. Wir gingen unter die Bäume, um Schutz gegen den Regen zu finden. Wo kommen Sie her? Sind Sie im Theater gewesen? Nein, ich komme aus dem (vom) Concert. Die Feinde waren durch einige unbedeutende Vortheile, die sie über unsere Armee errungen hatten, ermuthigt worden. Wohin schicken Sie Ihren Bedienten? Ich schicke ihn zum Schuhmacher, um meine Stiefel abzuholen, und zu Karl, um ihm eine Einladung zu bringen. Haben Sie eine Einladung zur Gesellschaft beim General? Nein, wir gehen nicht mit einander um. Ohne Ihre Hülfe wäre ich verloren gewesen. Die Erde dreht sich um die Sonne und um (on) ihre eigene Achse. Während des ganzen Feldzugs konnte der Feind sich nicht eines einzigen Sieges rühmen. Zu keiner Zeit waren der Fleiß und die Industrie des Landes gesegneter, als in diesem Jahre. Am nächsten Morgen nach der Schlacht begruben unsere Soldaten ihre Todten und die der Feinde. Dieser Brief ist vom 10. d. M.† datirt, aber erst am 18. geschrieben und am 20. zur Post gesandt worden. Der

---

† dieses Monats.



Eisenbahnzug kam bis nach Troy, konnte aber† von dort ab† nicht weiter befördert werden. Der Zug kam bis zur nächsten Station, blieb aber dort aus (from, for) Mangel an (of) Kohlen liegen††. Bis zum Jahre 1866 galt Preußen nur als eine Macht (des) zweiten Ranges. Alle städtische(n) Abgaben müssen [noch] vor dem ersten Januar bezahlt werden. Wir blieben lange vor dem Gebäude stehen, und tauschten unsere Bemerkungen über (on) den prächtigen Ethl aus. Der größte Theil unserer Truppen kam in dieser Schlacht gar nicht vor den Feind. Es fiel uns auf, daß die Regierung vor alle öffentlichen Gebäude Schildwachen gestellt hatte.

122.

During that whole time not one of our entrenchments was carried by the enemy. On account of the dense fog, our boat was detained seven hours at (bei) Poughkeepsie. After unheard of efforts the general arrived with his army at six o'clock in the (Gen.) evening on the field of battle. By what efforts have you made it possible to arrive so soon? Does this name stand on your list? No, but I shall place (setzen) it immediately on the list. I sent the carpenter to (auf) the top of the roof in order to repair it. I believe that somebody is listening (hören) at the door? Go to (an) the window, and look (zusehen) whether our carriage is at (vor) the gate? I see that the plaster (der Kalk) on these walls has (ist) almost fallen off. He has erected a beautiful villa on (an) the edge of the forest. Where (whither) do you intend (wollen) to ride? I only intend to take a ride through the city. When are you going to return home? At half past eight o'clock. Are you going to the concert to-night? No, I shall go to the ball at Mr. Nollet's. How long have you been in this country, and where do you come from? I come from Metz, and have been here almost nine years. How long did you stay [out] in the country? Only a couple of days. How many of your children go to school? Only two; the others I am still keeping (behalten) at home.

† Aber is frequently placed after one or more words of the sentence.

†† Ab is often used to increase the force of *von*, denoting a starting point.

†† Liegen bleiben, to be detained.

Why do you not place (*stellen*) your cattle under shelter (translate: *under a roof*)? Below the walls of the fortress are broad and deep moats. Will you not go to the general, and ask him for (*um*) protection against these soldiers? Jupiter revolves in 10 days on his axis, and his revolution about the sun lasts (*dauern*) almost 12 years. Did you do this without the permission of your father? This man lived at the time of the French revolution. My friend's birthday fell upon a Sunday. After many years you will acknowledge that I was right. Before our last war, the prices of (*the*) victuals were considerably cheaper than now. Fifty† years ago there were no railroads in the country. During the whole battle the officers were before the front. The general sent all his officers before the front. I have planted a whole row of trees before my house. On the morning after the battle, the corpses lay thick (*bidht*) on the field of battle. On that day we met (*treffen*) but (*nur*) few of the enemy (translate: *few enemies*). On (*bei*) that occasion our soldiers took a great number of prisoners. My friend returned home on the 10th of March; he will not depart again till the 20th of June (*Juni*). He will be absent till the 10th of July (*Juli*). Will General Sheridan remain in Europe till the end of the war? We came on our journey as far as Milan; last year we came only up to the Alps.

123.

*Wovon*, of what;  
*womit*, with what;  
*wozu*, to (for) what;  
*woran*, at what;  
*worin*, in what;  
*wodurch*, by what;

*davon*, of that, of it;  
*damit*, with that, with it;  
*dazu*, to (for) that, to (for) it;  
*baran*, at that, at it;  
*darin*, in that, in it;  
*dadurch*, by that, by it.

*Herab*, *hinab*, down;  
*herauf*, *hinauf*, up;  
*heraus*, *hinaus*, out;  
*herein*, *hinein*, in;  
*herüber*, *hinüber*, over.

---

† See the list of numerals in the Theoretical Course.

**Obs.—1.** All these particles are formed of prepositions, combined with the adverbs *wo*, *da*, *her* and *hin*. If, in the formation of these words, two vowels meet, an *r* is inserted.

**2.** The prepositions with which these adverbs are combined, are liable to the same variation of meaning, as if they were separated: *Wo r a n* (not *wovon*) *denken* *Sie*, of what do you think? (the verb *denken* being construed with *an*, not with *von*); *wo v o n* *hängt es ab*, on what does it depend? (the verb *abhängen* being construed with *von*, not with *auf*).

**3.** The adverbs formed by prefixing *wo* and *da* must always be used instead of prepositions connected with the interrogative *was* or with personal and demonstrative pronouns in the neuter gender. They are not admissible if *what*, being followed by nouns, must be rendered by *welcher*, *e*, *es*: Of what books, *von welchen Büchern* (not *wovon Büchern*). The adverbs combined with *da* are used if the personal pronoun or demonstrative dependent on a preposition, refers to THINGS masculine, feminine or neuter in either number, but not in reference to PERSONS. I have made no use of THEM (the books), *ich habe keinen Gebrauch d a v o n* gemacht.

**4.** The compounds with *her* and *hin* are mostly used in combination with VERBS OF MOTION, forming separable compounds with them. The forms with *her* and *hin* are distinguished by the standpoint which the SPEAKER is conceived to occupy. If the motion, expressed by the verb, is represented as directed towards the speaker, the compounds with *her* are used. If the motion has a direction away from the speaker, the compounds with *hin* must be employed: I go down, *ich gehe h i n a b*; he is walking down the mountain, *er geht vom Berge h e r a b* (if the speaker is represented as being below).

**5.** All TRANSITIVE and REFLEXIVE verbs form their PERFECTS and PLUPERFECTS active by means of the auxiliary *haben*. NEUTER verbs generally take the same auxiliary. But the following neuter verbs form these tenses with the auxiliary *sein*:

*a)* Neuter verbs, expressing a motion from one place to another, as *kommen*, *gehen*, *reiten* (to ride on horseback), *fliehen* (to flee), *zurückkehren* (to return), *begegnen* (to meet), *fallen* (to fall): *Ich w a r* (not *ich hatte*) *zurückgekehrt*, I had returned; *ich b i n* (not *ich habe*) *gekommen*, I have come.

*b)* Those neuter verbs, denoting a transition from one state to another, as: *sterben*, to die; *erkranken*, to fall sick; *wachsen*, to grow; *versinken*, to sink; *genesen*, to recover, and a great many others: *ich b i n* (not *ich habe*) *gestorben*, I have died.

*c)* Some verbs that cannot be classified, as: *bleiben*, to remain (stay); *gelingen*, to succeed; *mißlingen*, to fail; *folgen*, to follow.

*Abhängen von*, to depend on;  
*aufwachen*, to awake;  
*bestehen* (strong) *in*, to consist in,

*entweichen* (strong), to escape;  
*erkranken*, to fall sick;  
*genesen* (strong), to recover;

halten (strong), to hold;  
 hereinkommen, } to come in, get in;  
 hineinkommen, }  
 hereintreten (strong), } to step in;  
 hineintreten, }  
 herüberschwimmen (strong), } to swim  
 hinüberschwimmen, } over;  
 leiden (strong) an, to suffer of;  
 mißlingen (strong), to fail;  
 versinken (strong), to sink;  
 warten, to wait;  
 \*widerfahren (strong), to befall;  
 zurückreisen, to go or come back;  
 \*der Buchhalter, the bookkeeper;

das Congressmitglied, the member of  
 Congress;  
 Deutschland, Germany;  
 die Kenntniß, the attainment;  
 die Minute, the minute;  
 der Passagier, the passenger;  
 der Schlüssel, the key;  
 die Schwindsucht, the consumption;  
 das Vermögen, the property;  
 die Verurtheilung, the condemnation;  
 anfänglich, in the beginning;  
 literarisch, literary;  
 wenige, few;  
 einige, a few.

Wovon† sprechen Sie? Ich spreche von dem† Unglück, das Ihrem Bruder widerfahren ist. Ich habe gleichfalls (likewise) davon gesprochen. Hast du nicht gehört, womit Karl sich heute beim Lehrer entschuldigt hat? Ich habe nichts davon gehört. Hat er nicht gesagt, daß er zu spät von seiner Reise zurückgekehrt sei? Nein, damit hat er sich nicht entschuldigt. Wissen Sie, woran†† Herr Mollet gestorben ist? Ist er vielleicht an der Schwindsucht gestorben? Daran ist er [wohl] schwerlich (hardly) gestorben; denn er hat nie daran (of) gelitten. Warum sind Sie nicht gestern auf (into) mein Zimmer gegangen? Ich wäre gern hinaufgegangen, wenn ich den Schlüssel dazu gehabe hätte. Wo befindet sich jetzt Ihr Herr Bruder? Er ist nach Deutschland zurückgereist. Wird er nicht bald wieder herüberkommen? Ich glaube nicht, er ist jetzt länger hier geblieben, als er anfänglich beabsichtigte. Wodurch hat Ihr Freund sein Vermögen verloren? Nachdem fast alle seine Unternehmungen mißlungen waren, ist sein Buchhalter mit einer großen Summe entwichen. Ist nicht Karl vom Dache gefallen? Es war nicht Karl, der herabgefallen ist, sondern sein Bruder. Warum seid ihr nicht zu uns heraus aufs Land gekommen? Wir konnten nicht hinauskommen; die Wege waren zu schlecht. Treten Sie herein, [meine] Herren. Wir würden gern hineintreten, wenn wir Zeit hätten. Ich ersuche Sie, meinen

† Wovon, of what, must be well distinguished from von wo, from where.

†† Prepositions cannot be contracted with the article, if a relative clause follows.

†† To die of a disease, an einer Krankheit sterben.

Sohn mit sich herüberzubringen, wenn Sie von Frankreich zurückreisen. Ich würde Ihren Sohn mit dem größten Vergnügen zu Ihnen herüberbringen, wenn er nicht schon abgereist wäre.

124.

On (von) what will the condemnation of the President depend? It will depend on the votes of two or three members of Congress. Do you know that Charles's father has come (in order) to take his son home? Of that nothing is known (bekannt) to me. With what have you occupied yourself during the year? I have occupied myself with literary labors, but I am now done (fertig) with them. Are you invited to (zu) the President's party (Gesellschaft)? No, I have no invitation to it. Of (an) what do you think? I am thinking of the steamboat that has sunk in the river. Have [there] been many passengers in it? Their number is not known to me. It is now the highest time to begin this work; let us go at it immediately. In what do the attainments of this man consist? Why did you read in that book? I did not read at all in it. At what o'clock did you awake (*Perf.*) this morning? I did not awake (*Perf.*) till nine o'clock, because I had returned very late from my journey. Has General Smith died of (an) his wound? No, he has not died of it; he has entirely (vollständig) recovered. Why did you not remain (*Perf.*) home yesterday? I was obliged (müssen) to see my brother, who had suddenly fallen sick. Can you not come down for (auf with accus.) a few minutes? I cannot come down now, you must wait. Do me the favor to send up your servant to me. I cannot send him up; he must hold my horses, but I shall come up myself. When we had arrived at (bei) the river, I requested my friend to swim over with me. Dear Charles, come over to us for (auf) a few days, all your friends are expecting you. Who is knocking at the door? It is William. Tell him to come in. When we found that the street-door was locked, we tried to get in by the garden-gate.

125.

Obgleich,	}	although, though;
obchon,		
obwohl,		
wenn gleich,		
wenn schon,		
wenn auch,		
wiewohl,		

auch wenn (wenn auch),	}	even if;
selbst wenn (wenn selbst),		
wenn auch noch so (sehr),		however (much);
denn (conjunction),		for (conjunction).

Obs.—1. The different German conjunctions corresponding to *although* and *even if*, require the verb to be at the end of the clause. Those connected with *ob* may be separated (*ob* — *gleich*, etc.), and often take other words of the sentence, especially pronouns, between them. *Ob wir gleich sahen*, although we saw. Such words may also be interposed between the different combinations of *wenn*, if the conjunction *wenn* precedes.

2. The principal sentence, if it follows the clause with the equivalents of *although*, is generally introduced by *so*, and after the verb generally is inserted one of the particles *doch*, *dennoch*, *gleichwohl*, corresponding to the English *still*, *yet*, *nevertheless*: *obgleich wir früh kamen, so mußten wir doch (dennoch, gleichwohl) lange warten*, although we came early, we (still) were obliged to wait a long time.

3. The conjunction *wenn*, either standing alone (*if*), or in connection with *gleich*, *schon*, *auch* (*although*), may be entirely dropped, and in this case the sentence is construed as if it were a question, beginning with the verb, followed by the subject. The particle *so* is then generally employed as a connective: *kommst du, so gehe ich*, if thou comest, I go. *Ist dein Vater abgereist, so werde ich auch abreisen*, if thy father has departed, I shall also depart. *Wäre dein Freund gesund, so würde er hier sein*, if thy friend were well (were thy friend well) he would be here. *War er gleich entmuthigt (wenn gleich er entmuthigt war), so verzweifelte er doch nicht*, although he was discouraged, he [still] did not despair. *Wärst du auch noch so fleißig, so könntest du es doch (dennoch) nicht thun*, however diligent thou mightest be, thou couldst [still] not do it.

4. Diminutives are formed from most German substantives by the ending *chen*, softening the radical vowel, and being of neuter gender: *der Sohn* — *das Söhnchen* (*the little or dear son*).

5. Almost all personal male names form female appellatives by the ending *in*, eliding the endings *e* and *en*: *der Preusse* — *die Preussin* (*the Prussian woman*); *der Dichter* (*poet*) — *die Dichterin* (*poetess*); *der Herzog* (*duke*) — *die Herzogin* (*duchess*). Some soften the radical (*Graf* — *Gräfin*). In the plural they double their final *n* (*Dichterinnen*).

Angeben (strong), to state;  
 sich anstrengen, to exert one's self;  
 ausdorren, to parch;  
 blühen, to blossom;  
 erreichen, to obtain;  
 erzielen, to derive;  
 verdorren, to dry up;  
 wachsen (strong), to grow;  
 verwalten, to administer, to manage;  
 zeichnen, to draw (make a draft);  
 die Anmuth, the grace;  
 das Bett, the bed;  
 die Eigenschaft, the quality;  
 die Erwartung, the expectation;  
 die Französin, the Frenchwoman;  
 der Gebrauch, the use;  
 die Gegend, the landscape, the grounds;  
 die Gelehrsamkeit, the scholarship;  
 der Geist, the mind;  
 der Glaube, the faith;

der Grund, the reason;  
 das Gut, the property;  
 die Klarheit, the clearness;  
 die Kreide, the chalk;  
 das Mittel, the instrument, the means;  
 die Nachsicht, the indulgence;  
 der Ruhm, the glory;  
 die Schönheit, the beauty;  
 die Tapferkeit, the valor;  
 der Umriss, the sketch;  
 die Weisheit, the wisdom;  
 der Wille, the will;  
 die Zeitung, the (news) paper;  
 der Zweck, the purpose;  
 gelehrt, learned;  
 gewiß, certain;  
 glänzend, brilliant;  
 grausam, cruel;  
 schwach, weak;  
 unwahr, untrue.

Wenn ihr auch noch so fleißig seid, } however diligent you are.  
 So fleißig ihr auch seid, }

Es fehlt (mangelt, gebricht) mir an einer Sache, I am deficient in a thing,  
 destitute of a thing, I lack a thing.

Obwohl es geblitzt hat, so haben wir doch keinen Donner gehört. Obgleich viel Regen gefallen ist, so sind unsere Wege doch gut; denn die Erde war von der Hitze vollständig (perfectly) ausgedorrt worden. Ob dein Sohn schon stark (rapidly) gewachsen ist, so scheint es mir gleichwohl, daß er kleiner ist, als mein Albert. Wenn ich gleich seine große Gelehrsamkeit bewundern mußte, so glaubte ich doch, daß es seinem Geiste an Klarheit fehle. Wenn ihr auch Alles, was ihr versprochen habt, thätet, so würdet ihr doch euern Zweck nicht erreichen. Hätte mein Bruder sein Gütchen selbst verwaltet, so würde er mehr Einnahmen daraus erzielt haben. Hört der Krieg nicht bald auf, so müssen wir unser Häuschen und Gärtchen verkaufen. Hat dein Vater gleich keine Gründe angegeben, so mußt du dich dennoch seinem Willen fügen. Seid ihr nur fleißig, wird euch der Erfolg nicht fehlen. Wäret ihr auch hier, so könntet ihr in der Sache (matter) doch nichts ändern. Ist gleich die Gräfin noch nicht völlig genesen, so ist sie dennoch mit allen ihren Dienerinnen abgereist. Hätte ich nur ein Stück

chen Kreide bei (with) mir, so würde ich einen Umriss der Gegend hier an die Thür zeichnen. Wenn ich auch zugeben muß, daß das Buch mehrere gute Eigenschaften hat, so kann ich gleichwohl keinen Gebrauch davon machen. Selbst wenn der König dies gesagt hätte, würde ich es dennoch nicht glauben. Auch wenn der General jetzt [noch] siegen sollte (to be victorious), würde er doch seinen früheren Ruhm niemals wieder erlangen (recover). Wenn ihr auch noch so reich wäret (wäret ihr auch noch so reich), so könntet ihr doch diese Summe nicht zahlen. Wenn ihr auch noch so lange hier bleibt, so werdet ihr doch vergeblich warten. So gelehrt dieser Mann auch ist, so gebricht es ihm doch an Weisheit.

126.

Although† these men are deficient in many qualities, they certainly are not destitute of valor. Though we had gone very late to bed, we yet rose very early in the morning. Although this man is not learned, still he is a very good teacher. Although we have no claim to (auf) your indulgence, we nevertheless think that you will excuse us in this matter; for we have acted in good faith. Although our little trees (dimin.) blossomed in the spring, they (yet) have dried up in the summer. Although the news was confirmed in the papers, he still believed that it was untrue. However much they exerted themselves, their efforts were fruitless (vergeblich). However cruel this king was, he still was not destitute of good qualities. Although‡ the Italian women are renowned for (wegen) their beauty, they lack the grace of the French [women]. If this little house (dimin.) belonged to me, I should sell it. If your friend does not arrive to-day, we must go (reisen) to him. If the king keeps his word, the people will be happy. Although his instruments were not always well chosen, still his designs were certainly good. Although our hopes are weak, our efforts will be great. Had it not rained, we certainly should have come. However brilliant this victory was, the results did not warrant (rechtfertigen) our expectations.


† In translating the sentences with *although*, all different modes of expression should be employed in succession.

‡ In all the sentences following below, the conjunction *wenn* must be dropped, the sentences being rearranged accordingly.



*Sing.* der Mann      *Plur.* die Leute (if used as an indefinite aggregate of persons).

*Sing.* der Kaufmann      *Plur.* die Kaufleute (not Kaufmänner).

 Most of the compounds with Mann form the plural Leute, not Männer.

Obs.—1. Participles if used as adjectives, are declined with the same endings as adjectives, either after the strong or weak declension: ein getrockneter Apfel, a dried apple; der getrocknete Apfel, the dried apple. They are also subject to comparison with the same endings, as ordinary adjectives: gebildet, educated; gebildeter, more educated; ein gebildeterer Mann, a more educated man.

2. Present participles add the ending *end* to the stem of the verb: lobend, praising; eine blühende Stadt, a flourishing town.

3. Adjectives and participles, used with the force of adjectives, are generally placed before their nouns, even when they have one or more adjuncts. The adjuncts, in this case, always precede their adjectives, and are placed between the article or determinative pronoun, and the noun. In English, such phrases must be placed after the noun, and often they must be replaced by relative or other clauses:

Ein seinem Vaterlande ergebener Bürger, a citizen devoted to his country (who is devoted to his country).

Die ihre Eltern liebenden Kinder, the children loving their parents (that love their parents).

Eine mit Fuhrwerken angefüllte Straße, a street crowded with vehicles.

4. The German infinitive with the neuter article (or other determinative) is used with the force of the English participial noun in *ing*. It is then declined like other substantives in *en*: das Loben, the praising; Gen. des Lobens, of the praising; Dat. dem Loben, Acc. das Loben.

Anfertigen, to compile;  
berauben (with Gen.), to deprive of;  
beschränken, to limit;  
betrauen, to entrust;  
betrüben, to afflict;  
brüllen, to bellow;  
entblößen, to denude;  
erbittern, to exasperate;  
erfahren (strong v.), to experience;  
erschüttern, to move, to affect;  
erstarren, to benumb;  
fühlen, to feel;

pflügen, to plow;  
raffiniren, to refine;  
reizen, to charm;  
rufen (strong), to call;  
schießen (strong), to fire;  
schreien (strong), to shout;  
täuschen, to disappoint;  
toben, to rage;  
\*übersehen (strong), to overlook;  
\*unterhalten (strong), to entertain;  
verstärken, to increase;  
verüben, to commit;

der Abfall, the defection;	die Provinz, the province;
der Andachtsplatz, the place of worship;	die Regung, the emotion;
der Arbeitgeber, the employer;	das Reich, the empire;
der Arbeitsmann, the workingman;	der Sinn, the sense;
der Auswanderer, the emigrant;	der Stall, the stable;
der Anblick, the sight;	das Talent, the talent;
die Bereitwilligkeit, the readiness;	die That, the exploit;
die Beute, the booty;	der Theil, the part;
die Blüte, the blossom;	die Umsicht, the circumspection;
der Eindruck, the impression;	das Urtheil, the judgment;
die Entlassung, the dismissal;	der Westen, the West;
die Erpressung, the extortion;	begierig auf, eager for;
der Exceß, the excess;	empfehlenswerth, commendable;
die Gemeinde, the congregation;	entsetzlich, terrific;
die Glocke, the bell;	furchtbar, fearful;
die Grausamkeit, the cruelty;	lüstern nach, greedy of;
das Herz, the heart;	neuerlich, (adv.), recently;
*der Kanzler, the chancellor;	roh, rude;
der Künstler, the artist;	schön, fine;
der Landmann, the countryman (hus-	schmerzlich, painful;
bandman);	stolz auf, proud of;
der Landsmann, the countryman (being	unsähig (with Gen.), incapable of;
of the same country);	ungerührt, untouched;
die Menge, the multitude;	vertraut mit, privy to;
der Plan, the plan;	voll, full;
*der Punkt, the point;	wesentlich für, essential to.

Es befindet sich (there is) ein erfahrener Wundarzt auf dem Schiffe. Wir arbeiten jetzt mit verstärktem Fleiße. Du hast mir ein reizendes Buch geliehen. Wir hatten heute den Besuch mehrerer reisender Kaufleute. Das Lesen unterhaltender Bücher ist nicht immer empfehlenswerth. Wir bemerkten viele mit Pflügen beschäftigte Landleute. Das Schreien und Toben der erbitterten Menge war furchtbar. Das Leiden dieser von aller Hülfe entbloßten Leute war entsetzlich. Der Abfall der seinem Reiche so lange treu gewesenenen Provinzen erschütterte den König tief. Die neuerlich von Europa angekommenen Auswanderer wurden sogleich nach dem Westen befördert. Nichts macht einen betrübenderen Eindruck, als ein während des Sommers seiner Blätter beraubter Baum. Diese nach Ruhm so begierige Künstlerin fühlte sich schmerzlich getäuscht, als das Urtheil der Menge ihr bekannt zu werden anfang. Die vor (with) Frost fast erstarrten Soldaten wurden mit raffinirter Grausamkeit von den nach

Beute künftigen Landeleuten getödtet. Wir haben immer unsere armen, vom Unglück (distress) betroffenen (involved in) Landeleute mit großer Bereitwilligkeit unterstützt. Die rohen und auf ihre Thaten stolzen Soldaten verübten die größten (grob, brutal) Excesse.

128.

This news was very painful to the afflicted father. This is true (gelten) in a more limited sense than you seem to believe. I shall not answer (beantworten) these insulting remarks. The firing of the troops taking part in this battle, lasted till (the) evening. The carpenters, threatened with dismissal from their places (die Stelle), submitted to the extortions of their employers. The officers (civil), entrusted with the compiling of these lists, accomplished their tasks (Aufgabe) in less than three months. We heard the bellowing of the cattle (die Rinder, plur.) returning to their stables. The tolling (Läuten) of the bells, calling the congregations to their places of worship, made a solemn impression. We were shown (translate by man) the works of several [lady] artists, [who are] renowned for (wegen) their talents. Although the workingmen, disappointed in their hopes, were exasperated at (über with accus.) their employers, they soon returned to (zu) their work. These points so essential to us, have been entirely overlooked by you. There is no finer sight than an apple-tree (standing) in full blossom. This heart, incapable of all higher emotions, remained untouched. The chancellor [who was] privy to all the plans of the king, prepared this enterprise with great circumspection.

129.

*Infinitive.*

mögen, to like;	dürfen, to be at liberty, to be allowed.	wissen, to know.
-----------------	---	------------------

*Present Indicative.*

ich mag, I may;	ich darf, I am at liberty etc.;	ich weiß, I know;
du magst, thou mayest;	du darfst, thou art at liberty;	du weißt, thou knowest;
er mag, he may;	er darf, he is etc.	er weiß, he knows;
wir mögen, we may;	wir dürfen, we are etc.,	wir wissen, we know;
ihr mögt, you may;	ihr dürft, you are etc.;	ihr wißt, you know;
sie mögen, they may;	sie dürfen, they are etc.;	sie wissen, they know.

*Present Subjunctive.*

ich möge, etc.

ich dürfe, etc.

ich wisse, etc.

*Imperfect Indicative.*

ich möchte, I might etc.

ich dürfte, I was at liberty;

ich wüßte, I knew.

*Imperfect Subjunctive.*

ich möchte, I might;

ich dürfte, I were at liberty,

ich wüßte, I knew.

*Imperative.*

wißt, wißt, wissen Sie.

ONS.—1. *Wünschen* in the present and imperfect denotes a possibility, dependent on contingency: *dies mag sich zutragen*, this may happen. With a negation it generally expresses *I do not like to*, and in the subjunctive imperfect (with or without negation) often *I should wish or like*. *Ich mag dies nicht thun*, I do not like to do this; *ich möchte dies haben*, I should like to have this.

2. *May* in questions is generally rendered by *dürfen*: *darf ich eintreten*, may I enter? In the SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT it denotes PROBABILITY: *dies dürfte wahr sein*, this is probably true. *Must* with a negation may be generally translated by (nicht) *dürfen*: *wir dürfen dies nicht thun*, we must not do this.

3. All modal auxiliaries (*mögen, dürfen, müssen, können, wollen, sollen*) form past participles (*gemocht, gedurft, gemußt, gesounnt, gewollt, gesollt*), and all compound tenses (Fut. *ich werde können*, I shall be able; *ich werde müssen*, I shall be obliged; *ich werde dürfen*, I shall be at liberty, etc.). Their past participles in the perfect and pluperfect generally take the form of their infinitives; Perf.: *ich habe nicht kommen können*, † I have not been able to come (I could not come); *ich habe dies nicht thun mögen*, I have not liked (did not like or wish) to do this; *ich habe nicht kommen dürfen*, I have not been at liberty (was not at liberty) to come; *ich habe nach Hause gehen müssen (sollen)*, I have been obliged (was obliged) to go home. The pluperfects are in the same way formed by *ich hätte*.

4. The English potential pluperfects with *could, should (ought to)* are translated by the pluperfect subjunctives of the verb *können, sollen* und *müssen* with the present infinitive of the main verb; *ich hätte dies nicht schreiben können*, I could not have written this; *sie hätten nicht so früh kommen sollen (or müssen)*, you should not have come so early; *er hätte die Schlacht gewinnen müssen* (or sollen), †† he ought to have won the battle.

5. If clauses in which the infinitive of the modal auxiliaries is used with the force of a participle, are introduced by one of the conjunctions *daß,*

† The perfects and pluperfects of the modal auxiliaries are only then formed with the past participles, if the infinitive, dependent on these verbs is understood: *ich habe es nicht gesounnt*, I have not been able [to do it], etc.

† Provided that *should* has not the force of a simple conditional, in which case it is rendered by *würde*, with the perfect infinitive.

†† The literal translation of these English potential pluperfects, by means of *könnte* etc. with the perfect infinitive has an entirely different meaning. They are used only in special circumstances.

wenn etc., requiring the verb to be at the end, *the auxiliaries* habe, hatte and hätte *can never be placed at the end of the clause*, but must precede the infinitive of the main verb, as: wenn ihr hättet kommen können, if you could have come (not wenn ihr kommen können hättet).

6. The preposition *without* before a verbal noun in *ing*, is rendered by ohne and an infinitive with zu: ohne den Mann zu kennen, without knowing the man; ohne ihn gesehen zu haben, without having seen him; ohne es thun zu können, without being able to do it.

7. Wissen is construed with zu and the infinitive, corresponding to the English *know how to* etc.: er mußte sich zu maßigen, he knew how to restrain himself.

8. Pflegen with zu and the infinitive corresponds to the English *to be in the habit of* with the participial noun in *ing*, or to *I am wont* with the infinitive. In the imperfect it is generally translated by *I used to*: wir pflegten am Morgen zu baden, we are in the habit of bathing (we are wont to bathe) in the morning; ich pflegte mich mit meinen Freunden über diesen Gegenstand zu unterhalten, I used to converse with my friends on the subject.

Anrühren, to touch;  
ansetzen (strong), to pick up;  
ausdrücken, to express;  
ausrichten, to execute;  
Bedenken tragen (strong), to hesitate;  
beitragen (strong), to contribute;  
sich benehmen (strong), to behave;  
benutzen (with Acc.), to make use of;  
besuchen (with Acc.), to attend to;  
sich betheiligen an, to engage in;  
betreten, to enter;  
frühstücken, to breakfast;  
gedeihen (strong), to prosper;  
in Kenntniß setzen, to notify;  
krönen, to crown;  
sich mischen, to mingle;  
stören (with Acc.), to intrude on;  
übereinstimmen, to agree;  
\*überlegen, to consider;  
unzufrieden sein, to find fault;  
veröffentlichen, to divulge;  
vorhersehen (strong), to foresee;  
vortragen (strong), to deliver (a speech);  
versichern, to assure;  
wiedersehen (strong), to see again;  
ziehen (strong), to draw;

die Antwort, the answer;  
der Aufsatz, the composition;  
der Auftrag, the commission;  
der Ausländer, the foreigner;  
die Aussicht, the chance;  
die Bekanntschaft, the acquaintance;  
das Betragen, the conduct;  
die Bibliothek, the library;  
die Folge, the consequence;  
der Geschäftsbrief, the business letter;  
das Klavier, the piano;  
die Kirche, the church;  
der Posten, the lot;  
der Redner, the speaker;  
der Schluß, the conclusion;  
der Schuldschein, the draft;  
die Sprache, the language;  
die Speisen (pl.), the eatables;  
der Umfang, the extent;  
der Untergebene, the clerk;  
die Waare, the article (of trade);  
ganz, quite;  
gerechtfertigt, warranted;  
jedemfalls, at all events;  
mit Unrecht, wrongly, unjustly;  
verantwortlich, responsible;  
wahrscheinlich, probable.

Dies mag der Fall sein oder nicht; jedenfalls können Sie es nicht wissen. Mögen Sie versichert sein (rest), [meine] Herren, daß ich von der ganzen Sache nichts weiß, und mit Unrecht jenes Verbrechers beschuldigt worden bin. Mein Bruder mag sich in diese Sache (affaire) nicht mischen. Ich mag diesen Mann nicht wiedersehen. Möchte.. Sie [wohl] Ihren Bruder überraschen, wenn er von seiner Reise zurückkehrt? Dürfen Sie diese Bibliothek benutzen? Ja, ich darf sie benutzen, so oft (as often as) ich will. Darf ich mich nach Ihrem Befinden erkundigen? Dürfen Ihre Söhne heute mit mir aufs Land gehen? Nein, meine Söhne dürfen heute gar nicht ausgehen. Die Soldaten durften sich nicht mit einander unterhalten. Diese Herren wissen sich nicht zu benehmen. Dieser Ausländer wußte sich sehr gut (well) in unserer Sprache auszudrücken. Ich pflege die Zeitungen zu lesen, sobald (as soon as) ich gefrühstückt habe. Sein Bruder pflegte die von den Bäumen herabgefallenen Äpfel aufzulesen, und sie nach der Stadt zu bringen. Können Sie Klavier spielen? Nein, ich habe es niemals lernen mögen. Ich habe nicht ein einziges Wort dieses Redners verstehen können. Wir Knaben hatten noch niemals dieses Zimmer betreten dürfen. Hätten Sie nicht früher zu uns herüberkommen können? Ich hätte es gewiß gethan, wenn ich gekonnt hätte. Sie hätten diesen Aufsatz nicht besser schreiben können; aber Sie hätten ihn besser vortragen sollen. Ich würde den Aufsatz besser geschrieben haben, wenn ich die öffentliche Bibliothek hätte benutzen dürfen. Ich werde Ihren Plan auszuführen versuchen, aber ohne mich für dessen (its) Erfolg verantwortlich zu machen. Er kehrte von der Stadt zurück, ohne seinen Auftrag ausgerichtet zu haben. Ich war lange in der Stadt, ohne mit Herrn Rollet sprechen zu können. Er mußte im Zimmer bleiben, ohne etwas von jenen Speisen anrühren zu dürfen.

130.

You may be diligent, but you are not attentive enough. What is reported in the paper may be quite (ganz) correct, but the conclusions which you would like to draw from (aus) it, are certainly not warranted. May our country continue (fortfahren)† to prosper, and may our labors be always crowned

† To continue is translated by fortsetzen, if governing a substantive; if it is followed by an infinitive, it must be rendered by fortfahren. If followed by an adverb or adjective, we translate it bleiben.

by success! Would you like to engage in this enterprise? I have often told you that this enterprise does not agree with my views, and that I do not like to contribute to (zu) it. Since my brother was at liberty to divulge the matter (Sache), he did not hesitate to make me privy to it. I shall probably (wohl) be at liberty to make you acquainted with this affair in a few days; but I must not do it now. May I intrude on you for a few minutes? Do you know how to use (gebrauchen) this instrument (Instrument n.)? I believe, I knew it formerly, but I must have forgotten it. We are in the habit of answering (beantworten) all our business letters on the spot (die Stelle). When I was living in the city, I used to attend to this church. I am not wont to allow such liberties to my clerk. I did never like (perf. of mögen) to make acquaintances on the street. Although I made (perf.) several efforts (der Versuch) I have not been able to become acquainted with this gentleman. We have been often obliged to find fault with your conduct. Have you been at liberty to take these books home? Why did you not notify me directly of (von) your plans? You should (sollen) have sent me an answer by return mail (mit umgehender Post). I could not have imagined that your claims against (an) me were of (von) such extent. You ought to have better considered your probable chances before you came to this country. Would you have engaged in this enterprise if you could have foreseen its consequences? I engaged in it without much thinking of its consequences. I know very well that I should (sollen) have taken (to me) more time, when I was writing this book. Do you know that you ought to have paid your draft yesterday? I shall not leave the city without having seen Mr. Nollet. I staid (perf.) three days in the city without being able to find (treffen) Mr. Nollet at home. We stood several days before the enemy without being at liberty to attack them. Must I take the whole lot if I want to purchase this article? You may purchase as much (soviel) of it as you want (wollen), without being obliged to take the whole (das Ganze).

---

## APPENDIX.

1. The following exercises in German Hand-writing are intended to drill the first beginner in the use of writing characters. The numbers refer to the numbers of the exercises in the *Method*.

2. Each number should be carefully copied in connection with the exercises it refers to. The teacher may, in addition, require the sentences to be written out in English characters, or to be translated into English.

3. In translating the English exercises in the *Method* into German, which should always be done in writing, the student should in the beginning of his course use English rather than German characters, till he will have had sufficient practise in the use of the German written alphabet by copying the appended sentences.

1. Du bist groß. Du bist  
müde. Du bist arm?

3. Ich bin traurig. Du bist  
nicht glücklich. Ich bin still.

5. Hast Du ein feines Kleid?  
Der Mann ist klein. Du bist  
jung?

7. Ich habe einen Sohn?  
Dieser Mann ist krank. Mein  
Sohn ist zufrieden.



9. Mein Garten ist schön.  
Mein Faden ist nicht gut. Ist  
Karl noch da? Mein Vater ist  
mein Freund.

11. Mein Linsen ist noch jung.  
Ist das ein sein Tofen?  
Mein Garten ist nicht groß.  
Mein Vater ist zuhause. Mein  
Haus ist sehr bequem.\*

13. Mein Hund ist müde  
als mein Pferd. Mein Tofen  
ist flüssiger als mein Tofen.  
Ist Lina älter oder jünger als  
Ihr Linsen?

---

\* bequem, comfortable.

15. Ist Ihr Vater so alt als  
jener Frau? Sieht ihm Kopf  
für hundert als Drei. Junge  
Haut ist besser als hundert  
als ein Hund.

17. Haben sie Kopf oder Un-  
recht? Ja, nicht Karl mein  
Mutter? Warum hat Ludwig  
mein Lief? Er hat Ihr Lief  
nicht.

19. Warum soll ich mein Pferd  
verkaufen? Ich habe Ihre Uhr ver-  
kauft. Ich habe meine Tochter nicht  
gekauft. Haben Sie ein Hund Lief  
für Ihre Vorsehung gekauft?

21. Habt Ihr einen Ring  
gekauft? Wo haben Sie den  
Ring gekauft? Wie haben Sie  
den Ring nicht gekauft. Dieser  
Mann hat sein Haus noch  
nicht verkauft.

23. Hast du einen Kasten  
gekauft? Haben Sie nicht  
Ihren Leinwand gekauft? Dieser  
hat einen Vogel gekauft.

25. Habt Ihr einen Artikel  
gekauft? Unser Kasten hat  
sein Pferd und seinen Hund  
verkauft. Wo hat er seinen  
Pferd und seinen Hund gekauft?

27. Hast du den Ausgang  
des Vorns gesehen? Wie sah  
die Visionen der Königin ge-  
kamt. Ist die der Narben  
deiner Frau.

29. Hast du den Lärm der  
des Mannes gesehen? Die  
Töne der Angst hat ich ihn  
gehört. Das Zimmer der  
Visionen ist kleiner als der  
Lärm der Visionen.

31. Hast du nicht den Angst  
des Ochs gesehen? Der  
Lärm seiner Mühle ist länger

---

\* Der Ausgang, the rising.

als der Lenz seiner Natur.  
Ich habe das Lenz meine Sinne  
das noch nicht gekannt.

33. Dieser Regenschirm schützt  
den Pfirsich seinen Nachbarn.  
Hat nicht mein Obel diesen  
Angebot den Lenz gekannt? Galt  
zu diesem Kind meine Leichtigkeit  
ausgeschlossen?

35. Der Gärtner hat meine  
Lilie Annelie von Lilien  
gegeben. Eine Tochter in seinem  
Nachbarn hat ihn um  
um. Hat Ludwig seinen Namen  
dieses Lenz schon gekannt?

37. Mein Leinwand hat diese  
Uhr von seinem Vetter gekauft.  
Hast du nicht dieses Pferd von  
meinem Onkel gekauft?

39. Ein Karawan ist der  
älteste und ärmste Mann der  
Stadt. Ist Lili das jüngste  
Mädchen? Karl hat das beste  
Pferd seines Vaters gekauft.

41. Wann hast du deinen Lini-  
stift gegeben? Von wem hat  
mein Leinwand seine Uhr gekauft?  
Für wem haben die diese Linnen  
gekauft?

43. Von wem haben die ge-

geproben? In welchem Zimmer  
ist Ihr Vater? Mit welcher  
Feine haben Sie diesen Brief  
geschrieben?

45. Wer ist der Mann, dem  
dieses Heft gehört? Wo ist  
die Frau, von der die Briefe  
geschrieben sind? Haben Sie  
das Heft geschrieben, welcher Ihre  
Freunde von ihrem Briefe an-  
sahen sind? Diese Quelle\*  
ist die Kälte, die ist jenseits  
geschrieben.

47. Dieser Pfand ist nicht

---

\* Die Quelle, the source.

Arzt, m., physician  
 atlantisch, adj., Atlantic, adj.  
 auch, particle, also  
 auf, prep., on, upon  
 aufbauen, v. a., to build up  
 Aufgabe, f., lesson, exercise, task  
 aufgehen, } to rise. See page 68.  
 aufstehen, }  
 auffallen (strong), v. intr. with dat.,  
 to strike  
 aufhalten (strong), v. a., to delay; sich  
 aufhalten, to stay  
 aufheben (strong), v. a., to pick up  
 aufhören, v. n., to cease  
 aufmachen, v. a., to open  
 Aufmerksamkeit, f., attention  
 aufrichtig, adj., upright, sincere  
 aufschreiben (strong), v. a., to write  
 down  
 Auftrag, m., order  
 aufwachen, v. n., to awake  
 Auge, n., the eye  
 aus, prep., out of, from  
 ausbreiten, v. n., to extend  
 ausbrennen, v. n., to burn out  
 ausborren, v. a., to parch  
 äußerst, adj., extreme  
 ausführen, v. a., to execute, accom-  
 plish, carry out  
 austrüsten, v. a., to endow  
 Auschuß, m., board (of persons)  
 aussehen (strong), v. n., to look, v. n.  
 aussetzen, v. a., to expose  
 Aussicht, f., prospect  
 austauschen, v. a., to exchange  
 ausverkaufen, v. a., to sell out.

### B.

Bahnhof, m., railroad-station  
 bald, adv., soon  
 Ball, m., ball  
 Band, n., ribbon; m., volume  
 Bank, f., bank (moneyed institute)  
 Base, f., cousin, f.  
 bauen, v. a., to build  
 Baum, m., tree

beabsichtigen, v. a., to intend  
 der Beamte, m., the officer (civil)  
 bebauern, v. a., to regret  
 bedecken, v. a., to cover  
 Bedeutung, f., meaning  
 der Bediente, man-servant  
 Bedingung, f., condition  
 bedrohen, v. a., to threaten  
 befehlen (strong), v. a., to command  
 Befinden, n., health  
 sich befinden (strong), to do, to be (of  
 health)  
 befolgen, v. a., to follow (an order)  
 befördern, v. a., to forward  
 sich begeben, to betake one's self, to  
 proceed  
 sich begegnen, to meet (one another)  
 begehren, v. a., to demand  
 begleiten, v. a., to accompany  
 begraben (strong), v. a., to bury  
 behandeln, v. a., to treat  
 behaupten, v. a., to assert, to state  
 beherrschen, v. a., to rule over  
 bei, prep., with, in the house of  
 Beifall finden, to meet with favor  
 bewohnen, intr. v. w. dat., to be  
 present at  
 bekannt, adj., known  
 der Bekannte (personal noun), the  
 acquaintance  
 Bekanntschaft (abstr. n.), acquaintance  
 belagern, v. a., to besiege  
 Belagerung, f., siege  
 belästigen, v. a., to molest  
 belauschen, v. a., to watch  
 beleidigen, v. a., to insult  
 bellen, v. n., to bark  
 belohnen, v. a., to reward  
 bemerken, v. a., to perceive, to remark  
 Bemerkung, f., remark  
 benachrichtigen, v. a., to inform  
 beneiden, v. a., to envy  
 Berg, m., mountain  
 berichten, v. a., to report  
 berühmt, adj., renowned  
 beschädigen, v. a., to damage



sich beschäftigen, to occupy one's self  
 beschießen (strong), v. a., to bombard  
 Beschluß, m., conclusion  
 beschuldigen, v. a., to accuse  
 besetzen, v. a., to occupy (take possession of)  
 besiegen, v. a., to defeat  
 sich bessern, to improve (one's self)  
 bestätigen, v. a., to confirm  
 Bestechung, f., bribery  
 bestehen in (strong), to consist in  
 einen Besuch machen, to pay a visit  
 besuchen, v. a., to visit  
 sich betragen (strong), to behave (one's self)  
 Betragen, n., conduct  
 beträchtlich, adj., considerable  
 betrüben, v. a., to afflict; es betrübt mich, I am sorry  
 sich betrüben, to be grieved, sorry  
 Bett, n., bed  
 Bettler, m., beggar  
 sich Bewegung machen, to take exercise  
 bewundern, v. a., to admire  
 Bier, n., beer  
 Bild, n., (pl. Bilder), picture  
 Birne, f., pear  
 bis, prep. and conj., to, till, until  
 bitten (strong), v. a., to request  
 Blatt (pl. Blätter), n., leaf  
 blau, adj., blue  
 Blei, n., lead  
 Bleistift, m., pencil  
 bleiben (strong), v. n., to remain  
 blitzen, v. n., to lighten  
 nicht bloß, conj., not only  
 blühen, v. n., to blossom, to flourish  
 Blume, f., flower  
 \*Boot, n., boat  
 böse, adj., wicked, naughty  
 Bote, m., messenger  
 Botschaft, f., message  
 brauchen, v. a., to need, v. a.  
 brechen (strong), v. a. & n., to break  
 breit, adj., broad, wide  
 brennen, v. a. & n., to burn

Brief, m., letter  
 Brieftasche, f., pocket-book  
 bringen (strong), v. a., to bring  
 \*Brot, n., bread  
 Bruder, m., brother  
 Brüssel, n., Brussels  
 Buch (pl. Bücher), n., book  
 \*Buchhalter, m., book-keeper  
 Buchhändler, m., book-seller  
 sich bücken, to stoop  
 Bürgschaft, f., bail  
 Butter, f., butter

C.

Concert, n., concert  
 Congreß, m., Congress  
 Congressmitglied, m., member of Congress  
 corrigiren, v. a., to correct  
 Cousin, m., (male) cousin; Cousine, f., (female), cousin

D.

Da, adv., there; conj. since  
 damals, adv., then, at that time  
 Dame, f., lady  
 danken, v. intr., to thank  
 daß, conj., that  
 datiren, v. a., to date  
 dauern, v. n., to last  
 dein, pronoun, thy; deiner, der deinige, thine  
 denken (strong), v. n., to think  
 deutlich, adj., distinct  
 deutsch, adj. German (adj.)  
 der Deutsche, German (noun)  
 Deutschland, n., Germany  
 dicht, adj., dense  
 dictiren, v. a., to dictate  
 Diener, m., man-servant  
 dieser, c, es, pron., this  
 donnern, v. n., to thunder  
 Dorf (pl. Dörfer), n., village  
 dort, adv., there, at that place  
 drei, num., three; dreimal, three times  
 sich drehen, to revolve, to turn

der dritte, num., the third  
dunkel, adj., dark  
durch, prep., through, by  
durchaus nicht, not at all  
dursten (dürsten), v. a., to be thirsty  
Duzend, n., dozen

**E**

Ehe, conj., before (conj.)  
ehemals, adv., formerly  
Ehre, f., honor  
Ei (pl. Eier), n., egg  
eigen, adj., own  
Eigenschaft, f., quality  
Eigentümer, m., owner  
ein, a, one  
sich einbilden, to imagine  
einige, adj. plur., a few  
\*Einkommen, n., income  
einladen (strong), v. a., to invite  
Einladung, f., invitation  
Einlaß, m., admission  
einmal, adv., once; noch einmal, once more  
Einnahme, f., revenue  
einnehmen (strong), v. a., to occupy,  
to carry (a fortress)  
einsehen (strong), v. a., to be aware of  
einmal, adv., once (upon a time)  
\*Einwohner, m., inhabitant  
einzeln (strong), v. a., to collect  
einzig, adj., single, only (adj.)  
Eis, n., ice  
Eisen, n., iron  
Eisenbahn, f., railroad  
Eisenbahnzug, m., railroad-train  
sich ekeln, to be disgusted  
Elle, f., ell, yard  
Eltern (plur.), parents  
Ende, n., end  
Engländer, m., Englishman  
entdecken, v. a., to discover  
entlassen (strong), v. a., to dismiss  
entmuthigen, v. a., to discourage  
Entschädigung, f., damages  
entschuldigen, v. a., to excuse

Entschuldigung, f., excuse  
entweichen (strong), v. intr., to escape  
entzündend, adj., charming  
er, pers. pron., he  
Erbitterung, f., animosity  
Erde, f., earth  
erfreuen, v. a., to delight  
\*Erfolg, m., success, result  
sich ergeben (strong), to surrender  
(one's self)  
erhalten (strong), v. a., to receive  
erheblich, adj., considerable  
sich erinnern, to remember  
erklären, v. a., to declare  
sich erkälten, to take a cold  
erkranken, v. n., to fall sick  
erkennen, v. a., to recognize  
sich erkundigen, to inquire  
erlauben, v. a., to permit, to allow  
Erlaubniß, f., permission  
ermuthigen, v. a., to encourage  
ernähren, v. a., to support  
ernten, v. a. & n., to harvest  
erobern, v. a., to conquer  
erreichen, v. a., to obtain, to reach  
errichten, v. a., to establish, to erect  
erringen (strong), v. a., to obtain  
(with effort)  
sich erschrecken (strong), to be fright-  
ened, scared  
erst, adv., not till  
erstaunen, v. a., to astonish (v. a.)  
der erste, num., the first  
ersuchen, v. a., to request  
erwarten, v. a., to expect  
Erwartung, f., expectation  
erweisen (strong), v. a. to prove  
erzielen, v. a., to derive  
es, pers. pron., it  
essen (strong), v. a., to eat  
etwas, indef. pron., something, any-  
thing  
euer, poss. pron., your; der eure, der  
eure, yours  
Europa, Europe

**F.**

Fahren (strong), v. n., to ride (on a vehicle)

Fall, m., case

fallen (strong), v. n., to fall

fast, particle, almost

faul, adj., idle, lazy

Feder, f., pen

Federmesser, n., pen-knife

Feind, m., enemy

feindlich, adj., hostile

Feld (pl. Felder), n., field

Feldherr, m., commander

Feldzug, m., campaign

Fenster, n., window

Feuer, n., fire

finden (strong), v. a., to find

Flasche, f., bottle

Fleiß, m., diligence

Fleisch, n., meat, flesh

fleißig, adj., diligent

fliehen (strong), v. n., to flee

Flügel, m., wing

Fluß, m., river

forträumen, v. a., to remove

Fortschritt, m., progress

fortsetzen, v. a., to continue

fragen, v. a., to ask (a question)

Franreich, France

Franzose, m., Frenchman

französisch, adj., French (adj.)

Frau, f., woman, wife

Fräulein, n., young lady, Miss

Freiheit, f., liberty

sich freuen, to be glad, to rejoice

Freund, m., friend (male); Freundin, f., friend (female)

Freundschaft, f., friendship

Frieden, m., peace

Friedrich, Frederick

froh, adj., glad

Front, f., front

Frost, m., frost

frieren (strong), v. n., to freeze

Frucht, f., fruit

fruchtbar, adj., fertile

früh, adj., early

Frühling, m., spring

sich fügen, to submit

führen, v. a., to conduct

für, prep., for

fürchten, v. n., to be afraid; v. a., to fear

Fürst, m., prince

Fuß, m., foot

**G.**

Gabel, f., fork

Gans, f., goose

ganz, adj., whole

gar nicht, (particle,) not at all

Garten, m., garden

Gartenthür, f., garden-gate

Gärtner, m., gardener (male); Gärtnerin, f., gardener (female)

Gast, m., guest

Gasthof, m., hotel

geben (strong), v. a., to give

Gebäude, n., building

Gebirge, n., mountain-chain

Gebrauch, m., use

gebrauchen, v. a., to use

Geburtstag, m., birth-day

Gefahr, f., danger

\*Gefallen, m., the favor

gefallen (strong), v. intr., to please

gefällig, adj., obliging

der Gefangene, the prisoner

gegen, prep., against

Gegend, f., landscape, grounds

Gegner, m., adversary

gehen (strong), v. n., to go, to walk, to step

gehorden, v. intr. w. dat., to obey

gehören, v. intr., to belong

gehörig, adj., proper

Gehülfe, m., assistant

Geist, m., mind

Geld, n., money

Geldstück, n., piece of money

Gelegenheit, f., occasion

Gelehrsamkeit, f., scholarship

gelehrt, adj., learned

gelten (strong), v. n., to be esteemed,  
to be worth; etwas gelten, to be for  
something  
Gemüse, n., vegetables  
\*General, m., general (noun)  
genesen (strong), v. n., to recover  
(neuter)  
genügend, adj., sufficient  
gerecht, adj., just  
gern, adv., gladly, willingly  
der Gesandte, the ambassador  
Geschäft, n., business  
Geschick, n., ability  
geschickt, adj., able  
Gesellschaft, f., company  
Gesetz, n., law  
gesund, adj., healthy  
gestern, adv., yesterday  
gestehen (strong), v. a., to acknowledge  
Getreide, n., grain  
Gewalt, f., force  
gewiß, adj., certain  
Gewitter, n., thunderstorm  
Gewohnheit, f., habit  
gewöhnlich, adj., ordinary, common  
Giebel, m., top (of a roof)  
Gipfel, m., top (of a mountain etc.)  
Glas, n., glass  
glauben, v. a. & n., to believe  
Glauben, m., faith, belief  
Gläubiger, m., creditor  
Glück, n., fortune, success, happiness  
glücklich, adj., happy  
Gold, n., gold  
golden, adj., golden, gold (adj.)  
Graben, m., moat, ditch  
Graf, m., count  
groß, adj., great, large, big  
Grund, m., reason  
gut, adj., good, kind  
Gut, n., property  
Güte, f., kindness

§.

haben, v. a., to have  
ein halber (e, es), half a

Halbinsel, f., cravat  
halten (strong), v. a., to hold, to keep  
Hand, f., hand  
Handel, m., trade  
handeln, v. n., to act  
\*Handschuh, m., glove  
hängen (strong), v. n., to hang  
hart, adj., hard  
hassen, v. a.; to hate  
Hauptstadt, f., capital  
Haus (pl. Häuser), n., house  
Hausthür, f., street-door  
heilen, v. a. & n., to heal  
heirathen, v. a., to marry  
heizen, v. a. & n., to warm the rooms,  
to build a fire  
Held, m., hero  
helfen (strong), v. intr. w. dat., to help  
Hemd, n., shirt  
herausfordern, v. a., to challenge  
Herbst, m., autumn  
hereinkommen, } to come in, get in  
hineinkommen, }  
hereintreten, } to step in  
hineintreten, }  
Herr, m., gentleman, Mr.  
herüberschwimmen, } to swim over  
hinüberschwimmen, }  
herzlich, adj., sincere  
heute, adv., to-day  
hier, adv., here  
Himmel, m., heaven, sky  
Hinderniß, n., obstacle  
hoch, adj., high  
hoffen, v. a. & n., to hope  
Hoffnung, f., hope  
höflich, adj., polite  
hören, v. a., to hear  
hübsch, adj., pretty  
Huhn, n., chicken  
Hülfe, f., help  
\*Hund, m., dog  
hungern, v. n., to be hungry  
hut, m., hat

### 3. (vowel).

**Ihr**, pers. pr., you, to her; poss. pr.,  
her, their, your; **der ihrige**, hers,  
theirs; **der Ihrige**, yours  
**immer**, adv., always  
**in**, prep., in, into  
**Industrie**, f., industry  
**Italien**, Italy  
**Italiener (Italiäner)**, m., Italian (noun)

### 3. (consonant).

**Ja**, adv., yes  
**\*Jahr**, n., the year  
**jeder**, e, es, each, every  
**Jedermann**, everybody  
**jemaß**, ever  
**Jemand**, somebody, anybody  
**jeder**, e, es (dem. pron.), that (dem.),  
that one  
**jetzt**, adv., now  
**jung**, adj., young

### 2.

**Kaffee**, m., coffee  
**Kaiser**, m., emperor  
**Kalb**, n., (pl. **Kälber**), calf  
**kalt**, adj., cold  
**Kälte**, f., the cold  
**Kamerad**, m., comrade  
**Kandidat**, m., candidate  
**Kanonade**, f., cannonade  
**Kanonentugel**, f., cannon-ball  
**Käse**, m., cheese  
**Katze**, f., cat  
**kaufen**, v. a., to buy, to purchase  
**Käufer**, m., purchaser  
**Kaufmann**, m., merchant  
**kein**, no, adj. pron.  
**kennen**, (irr.). v. a., to know  
**Kenntniß**, f., knowledge, attainment  
**Kind**, n., (pl. **Kinder**), child  
**Kirsche**, f., cherry  
**Kläger**, m., plaintiff  
**Klarheit**, f., clearness  
**Klassiker**, m., classic (noun)  
**Kleid** (pl. **Kleider**), n., dress

**klein**, adj., small, little  
**Knabe**, m., boy  
**\*Koffer**, m., trunk  
**Kohle**, f., coal  
**Köln**, Cologne  
**kommen** (strong), v. n., to come  
**Kommode**, f., chest of drawers  
**König**, m., king  
**Königin**, f., queen  
**können**, irr. v., to be able  
**Kopfschmerz**, m., head-ache  
**Korb**, m., basket  
**krank**, adj., sick, ill  
**Krankheit**, f., disease, sickness  
**Kreide**, f., chalk  
**Krieg**, m., war  
**Krone**, f., crown  
**Kugel**, f., bullet  
**kurz**, adj., short, brief

### 2.

**Laden**, m., shop  
**Land** (pl. **Länder**), n., country  
**Landgut**, n., farm, country-seat  
**Landhaus**, n., villa  
**lang**, adj., long  
**lange** (adv. of time), long, for a long  
time  
**laufen** (strong), v. n., to run  
**es läutet**, the bell rings  
**leben**, v. n., to live  
**Leben**, n., life  
**Lebensmittel**, n., victual, eatable  
**leer**, adj., empty  
**Lehrer**, m., teacher  
**Lehrbuch**, n., text-book  
**Leiche**, f., corpse  
**leicht**, adj., light, easy  
**es thut mir leid**, I am sorry  
**leiden** (strong), v. n. & a., to suffer  
**leihen** (strong), v. a. to lend  
**Leinwand**, f., linen  
**lernen**, v. a., to learn  
**lesen** (strong), v. n. & a., to read  
**leugnen**, v. a., to deny  
**Leute**, pl., people, individuals

lieb, adj., dear; *es ist mir lieb*, I am glad  
 lieben, v. a., to love  
 liegen (strong), v. n., to lie, to be (situated)  
 links, adj., left (side)  
 Liste, f., list  
 literarisch, adj., literary  
 loben, v. a., to praise  
 Loch, n., (pl. *Löcher*), hole  
 Löffel, m., spoon  
 Lohn, m. & n., wages  
 Loth, n., half an ounce  
 Löwe, m., lion  
 Lust haben, to have a mind (desire)

**M.**

Machen, v. a., to make  
 Macht, f., power  
 Mädchen, n., girl  
 Magd, f., maid-servant  
 Mailand, Milan  
 Mangel, m., want  
 Mann, m., (pl. *Männer*), man (male), husband  
 Markt, m., market  
 Marmor, m., marble  
 Marsch, m., march  
 Mauer, f., wall (outside)  
 mehr, indef. pron., more  
 mehrere, indef. pron., several  
 mein, my; *der meinige, meiner*, mine  
 Mensch, m., man (human being)  
 Messer, n., knife  
 \*Metall, n., metal  
 Minute, f., minute  
 mißlingen (strong), v. n., to fail  
 mit, prep., with  
 mitbringen (strong), v. a., to bring along  
 Mitglieb, n., (pl. *er*), member (person)  
 mitnehmen (strong), v. a., to take along  
 Mittel, n., means, instrument  
 mittheilen, v. a., to communicate, to impart

möglich, adj., possible  
 \*Monat, m., month  
 \*Mond, m., moon  
 \*Morgen, m., morning  
 morgen, adv., to-morrow  
 müde, adj., tired  
 Mühe, f., trouble  
 Muth, m., courage  
 Mutter, f., mother

**N.**

Nach, prep., after, to  
 Nachbar, m., (male) neighbor; *Nachbarin*, f., (female) neighbor  
 nachgeben (strong), v. intr., to yield  
 Nachsicht, f., indulgence  
 nächst, adj. & adv., next  
 Nacht, f., night  
 Nadel, f., needle, pin  
 sich nähern, to approach  
 Name, m., name  
 naß, adj., wet  
 neben, prep., (near) by  
 Nebel, m., fog  
 Nefte, m., nephew  
 nein, no (particle)  
 neu, adj., new  
 nicht, not  
 nicht einmal, not even  
 nichts, nothing, not anything; *nichts was*, nothing that  
 nie, niemals, never  
 Niederlage, f., defeat  
 noch (adv. of time), still, yet  
 Noth leiden, to suffer (be in distress)  
 nützlich, adj., useful

**O.**

Ob, whether, if  
 Obst, n., fruit  
 Obrigkeit, f., the authorities  
 oder, or  
 offen, adj., open  
 öffentlich, adj., public  
 öffnen, v. a., to open  
 Oheim, Onkel, m., uncle

ohne, prep., without  
Ordnung, order (opposed to disorder)  
Österreich (Defterreich), Austria

P.

\*Paar, n., pair, couple  
Partei, f., party  
Passagier, m., passenger  
Pfeffer, m., pepper  
Pferd, n., horse  
Pflaume, f., plum  
pflastern, v. a., to pave  
pflegen, v. a., to nurse  
\*Pfund, n., pound  
planiren, v. a., to grade, to level  
plötzlich, adj., sudden  
plündern, v. a., to plunder  
Postamt, n., post-office  
prächtigt, adj., magnificent  
Präsident, m., president  
Präsidentenschaft, f., presidency  
Preis, m., price  
Preuße, m., Prussian (noun)  
Preußen, Prussia  
protestiren, v. n., to protest  
Prozeß, m., lawsuit

Q.

Quälen, v. a., to torment

R.

Rächen, v. a., to avenge  
Rand (pl. Ränder), m., edge  
Rang, m., rank  
Rath, m., advice  
rathen (strong), v. a., to advise  
Rathgeber, m., adviser  
Räuber, m., robber  
Recht, n., right  
recht, adj., right  
reden, v. n., to speak, to talk  
Regelmäßigkeit, f., regularity  
Regen, m., rain  
Regenschirm, m., umbrella  
regieren, v. a. & n., to govern  
Regierung, f., government

regnen, v. n., to rain  
reich, adj., rich  
reichen, v. a., to hand  
reichlich, adj., abundant  
Reihe, f., row, series  
Reise, f., journey  
reisen, v. n., to travel, to go (travelling)  
reiten (strong), v. n., to ride (on horse-back)  
Reiter, m., horse-man  
repariren, v. a., to repair  
Republik, f., republic  
republikanisch, adj., republican  
Revolution, f., revolution (uprising)  
Rhein, m., Rhine  
Richter, m., judge  
richtigt, adj., correct  
Ring, m., ring  
Rock, m., coat  
roth, adj., red  
Ruhm, m., glory  
sich rühmen (w. gen.), to boast (of)  
Rußland, Russia

S.

Sache, f., thing  
säen, v. a. & n., to sow (scatter)  
sagen, v. a., to say, to tell  
\*Salz, n., salt  
Schaden, m., damage  
schaden, v. intr., to injure  
scharf, adj., sharp  
scheinen (strong), v. n., to shine, to seem  
schicken, v. a., to send  
\*Schicksal, n., fate  
Schieferdach, n., slate-roof  
Schiff, n., ship  
Schilbmache, f., sentinel  
Schindel, f., shingle  
Schinken, m., ham  
Schlacht, f., battle  
Schlachtfeld, n., field of battle  
schlafen (strong), v. n., to sleep  
schlagen (strong), v. a., to beat, to strike  
schlecht, bad

schließen (strong), v. a., to close  
 Schloß, n., (pl. Schlösser), castle  
 Schlüssel, m., key  
 Schmerz, m., pain  
 es schmerzt mich, I am grieved, sorry  
 Schnabel, m., beak  
 Schnee, m., snow  
 Schneewetter, n., snow-storm  
 schneiden (strong), v. a., to cut  
 Schneider, m., tailor  
 schneien, v. n., to snow  
 schon, adv., already  
 schön, adj., beautiful, fine  
 Schönheit, f., beauty  
 schrecklich, adj., terrible  
 schreiben (strong), v. n. & a., to write  
 \*Schuh, m., shoe  
 \*Schuhmacher, m., shoemaker  
 Schuld, f., debt, guilt  
 Schule, f., school  
 Schüler, m., scholar (pupil)  
 Schutz, m., shelter, protection  
 schwach, adj., weak  
 schwarz, adj., black  
 schwer, adj., heavy, difficult  
 Schwester, f., sister  
 schwindlig, adj., giddy  
 Schwindlucht, f., consumption  
 schwitzen, v. n., to sweat, to perspire  
 Sklave, m., slave  
 Seeräuber, m., pirate  
 sehen (strong), v. a. & n., to see  
 sehr, adv., very, very much  
 Seife, f., soap  
 sein, his, der seinige, his (without a  
     noun)  
 sein, v. n., to be  
 seit, prep., before, since, ago; conj.  
     since, ever since  
 \*Senat, m., senate  
 senden, (irr.) v. a., to send  
 Senf, m., mustard  
 sich setzen, to take a seat  
 Sicherheit, f., safety  
 Sieg, m., victory  
 Silber, n., silver

silbern, adj., silver, (adj.)  
 sitzen (strong), v. n., to sit  
 Sitzung, f., session, meeting  
 so, adv., so, thus  
 sogleich, adv., presently, directly, im-  
     mediately  
 Sohn, m., son  
 solcher, e, es, such  
 Soldat, m., soldier  
 Sommer, m., summer  
 sonderbar, adj., odd  
 sondern, but  
 Sonne, f., sun  
 Sonntag, m., sunday  
 Spanien, Spain  
 sparsam, adj., economical  
 spät, adj., late  
 spazieren fahren, to take a ride  
 spazieren gehen, to take a walk  
 Speise, f., food, eatable, (n.)  
 Spiegel, m., mirror, looking-glass  
 spielen, v. n., to play  
 Sprache, f., language  
 sprechen (strong), v. n., to speak  
 Stadt, f., city, town  
 städtisch, adj., city, (adj.)  
 Stahl, m., steel  
 stark, adj., strong  
 Stärke, f., strength  
 Station, f., station  
 Statue, f., statue  
 Staub, m., dust  
 Stelle, f., place  
 stellen, v. a., to place  
 Stellung, f., position  
 sterben (strong) v. n., to die  
 Stiefel, m., boot  
 Stoch, m., cane, stick  
 stören, v. a., to disturb  
 strafen, v. a., to punish  
 Straße, f., street  
 streng, adj., severe  
 Strumpf, m., stocking  
 Stück, n., piece  
 studiren, v. n., to study  
 Stuhl, m., chair



Stunde, f., hour  
 Styl, m., style  
 suchen, v. a., to seek, to look for  
 Summe, f., sum  
 Suppe, f., soup

**Z.**

Zabeln, v. a., to blame, to censure  
 \*Zag, m., day; acht Tage, a week  
 täglich, adj., daily  
 es tagt, the day breaks  
 Zante, f., aunt  
 Tapferkeit, f., valor, bravery  
 Taschentuch, n., pocket-handkerchief  
 Tasse, f., cup  
 täuschen, v. a., to deceive, to disap-  
   point  
 Telegraph, m., telegraph  
 Teller, m., plate  
 \*Thaler, m., dollar  
 Thauwetter, n., thaw  
 \*Theater, n., theatre  
 Thee, m., tea  
 Theil, m., part  
 theuer, adj., dear  
 Thier, n., animal, brute  
 thun (strong & irr.), v. a., to do  
 Thür(e), f., door, gate  
 Thurm, m., tower, steeple  
 tief, adj., deep  
 Tiger, m., tiger  
 Tinte, f., ink  
 Tisch, m., table  
 Tischler, m., joiner  
 Tochter, f., daughter  
 Tod, m., death  
 todt, adj., dead  
 tödten, v. a., to kill  
 tödtlich, adj., fatal  
 transportiren, v. a., to transport  
 traurig, sad; ich bin traurig, I am sad,  
   I am sorry, grieved  
 treffen (strong), v. a., to hit  
 sich trennen, to separate (from one  
   another)  
 treu, adj., faithful

trinken (strong), v. n. & a., to drink  
 trösten, v. a., to comfort, to console  
 Truppen, pl. troops  
 Tuch (pl. Tücher), n., cloth

**U.**

übel, adj., sick in the stomach  
 über, prep., over, above  
 überall, adv., everywhere  
 \*überhäufen, v. a., overwhelm  
 \*überraschen, v. a., to surprise  
 \*überseuden, (irr.), v. a., to send  
 \*übertragen (strong), v. a., to confer  
   (upon)  
 überzeugt, adj., convinced  
 Uhr, f., watch, clock  
 \*Uhrmacher, m., watchmaker  
 um, prep., around, about  
 \*umgeben (strong), v. a., to surround  
 umgehen (strong), v. n., to associate  
 Umlauf, m., revolution (turning round)  
 \*umringen, to surround (in a circle)  
 Umriß, m., sketch  
 unangenehm, adj., unpleasant  
 unartig, adj., naughty  
 unbedeutend, adj., inconsiderable  
 unbegründet, adj., unfounded  
 und, conj., and  
 Unfall, m., accident, misfortune  
 Unglück, n., misfortune  
 unglücklich, adj., unhappy, unfortunate  
 Unordnung, f., disorder  
 Unrecht, n., wrong  
 unrichtig, adj., incorrect  
 unser, our; der unsrige, ours  
 unter, prep., under, below, beneath  
 untergehen (strong), v. n., to set (of  
   the sun etc.)  
 \*sich unterhalten (strong), to converse  
 Unterhaltung, f., conversation  
 Unternehmung, f., enterprise  
 \*unterrichten, v. a., to instruct, to in-  
   form  
 Unterricht nehmen, to take lessons  
 \*unterstützen, v. a., to support  
 untreu, adj., faithless

unvorsichtig, adj., incautious  
unwahr, adj., untrue  
Unwissenheit, f., ignorance  
unwohl, adj., unwell  
unzulässig, adj., inadmissible  
Ursache, f., cause

### B.

Bater, m., father  
Baterland, n., one's own country,  
fatherland  
sich verbiegen, to bow (down)  
Verbrechen, n., crime  
Verdacht, m., suspicion  
verdienen, v. a., to deserve  
Verdienst, n., merit  
verdrücklich, vexed, irritated  
es verdrückt mich, I am vexed, irritated  
verdorren, v. n., to dry up  
verfolgen, v. a., to pursue  
vergeblich, adv., in vain  
vergessen (strong), v. a., to forget  
sich vergleichen (strong), to make a  
compromise  
vergnügt, adj., glad  
Vergnügen, n., pleasure  
vergrößern, v. a., to increase  
verhaften, v. a., to arrest  
verkaufen, v. a., to sell  
verkennen, v. a., to misjudge  
verlangen, v. a., to demand  
Verlangen, n., demand  
verlassen (strong), v. a., to leave, quit,  
desert  
verläumben, v. a., to slander  
verlesen (strong), v. a., to read  
verlegen, v. a., to hurt  
verlieren (strong), v. a., to lose  
vermieten, v. a., to rent  
Vermögen, n., property  
vermuthen, v. a., to presume  
vernichten, v. a., to annihilate  
verpflichten, v. a., to pledge  
verrathen (strong), v. a., to betray  
sich versammeln, to assemble (v. n.)  
versäumen, v. a., to miss

Verzahnung, f., entrenchment  
verschließen (strong), v. a., to lock  
verschönern, v. a., to embellish  
verschwinden (strong), v. n., to dis-  
appear  
versehen (strong), v. a., to provide  
versichern (v. a.), to assure  
versinken (strong), v. n., to sink  
versorgen, v. a., to supply  
versprechen (strong), v. a., to pro-  
mise  
Versprechen, n., } promise  
Versprechung, f., }  
Verstärkung, f., reinforcement  
versehen (strong), v. a., to un-  
derstand  
\*Versuch, m., attempt  
versuchen, v. a., to attempt, to endeav-  
or, to try  
verteidigen, v. a., to defend  
vertreten (strong), v. a., to represent  
verursachen, v. a., to cause  
verurtheilen, v. a., to condemn  
Verurtheilung, f., condemnation  
verwalten, v. a., to manage, to ad-  
minister  
Verwaltung, f., administration  
verwickeln, v. a., to implicate  
verwunden, v. a., to wound  
Vetter, m., cousin (male)  
Vieh, n., cattle  
viel, much; viele, many  
vielleicht, perhaps  
vier, four; viermal, four times; viertel,  
a quarter; der vierte, the fourth  
Vogel, m., bird  
Volk, n., the people (nation)  
voll, adj., full  
vollenden, v. a., to finish  
völlig, adv., fully  
von, prep., of, from, by  
vor, prep., before, ago  
vorbereiten, v. a., to prepare  
vorladen (strong), v. a., to summon  
vorlegen, v. a., to submit (place be-  
fore)

Vorlesung, f., lecture  
 Vorrath, m., stock  
 Vorschlag, m., proposition  
 vorsichtig, adj., cautious  
 der Vorsitzende, chairman  
 vorübergehen (strong), v. n., to pass  
 vorziehen (strong), v. a., to prefer

### 23.

Wachsam, adj., watchful  
 wachsen (strong), v. n., to grow  
 Wagen, m., carriage  
 (sich) wagen, to venture  
 Wahl, f., election, choice  
 wählen, v. a., to elect, to choose  
 Wähler, m., voter  
 wähnen, v. a., to suppose (wrongly)  
 wahr, adj., true  
 während, prep., during; conj. while  
 Wahrheit, f., truth  
 Wald (pl. Wälder), m., forest  
 Wall, m., rampart  
 Wand, f., wall (inside)  
 wann, interrog. adv., when?  
 warm, adj., warm  
 wärmen, v. a., to warm  
 warten, v. a., to wait  
 warum, adv., why  
 was, pron., what  
 \*Wasser, n., water  
 Wechsel, m., note (bill of exchange)  
 Weg, m., way, road  
 wegen, prep., on account of  
 sich weigern, to refuse (v. n.)  
 weil, conj., because  
 Wein, m., wine  
 Weingarten, m., vine-yard  
 weiß, adj., white  
 weise, adj., wise  
 Weisheit, f., wisdom  
 weit, adj., far  
 welcher, which, who, that  
 wenig, little, few; weniger, less (fewer)  
 wer, interr. pron., who?  
 Wetter, n., weather

wie, interr. adv., how? der wie vielte,  
 what day of the month, what (in  
 order)?

\*widerfahren (strong), v. intr., to  
 befall

\*sich widersehen, to resist, to oppose  
 wieder, adv., again

wiedersehen (strong), v. a., to see  
 again

wissen, irr. v. a., to know

wo, where

Woche, f., week

wohl, adv., well

wohlfeil, adj., cheap

wohnen, v. n., to dwell, to live,  
 reside

Wohnung, f., residence

\*Wort (pl. either Worte or Wörter),  
 n., word

Wundarzt, m., surgeon

Wunde, f., wound

sich wundern, to wonder

Wunsch, m., wish, desire

wünschen, v. a., to wish, to desire

Wurm, m. (pl. Würmer), worm

### 3.

Zahl, f., number

zahlen, v. a. & n., to pay

zählen, v. a., to number

Zahn, m., tooth

zeichnen, v. a. & n., to draw (make a  
 draft)

Zeit, f., time

Zeitung, f., newspaper

zerstören, v. a., to destroy

Zimmer, n., room

Zimmermann, m., carpenter

Zoll, m., inch

der Zollbeamte, the custom-house-  
 officer

zu, prep., to; adv. too

Zucker, m., sugar

zufällig, adj., accidental

zufrieden, adj., contented, satisfied,  
pleased

Zufuhr, f., supply, provisions

zugeben (strong), v. a., to concede

zuhören, v. a., to listen to

zumachen, v. a., to shut

zurück, adv., back

zurückkehren, v. n., to return

zurücklassen (strong), to leave behind

zurückreisen, v. n., to go (travel),  
back

zurückschicken, v. a., to send back

sich zurückziehen (strong), to with-  
draw, to retreat

zusammen, adv., together

zustellen, v. a., to deliver

Zustimmung, f., approbation, consent

Zweck, m., purpose

zwei, two; der zweite, the second

zweifelhaft, adj., doubtful

zweifeln, v. n., to doubt

zweimal, twice

## READING EXERCISES.

*Read* The words not suggested in the Notes are found in the Vocabulary.

### 1. Die Aeste. (The Axes.)

Die Art<sup>1</sup> eines armen Zimmermanns war<sup>2</sup> in einen Strom<sup>3</sup> gefallen<sup>4</sup>. Er flehte<sup>5</sup> den Flußgott<sup>6</sup> an<sup>7</sup>, sie ihm wieder zu bringen<sup>8</sup>. Da<sup>9</sup> stieg<sup>10</sup> der Gott auf<sup>11</sup> und brachte<sup>12</sup> eine goldene Art<sup>13</sup> herauf<sup>14</sup>. „Das ist die meinige nicht,“ sprach<sup>15</sup> der Zimmermann. Der Flußgott tauchte<sup>16</sup> in die Tiefe<sup>17</sup>, und kam<sup>18</sup> mit einer silbernen Art<sup>19</sup> wieder hervor<sup>20</sup>. „Auch<sup>21</sup> diese gehört mir nicht<sup>22</sup>,“ sagte der Arme<sup>23</sup>. Und wieder versank<sup>24</sup> der Gott, und brachte eine Art<sup>25</sup> von Eisen mit hölzernem<sup>26</sup> Stiele<sup>27</sup> aus der Tiefe. „Das ist die meine,“ rief<sup>28</sup> froh<sup>29</sup> der Zimmermann aus<sup>30</sup>. „Ich sehe, du bist zwar<sup>31</sup> arm, aber wahrhaft<sup>32</sup> und ehrlich<sup>33</sup>,“ versetzte<sup>34</sup> der Gott. „Nimm<sup>35</sup> alle drei Aeste zur<sup>36</sup> Belohnung<sup>37</sup>!“ Ein unehrlicher<sup>38</sup> Mensch, der von diesem Vorfalle<sup>39</sup> gehört hatte, wollte<sup>40</sup> versuchen, ob das<sup>41</sup> Glück ihn ebenso<sup>42</sup> begünstigen werde<sup>43</sup>, und ließ<sup>44</sup> seine Art<sup>45</sup> vorsätzlich<sup>46</sup> in den Fluß fallen. Er sah in der That<sup>47</sup> den Flußgott aufsteigen, nachdem<sup>48</sup> er ihn angefleht hatte, ihm die Art<sup>49</sup> wieder zu bringen. Der Gott hielt<sup>50</sup> eine goldene Art<sup>51</sup> in der Hand und fragte ihn, ob es die seinige sei. „Ja, das ist die meinige,“ rief der Betrüger<sup>52</sup> entzückt<sup>53</sup> aus, seine Hand ausstreckend<sup>54</sup>. „Nichtswürdiger<sup>55</sup>!“ rief der Gott mit zorniger<sup>56</sup> Stimme<sup>57</sup>. „Glaubst du, du könntest<sup>58</sup> denjenigen täuschen, der in dein innerstes<sup>59</sup> Herz<sup>60</sup> blickt<sup>61</sup>? Zur Strafe<sup>62</sup> sollst<sup>63</sup> du nun<sup>64</sup> auch<sup>65</sup> dasjenige<sup>66</sup> verlieren, was<sup>67</sup> bisher<sup>68</sup> dein Eigenthum<sup>69</sup> war<sup>70</sup>.“

<sup>1</sup>axe. <sup>2</sup>river. <sup>3</sup>pluperf. of fallen, I, 99, a. <sup>4</sup>to implore, I, 68. <sup>5</sup>river-god. <sup>6</sup>to return, bring back. <sup>7</sup>redundant, II, 72. <sup>8</sup>imp. of aufsteigen, to arise. <sup>9</sup>herausbringen, to bring up I, 99, 4. <sup>10</sup>imperf. of sprechen. <sup>11</sup>to dive, to go down. <sup>12</sup>the deep. <sup>13</sup>hervorkommen, to come up. <sup>14</sup>auch—nicht, neither, nor. <sup>15</sup>II, 77, 1. <sup>16</sup>imperf. of versinken. <sup>17</sup>wooden. <sup>18</sup>handle. <sup>19</sup>ausrufen, to exclaim. <sup>20</sup>I, 72, 4; II, 68. <sup>21</sup>redundant, if sentences with aber follow. <sup>22</sup>truthful. <sup>23</sup>honest. <sup>24</sup>to reply. <sup>25</sup>imperat. of nehmen, to take. <sup>26</sup>instead of zu ber, for a, as a. <sup>27</sup>reward. <sup>28</sup>dishonest. <sup>29</sup>incident. <sup>30</sup>I, 58, 3. <sup>31</sup>II, 74 § 99. <sup>32</sup>in the same manner, II, 72, 4. <sup>33</sup>future subjunctive (of indirect statement II, 87, 2, note) of begünstigen, to favor. See II, 39, note. <sup>34</sup>imperf. of lassen, to let. <sup>35</sup>on purpose. <sup>36</sup>indeed. <sup>37</sup>after, conjunction. <sup>38</sup>imperf. of halten. <sup>39</sup>impostor. <sup>40</sup>with delight, delighted. <sup>41</sup>to stretch out. <sup>42</sup>wretch, miscreant. <sup>43</sup>sangry. <sup>44</sup>voice. <sup>45</sup>I, 49, 62; II, 88, note. <sup>46</sup>inmost. <sup>47</sup>heart. <sup>48</sup>to look. <sup>49</sup>for your punishment. <sup>50</sup>shall. <sup>51</sup>now. <sup>52</sup>even. <sup>53</sup>I, 27, Obs. <sup>54</sup>till now, hitherto. <sup>55</sup>your own. <sup>56</sup>I, 47.

## 2. Ein braver Bauer. (A noble Peasant.)

Bei einer Ueberschwemmung<sup>2</sup> der Etsch<sup>3</sup> wurde<sup>4</sup> die Brücke<sup>5</sup> von Verona durch die Gewalt der Flut<sup>6</sup> hinweggerissen<sup>7</sup>. Aber noch<sup>8</sup> stand<sup>9</sup> einer<sup>10</sup> der mittleren<sup>11</sup> Bögen<sup>12</sup>, auf dem<sup>13</sup> sich<sup>14</sup> ein Haus befand<sup>15</sup>, welches von<sup>16</sup> dem Zolleinnehmer<sup>17</sup> mit seiner Familie<sup>18</sup> bewohnt wurde<sup>19</sup>. Das am<sup>20</sup> Ufer<sup>21</sup> versammelte<sup>22</sup> Volk konnte<sup>23</sup> deutlich<sup>24</sup> das Hilfesgeschrei<sup>25</sup> der unglücklichen<sup>26</sup> Familie hören. Der Graf von Spolverini, der sich mitten im<sup>27</sup> Gedränge<sup>28</sup> befand, versprach<sup>29</sup> demjenigen, der die arme Familie mittelst<sup>30</sup> eines Bootes vom sichern<sup>31</sup> Untergange<sup>32</sup> erretten<sup>33</sup> würde<sup>34</sup>, eine Belohnung<sup>35</sup> von 500 Thalern. Aber es<sup>36</sup> fand sich Niemand<sup>37</sup>, der Muth genug<sup>38</sup> gehabt hätte<sup>39</sup>, sein Leben dem wüthenden<sup>40</sup> Strome<sup>41</sup> anzuvertrauen<sup>42</sup>. Da<sup>43</sup> kam<sup>44</sup> ein junger Bauer<sup>45</sup> herbei<sup>46</sup>, dem die kritische<sup>47</sup> Lage<sup>48</sup> des Zolleinnehmers und seiner Familie von den Umstehenden<sup>49</sup> mitgetheilt wurde. Ohne Zeitverlust<sup>50</sup> sprang<sup>51</sup> er in einen Rahn<sup>52</sup>, und mit großer Anstrengung gelang es ihm<sup>53</sup>, das Haus zu erreichen. Er warf<sup>54</sup> den Bewohnern<sup>55</sup> ein Seil<sup>56</sup> zu<sup>57</sup>, mittelst dessen<sup>58</sup> sie sich<sup>59</sup> in den Rahn herabließen<sup>60</sup>. Hierauf<sup>61</sup> brachte<sup>62</sup> er, nach einem muthigen<sup>63</sup> Kampfe<sup>64</sup> mit den Elementen<sup>65</sup>, die Familie unbeschädigt<sup>66</sup> an<sup>67</sup> das sichere<sup>68</sup> Ufer. Als nun<sup>69</sup> der Graf ihm die Belohnung einhändigen wollte<sup>70</sup>, die er so wohl verdient<sup>71</sup> hatte, weigerte er sich, sie anzunehmen, und sagte: „Ich verkaufe mein Leben nicht<sup>72</sup>, noch<sup>73</sup> bedarf<sup>74</sup> ich Eures Geldes, da meiner Hände Arbeit mich und die Meinigen<sup>75</sup> ernährt. Gebt Alles der armen Familie, die Gott durch mich gerettet hat, und die aller ihrer Habe<sup>76</sup> beraubt ist<sup>77</sup>.“

<sup>1</sup>during. <sup>2</sup>inundation. <sup>3</sup>Adige. <sup>4</sup>pass. imperf. of hinwegreißen, to carry away. <sup>5</sup>bridge. <sup>6</sup>current. <sup>7</sup>still. <sup>8</sup>imperf. of stehen, to stand (*was left*). <sup>9</sup>I, 48; II, 26. <sup>10</sup>middle. <sup>11</sup>arch. <sup>12</sup>I, 25. <sup>13</sup>sich befinden, to be, to stand. <sup>14</sup>I, 74, Obs. 8. <sup>15</sup>toll-gatherer. <sup>16</sup>family. <sup>17</sup>to inhabit. <sup>18</sup>I, 93. <sup>19</sup>shore. <sup>20</sup>to gather, (past part.) See I, 105, Obs. 3. <sup>21</sup>I, 58, 3. <sup>22</sup>distinctly. <sup>23</sup>shrieks for help. <sup>24</sup>distressed. <sup>25</sup>in the midst of, among. <sup>26</sup>crowd. <sup>27</sup>imperf. of versprechen. <sup>28</sup>by means of. <sup>29</sup>sure. <sup>30</sup>destruction. <sup>31</sup>to save. <sup>32</sup>conditional, with the force of a subjunctive of indirect statement. See II, 87 note 4; II, 88 note 6. <sup>33</sup>reward. <sup>34</sup>redundant, I, 87, Obs. 1. <sup>35</sup>I, 23. <sup>36</sup>enough. <sup>37</sup>II, 89, 6. <sup>38</sup>fierce. <sup>39</sup>current. <sup>40</sup>entrust, see II, 60, 2. <sup>41</sup>adverb of time, at *this moment*, II, 72, 2. <sup>42</sup>herbeikommen, to come along. <sup>43</sup>peasant. <sup>44</sup>critical. <sup>45</sup>situation. <sup>46</sup>bystander, spectator. <sup>47</sup>loss of time. <sup>48</sup>imperf. of springen, to jump. <sup>49</sup>boat, skiff. <sup>50</sup>imperf. of gelingen, to succeed in; in German used impersonally (it succeeded to him). <sup>51</sup>imperf. of werfen, to throw (something to somebody). <sup>52</sup>inhabitant. <sup>53</sup>rope. <sup>54</sup>genitive of the relative *der*, see II, 16, Rem. 2; II, 61. <sup>55</sup>imperf. of sich herablassen, to let one's self down, to descend, see I, 99, 4. <sup>56</sup>then, afterwards, thereupon. <sup>57</sup>imperf. of bringen, to bring, convey, I, 58. <sup>58</sup>vigorous. <sup>59</sup>struggle. <sup>60</sup>das Element, the element. <sup>61</sup>unharmed. <sup>62</sup>I, 93, Obs. 1.

2. 4. <sup>63</sup>secure. <sup>64</sup>redundant. <sup>65</sup>einbändigen wollen, to be about to hand, i. e. to tender. <sup>66</sup>to earn. <sup>67</sup>I, 19, Obs. 3. <sup>68</sup>nor. <sup>69</sup>pres. of bedürfen (I, 107), to be in need, construed with the genitive, II, 78, a. <sup>70</sup>my family, II, 25, 3. <sup>71</sup>property. <sup>72</sup>pres. pass. of berauben, to deprive. See II, 51, § 75.

### 3. Ein österreichischer Bauer. (An Austrian Peasant.)

Als die Franzosen im Jahre 1809 auf Wien<sup>1</sup> vorrückten<sup>2</sup>, marschirte<sup>3</sup> eines Abends<sup>4</sup> der Vortrab<sup>5</sup> einer französischen Truppenabtheilung<sup>6</sup> durch ein an der Heerstraße<sup>7</sup> belegenes österreichisches Dorf. Der Befehlshaber<sup>8</sup>, der beabsichtigte, während der Nacht einen wichtigen<sup>9</sup> Plan<sup>10</sup> gegen den Feind auszuführen, forderte<sup>11</sup> einen Bauer auf<sup>12</sup>, der Abtheilung<sup>13</sup> als Wegweiser<sup>14</sup> zu dienen<sup>15</sup>. Aber der Bauer lehnte<sup>16</sup> es<sup>17</sup> ab<sup>18</sup>, sich<sup>19</sup> zu einem solchen Amte<sup>20</sup> herzugeben<sup>21</sup>. Als der Officier seine Aufforderung<sup>22</sup> dringender<sup>23</sup> wiederholte<sup>24</sup>, beharrte<sup>25</sup> der Bauer entschieden<sup>26</sup> auf seiner Weigerung<sup>27</sup>. Der Officier bestürmte<sup>28</sup> ihn mit Versprechungen und bot<sup>29</sup> ihm zuletzt<sup>30</sup> einen schweren Beutel<sup>31</sup> Goldes als Belohnung<sup>32</sup>. Aber Alles war vergeblich. Inzwischen<sup>33</sup> kam diejenige Truppenabtheilung an, zu welcher der Vortrab gehörte, und der General war äußerst aufgebracht<sup>34</sup>, daß die Truppen sich<sup>35</sup> nicht schon<sup>36</sup> lange auf dem Marsche befänden<sup>37</sup>. Als er erfuhr<sup>38</sup>, daß der einzige, des Weges kundige<sup>39</sup> Mann sich nicht bewegen<sup>40</sup> lasse<sup>41</sup>, als Wegweiser zu dienen, befahl er, den Bauer vorzuführen<sup>42</sup>. „Entweder<sup>43</sup>,“ rief<sup>44</sup> er ihm zu<sup>45</sup>, „zeigst<sup>46</sup> du uns den rechten Weg, oder ich lasse<sup>47</sup> dich erschießen<sup>48</sup>!“ — „Sehr wohl!“ erwiderte<sup>49</sup> der Bauer, „in diesem Falle werde ich als rechtschaffener<sup>50</sup> Bürger<sup>51</sup> sterben und brauche nicht Landesverräther<sup>52</sup> zu werden.“ Diese Festigkeit<sup>53</sup> erfüllte<sup>54</sup> den General mit Bewunderung<sup>55</sup>. Die Hand des Mannes ergreifend<sup>56</sup>, sprach er: „Gehe heim<sup>57</sup>, wackerer<sup>58</sup> Mann! Ich werde wohl<sup>59</sup> zusehen<sup>60</sup> müssen, wie ich<sup>61</sup> ohne Führer<sup>62</sup> auskommen<sup>63</sup> kann<sup>64</sup>.“

<sup>1</sup>Vienna. <sup>2</sup>to advance. <sup>3</sup>to march. <sup>4</sup>evening, II, 79, a. <sup>5</sup>advanced guard. <sup>6</sup>force. <sup>7</sup>an der Heerstraße belegen, on the road-side. <sup>8</sup>commander. <sup>9</sup>important. <sup>10</sup>plan. <sup>11</sup>to order. <sup>12</sup>detachment. <sup>13</sup>guide. <sup>14</sup>to serve. <sup>15</sup>to decline. <sup>16</sup>redundant. <sup>17</sup>to lend himself. <sup>18</sup>office. <sup>19</sup>request. <sup>20</sup>bringing, urgent, II, 69, Rem. 2. <sup>21</sup>to repeat. <sup>22</sup>to persist. <sup>23</sup>positively. <sup>24</sup>refusal. <sup>25</sup>to overwhelm. <sup>26</sup>imperf. of bieten, to offer. <sup>27</sup>at last. <sup>28</sup>purse. <sup>29</sup>reward. <sup>30</sup>meanwhile. <sup>31</sup>irritated, angry. <sup>32</sup>to be. <sup>33</sup>redundant. <sup>34</sup>imperf. of erfahren, to learn. <sup>35</sup>lunbig, with genitive, acquainted with. <sup>36</sup>to induce. See II, 81 § 103, b. <sup>37</sup>subjunctive of indirect statement, II, 37. <sup>38</sup>to bring up. <sup>39</sup>either. <sup>40</sup>imperf. of rufen (he said to him). <sup>41</sup>to show. <sup>42</sup>to have. <sup>43</sup>to shoot (II, 81, c). <sup>44</sup>to reply. <sup>45</sup>honest. <sup>46</sup>citizen. <sup>47</sup>traitor. <sup>48</sup>firmness. <sup>49</sup>to fill. <sup>50</sup>admiration. <sup>51</sup>to seize. <sup>52</sup>home. <sup>53</sup>brave, excellent. <sup>54</sup>redundant. <sup>55</sup>to look out. <sup>56</sup>the auxiliary *ich* kann is here used redundantly, a construction with the infinitive being employed in English. <sup>57</sup>guide. <sup>58</sup>to get along, to do.

#### 4. Herzog Alba in Rudolstadt. (Duke Alba in Rudolstadt.)

Als Kaiser Karl der Fünfte im Jahre 1547 auf seinem Marsch nach Franken durch Thüringen kam, erlangte die vermittelte Gräfin Catharina von Schwarzburg-Rudolstadt vom Kaiser einen Schutzbrief für ihre Unterthanen. Als bald darauf der kaiserliche General, Herzog von Alba, mit seinen spanischen Truppen sich der Stadt Rudolstadt näherte, bat er sich bei der Gräfin auf ein Frühstück zu Gast. Eine so bescheidene Bitte, an der Spitze eines Heeres gethan, konnte nicht wohl abge schlagen werden. Ein freundlicher Empfang und eine gut besetzte Tafel erwartete den Herzog auf dem Schlosse. Kaum hatte man sich gesetzt, als ein Eilbote die Gräfin aus dem Speisesaale rief. Es ward ihr gemeldet, daß spanische Soldaten in einigen Dörfern Gewaltthatigkeiten verübt und den Bauern das Vieh weggetrieben hätten. Catharina, aufs äußerste entrüstet, befahl ihrer ganzen Dienerschaft, sich schleunigst und insgeheim zu bewaffnen und die Schloßpforten zu verschließen. Als sie nach dem Speisesaale zurückgekehrt war, beklagte sie sich über das, was sich zugetragen, und darüber, daß man keine Rücksicht auf den kaiserlichen Schutzbrief genommen habe. Der Herzog erwiderte lachend, daß dies Kriegsgebrauch sei, und daß dergleichen kleine Unfälle auf dem Marsche unvermeidlich wären. „Das wollen wir sehen,“ antwortete die Gräfin und verließ das Zimmer, das sich in wenigen Augenblicken mit Bewaffneten füllte, die sich mit gezogenen Schwertern ehrerbietigst hinter den Stühlen der Gäste aufstellten. Der Herzog veränderte die Farbe. Abgeschnitten von der Armee, blieb ihm nichts übrig, als die beleidigte Dame, auf welche Bedingungen es auch sei, zu versöhnen. Heinrich von Braunschweig, einer der Begleiter des Herzogs, faßte sich zuerst und brach in ein lautes Gelächter aus. Er ergriff den vernünftigen Ausweg, den ganzen Vorgang ins Lächerliche zu ziehen, indem er der Gräfin über ihre Sorgfalt für ihre Unterthanen eine Lobrede hielt. Zuletzt vermochte er den Herzog, auf der Stelle den Befehl zu geben, daß gestohlene Vieh den Eigenthümern zurückzustellen. Sobald die Gräfin sich überzeugt hatte, daß der Befehl ausgeführt werden würde, dankte sie ihren Gästen aufs verbindlichste, und die letzteren verabschiedeten sich mit großer Höflichkeit.

<sup>1</sup>Franconia. <sup>2</sup>Thuringia. <sup>3</sup>imperf. of *kommen*, to come, to pass. <sup>4</sup>to obtain.



<sup>5</sup>widowed. <sup>6</sup>letters of protection. <sup>7</sup>subject (weak decl.). <sup>8</sup>later. <sup>9</sup>imperial.  
<sup>10</sup>duke. <sup>11</sup>Spanish. <sup>12</sup>ſich zu Gaſt bitten, to invite one's self. <sup>13</sup>at the residence.  
<sup>14</sup>lunch. <sup>15</sup>modest. <sup>16</sup>request. <sup>17</sup>at the head. <sup>18</sup>made. <sup>19</sup>to refuse. <sup>20</sup>cordial  
<sup>21</sup>reception. <sup>22</sup>furnished. <sup>23</sup>table. <sup>24</sup>to await. <sup>25</sup>scarcely. <sup>26</sup>I, 64, Obs. <sup>27</sup>express  
messenger. <sup>28</sup>dining hall. <sup>29</sup>imperf. of rufen, to call. <sup>30</sup>I, 77, foot-note. <sup>31</sup>to  
report. <sup>32</sup>acts of violence. <sup>33</sup>to commit. <sup>34</sup>dative after verbs of taking away, II,  
73, b; to be translated as if a genitive dependent on ſieſ. <sup>35</sup>cattle. <sup>36</sup>hinwegtreiben,  
to carry away. <sup>37</sup>extremely. <sup>38</sup>provoked. <sup>39</sup>body of servants. <sup>40</sup>rapidly. <sup>41</sup>in secret.  
<sup>42</sup>to arm. <sup>43</sup>gates of the castle. <sup>44</sup>to complain. <sup>45</sup>of. <sup>46</sup>I, 26, 27. <sup>47</sup>to transpire. Supply  
the auxiliary hatte. <sup>48</sup>of the fact that. <sup>49</sup>Rückſicht nehmen auf, to pay regard to. <sup>50</sup>sub-  
junct. of indirect statement, II, 88, 6, b (foot-note). <sup>51</sup>to reply. <sup>52</sup>to laugh. <sup>53</sup>usa-  
ge of war. <sup>54</sup>II, 88, 6, a (foot-note). <sup>55</sup>such. <sup>56</sup>petty annoyances. <sup>57</sup>unavoidable.  
<sup>58</sup>imperf. of verlaſſen. <sup>59</sup>moments (masc). <sup>60</sup>armed men II, 77, § 101, 1. <sup>61</sup>to fill, I,  
83, Obs. I; II, 81, a. <sup>62</sup>drawn swords. <sup>63</sup>most respectfully. <sup>64</sup>behind. <sup>65</sup>to arrange,  
draw up. <sup>66</sup>change. <sup>67</sup>color. <sup>68</sup>past part. of abſchneiden. <sup>69</sup>was left. <sup>70</sup>II, 66, 5.  
<sup>71</sup>whatsoever, II, 67, a; 89, 7. <sup>72</sup>to reconcile. <sup>73</sup>companion. <sup>74</sup>to compose one's  
self. <sup>75</sup>first. <sup>76</sup>imperf. of ausbrechen, to burst (out). <sup>77</sup>redundant. <sup>78</sup>loud. <sup>79</sup>laughter.  
<sup>80</sup>resorted to. <sup>81</sup>sensible. <sup>82</sup>expedient. <sup>83</sup>incident. <sup>84</sup>to turn into ridicule. <sup>85</sup>par-  
ticipial construction in English. <sup>86</sup>solicitude. <sup>87</sup>to eulogize. <sup>88</sup>at last. <sup>89</sup>vermögen,  
to induce, I, 108; II, 56. <sup>90</sup>on the spot. <sup>91</sup>order. <sup>92</sup>to return, to restore. <sup>93</sup>as  
soon as, II, 66, 4. <sup>94</sup>überzeugen, to convince, to satisfy. <sup>95</sup>in the most obliging  
manner, II, 69, c. <sup>96</sup>latter. <sup>97</sup>to take leave. <sup>98</sup>politeness, courtesy.

## 5. Der Edelknabe. (The Page.)

Ein Edelknabe hatte im Vorzimmer<sup>1</sup> Friedrich des Großen die  
Nachtwache<sup>2</sup>. Der König, der nicht ſchlafen konnte, klingelte<sup>3</sup>, und  
ging<sup>4</sup>, da der Knabe nicht erſchien<sup>5</sup>, ſelbſt<sup>6</sup> ins Vorzimmer. Er fand<sup>7</sup>  
den Jüngling<sup>8</sup> in tiefem Schlafe<sup>9</sup> vor einem Tiſche ſitzend, auf wel-  
chem ein angefangener Brief lag<sup>10</sup>. Der König nahm<sup>11</sup> den Brief, der  
alſo<sup>12</sup> lautete<sup>13</sup>: „Liebe Mutter! Dies iſt nun<sup>14</sup> ſchon<sup>15</sup> die dritte  
Nacht, daß ich für die anderen Edelknaben die Nachtwache thue; aber  
ich kann das Wachen<sup>16</sup> beinahe<sup>17</sup> nicht<sup>18</sup> mehr<sup>19</sup> aushalten<sup>20</sup>. Indessen<sup>21</sup>  
habe ich hierdurch<sup>22</sup> ſeit drei Wochen zehn Thaler verdient<sup>23</sup>, welche ich  
dir<sup>24</sup> zur<sup>25</sup> Erquickung<sup>26</sup> in deiner traurigen<sup>27</sup> Lage<sup>28</sup> ſende —.“ Dieſe  
kindliche<sup>29</sup> Liebe<sup>30</sup> gefiel<sup>31</sup> dem König, und er ſteckte<sup>32</sup> dem<sup>33</sup> Knaben eine  
Rolle<sup>34</sup> Goldſtücke<sup>35</sup> in die Taſche<sup>36</sup>. Dieſer<sup>37</sup> errieth<sup>38</sup> bei<sup>39</sup> ſeinem Er-  
wachen<sup>40</sup> ſogleich, woher<sup>41</sup> das Geld gekommen ſei<sup>42</sup>. Er warf<sup>43</sup> ſich dem<sup>44</sup>  
König, ſobald<sup>45</sup> dieſer am nächſten Morgen aufgeſtanden war<sup>46</sup>, zu Fü-  
ßen<sup>47</sup>, und bat<sup>48</sup> wegen ſeiner Nachläſſigkeit um Verzeihung<sup>49</sup>. Der Kö-  
nig aber pries<sup>50</sup> die kindliche Liebe ſeines Edelknaben, und beobachtete<sup>51</sup>  
ihn von da an<sup>52</sup> näher<sup>53</sup>, wodurch<sup>54</sup> die gute Meinung<sup>55</sup>, die er von ihm  
hegte<sup>56</sup>, vollkommen<sup>57</sup> beſtätigt wurde. Dieſer Knabe ward in ſeinen ſpä-  
teren Lebensjahren<sup>58</sup> durch das Vertrauen<sup>59</sup> ſeines Monarchen<sup>60</sup> zu einer  
der höchſten<sup>61</sup> und verantwortlichſten<sup>62</sup> Stellungen im Staate<sup>63</sup> berufen<sup>64</sup>.

<sup>1</sup>antichamber. <sup>2</sup>night-watch. <sup>3</sup>to ring the bell. <sup>4</sup>imperf. of *gehen*. <sup>5</sup>imperf. of *erscheinen*, to appear. <sup>6</sup>I, 83, Obs. 2. <sup>7</sup>imperf. of *finden*. <sup>8</sup>lad, youth. <sup>9</sup>asleep. <sup>10</sup>imperf. of *liegen*. <sup>11</sup>imperf. of *nehmen*, to take. <sup>12</sup>as follows. <sup>13</sup>to read (v. n.). <sup>14</sup>redundant. <sup>15</sup>watching. <sup>16</sup>hardly any longer. <sup>17</sup>to endure. <sup>18</sup>however. <sup>19</sup>by it (this), II, 72, 2. <sup>20</sup>to earn. <sup>21</sup>for your relief. <sup>22</sup>distress. <sup>23</sup>filial. <sup>24</sup>love, tenderness. <sup>25</sup>imperf. of *gefallen*. <sup>26</sup>to put. <sup>27</sup>possessive dative, II, 80, b, a. <sup>28</sup>roll. <sup>29</sup>goldpieces, I, 88. <sup>30</sup>pocket. <sup>31</sup>the latter (this one), II, 77, 1. <sup>32</sup>imperf. of *errathen*, to guess. <sup>33</sup>II, 62 Rem. 2, 3): *when he awoke* (at his awakening). <sup>34</sup>whence. <sup>35</sup>II, 87, 2 (foot-note). <sup>36</sup>imp. of *werfen*, to throw. <sup>37</sup>possessive dative. <sup>38</sup>as soon as. <sup>39</sup>pluperf. of *aufstehen*. <sup>40</sup>to be connected with *wasf sich*. <sup>41</sup>imperf. of *bitten*; *um Verzeihung bitten*, to ask pardon. <sup>42</sup>imperf. of *preisen*, to praise, to commend. <sup>43</sup>to observe. <sup>44</sup>von da an, since that time. <sup>45</sup>more closely. <sup>46</sup>whereby. <sup>47</sup>opinion. <sup>48</sup>held, had. <sup>49</sup>fully. <sup>50</sup>life, years of life. <sup>51</sup>confidence. <sup>52</sup>monarch (weak decl., II, 5, § 11, 3). <sup>53</sup>I, 22. <sup>54</sup>verantwortlich, responsible. <sup>55</sup>state. <sup>56</sup>berufen, to call.

## 6. Höflichkeit. (Civility.)

In der Nähe eines italiänischen Dorfs lebte ein Bauer, der einen Sohn, Namens Felix, hatte. Durch die Armuth seiner Eltern war dieser Knabe genöthigt, seinen Unterhalt durch Schweinehüten zu verdienen. Felix war immer zuvorkommend und höflich gegen Jedermann; die andern Knaben im Dorfe aber waren unfreundlich und roh. Eines Tages kam ein Mönch, der einen Wegweiser begehrt, ins Dorf. Während die andern Knaben denselben mit Rohheit behandelten, erbot sich Felix aufs freundlichste zum Wegweiser. Auf dem Wege bemerkte der Mönch, daß Felix Talent hatte, und es gelang ihm später, dem Knaben Aufnahme in sein Kloster zu verschaffen. Hier studirte Felix aufs fleißigste, und, obwohl er bald einer der gelehrtesten von allen Mönchen wurde, blieb er dennoch demüthig, höflich und zuvorkommend. Diese Eigenschaften machten ihn Allen, die ihn kannten, lieb und werth, und so kam es, daß er bald zu hohen Stellungen befördert ward. Er wurde Bischof, Cardinal, und, als der Papst starb, ward er am 24. April 1585 einstimmig zum Papst erwählt. Er regierte unter dem Namen Sixtus der Fünfte, und es ist bekannt, daß er zu den größten aller Päpste gehörte.

<sup>1</sup>near. <sup>2</sup>Italian. <sup>3</sup>by name. <sup>4</sup>poverty. <sup>5</sup>imperf. pass. of *nöthigen*, to compel. See I, 77, Obs. 2. <sup>6</sup>to earn his living. <sup>7</sup>by tending a herd of swine. I, 105. <sup>8</sup>obliging. <sup>9</sup>impolite. <sup>10</sup>rude. <sup>11</sup>one day, II, 5, a. <sup>12</sup>monk. <sup>13</sup>guide. <sup>14</sup>to ask for. <sup>15</sup>herself has often the force of *he*. <sup>16</sup>rudeness. <sup>17</sup>imperf. of *erbieten*. <sup>18</sup>in the gentlest manner. <sup>19</sup>he succeeded in. <sup>20</sup>admission. <sup>21</sup>convent. <sup>22</sup>to procure, to obtain. <sup>23</sup>I, 102. <sup>24</sup>imperf. of *bleiben*. <sup>25</sup>I, 102, Obs. 2. <sup>26</sup>humble. <sup>27</sup>lieb und werth machen, to endear. <sup>28</sup>I, 58, Obs. 2. <sup>29</sup>to promote. <sup>30</sup>bishop (II, 74, 75, § 99, 3). <sup>31</sup>pope. <sup>32</sup>imperf. of *sterben*. <sup>33</sup>unanimously. <sup>34</sup>to elect, to choose, II, 73, 1.

Where a compound verb has two forms, separable and inseparable, the inseparable form is figurative.

~~Über~~setzen To carry across

Übersetzen To translate (from one language into another)

soft e in last syllable the plural takes no ending Ex Segel

www.siege.de

Other Modifying parts  
Indefinite adverbs of time  
Preced all other adverbs & objects  
except personal pronouns  
& relative proposition

Ich habe den Koffer  
gesehen. but Ich habe ihn gestern  
gesehen.

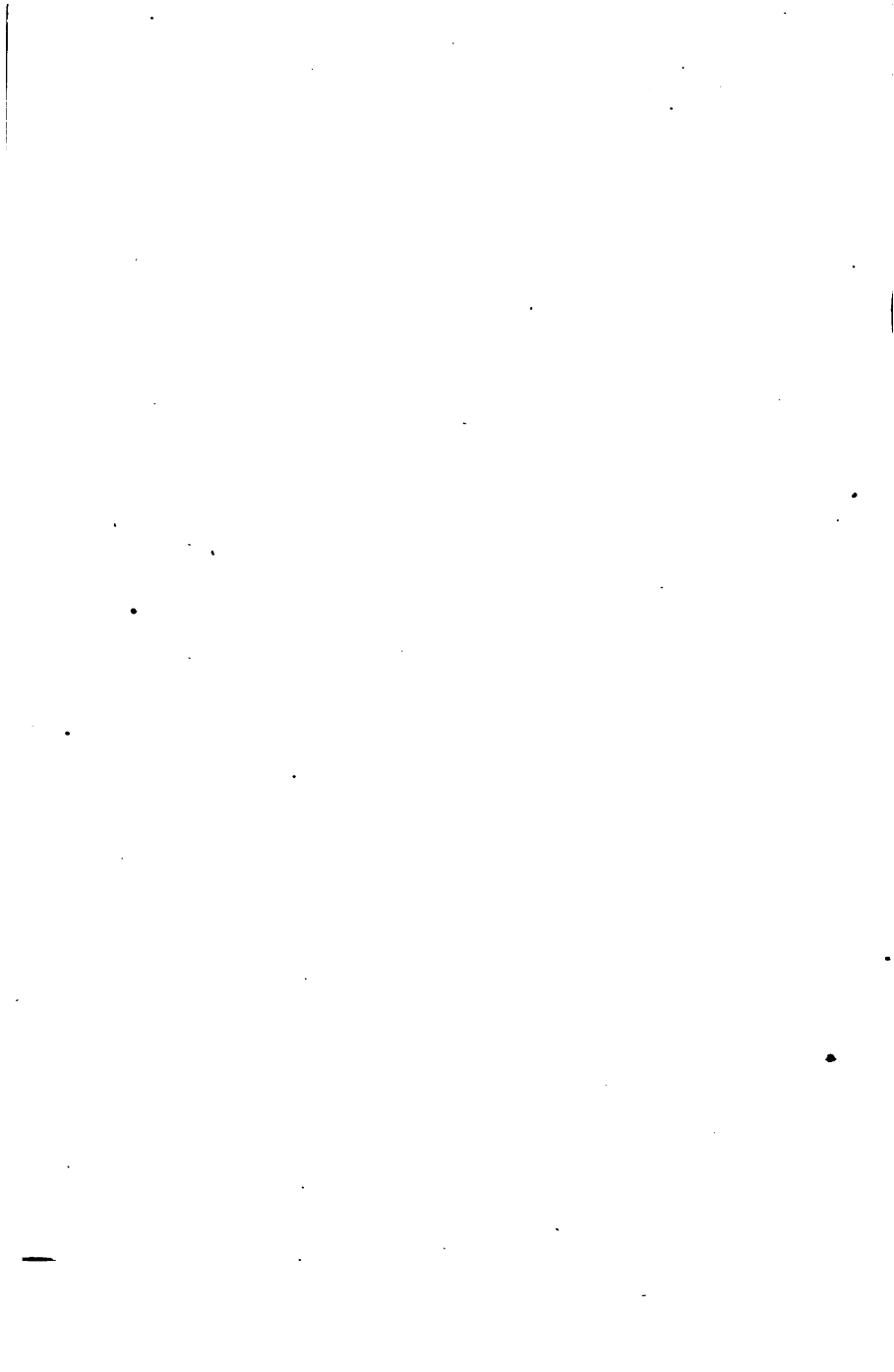
1. There are several adverbs  
then take the following order.  
Indefinite adverbs of time 2. personal  
pronouns.

Ich habe ihn gestern zu meiner  
großen Freude auf dem Markte  
gesehen.

Ich habe das Buch meinem  
Bruder nicht gegeben

Placed immediately before that  
of which it shows the origin

8. er sieht als ob er krank wäre



**AHN'S METHOD**  
**OF LEARNING THE**  
**GERMAN LANGUAGE.**

**REVISED**

**BY**

**GUSTAVUS FISCHER.**

**SECOND (THEORETICAL) COURSE.**

**FOURTH EDITION.**

**NEW YORK:**

**E. Steiger.**

**1872.**

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1871, by  
**E. Steiger,**  
in the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

**E. STEIGER, NEW YORK,**  
Printer and Electrotypen.



## CHAPTER I.

### PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

§ 1. The German Language is composed of eight parts of speech. They are: the Article, the Noun or Substantive, the Adjective, the Pronoun, the Verb, the Adverb, the Preposition, and the Conjunction.

§ 2. There are in German two *numbers*: the Singular and the Plural; three *genders*: the Masculine, the Feminine, and the Neuter; four *cases*: the Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, and the Accusative.\*

### OF THE ARTICLE.

#### § 3. I. *Declension of the definite Article.*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>for all genders.</i>	
Nom.	der,	die,	das,	die	the
Gen.	des,	der,	des,	der,	of the
Dat.	dem,	der,	dem,	den,	to the
Acc.	den,	die,	das,	die,	the.

#### § 4. II. *Declension of the indefinite Article:*

Nom.	ein,	eine,	ein,	a
Gen.	eines,	einer,	eines,	of a
Dat.	einem,	einer,	einem,	to a
Acc.	einen,	eine,	ein,	a

---

\* The nominative answers to the English nominative case, the accusative to the objective case without preposition, and the genitive to the possessive case, or to the objective case with *of*. The dative generally answers to the objective with *to*.

## CHAPTER II.

### NOUNS (SUBSTANTIVES).

#### I. GENDER.

§ 5. Nouns denoting PERSONS have a NATURAL gender, and are masculine or feminine according to their SEX: *der Mann*, the man; *die Frau*, the woman; *der Schneider*, the tailor. There is no common gender in German.\*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Das Weib*, the woman (wife); *das Mädchen*, the girl; *das Fräulein*, the young lady, and all other diminutives in *chen* and *lein* (as: *das Söhnlein*, the little son); *das Gemahl*, husband or wife; *die Schildwache*, the sentinel; *die Waise*, the orphan (both male and female); *der Wundel*, the ward (male and female); *Kind* (child) is always neuter.

§ 6. Designations of persons according to their occupations and other qualities, with but few exceptions, are originally *masculine*, referring to the male sex only. From these nouns those designating females are derived by attaching to them the ending in: *Graf* (count), *Gräfin* (countess); *König* (king), *Königin* (queen); *Schneider* (tailor), *Schneiderin* (dressmaker). The radical vowel of these derivatives in *in* is almost always softened.

REMARK.—This method of derivation applies also to some nouns denoting BRUTES: *der Wolf* (wolf), *die Wölfin* (she-wolf).

§ 7. Nouns denoting THINGS, concrete or abstract, belong to all three genders: *der Fleiß*, the diligence; *die Uhr*, the watch; *der Muth*, the courage; *die Kunst*, the art; *das Meer*, the sea. The gender of these nouns, some derivatives excepted, cannot be determined by general rules, but must be learned by practice and the lexicon.

§ 8. Of DERIVATIVE nouns those with the endings *ei*, *heit*, *schafft* and *ung* are without exception FEMININE: *die Schmeichelei* (flattery), *die Freiheit* (liberty), *die Mäßigkeit* (temperance), *die Freundschaft* (friendship), *die Hoffnung* (hope).

§ 9. The DIMINUTIVES (with the endings *chen* and *lein*) are without exception NEUTER: *das Söhnlein* or *Söhnchen* (the little son); *das Knäblein* (the little boy). Nouns in *thum* are likewise NEUTER, except *der Irrthum* (the mistake); *der Reichthum* (wealth).

\* The noun *der Pathe*, the god-son; *die Pathe*, the god-daughter may be considered as an exception.

REMARKS.—1. Names of countries, cities and villages are **NEUTER** (a very few excepted).

2. Compound nouns take the gender of their last component, a few compounds of the masculine **Ruth** excepted: *die Armuth*, poverty; *die Großmuth*, generosity; *die Sanftmuth*, meekness, and a few others.

3. Some nouns have two genders, but with different meanings:

Der Band, the volume;	das Band, the ribbon;
der Erbe, the heir;	das Erbe, the inheritance;
der Schild, the shield;	das Schild, the sign (of an inn);
der Thor, the fool;	das Thor, the gate;
der Verdienst, the earnings;	das Verdienst, merit;
der See, the lake;	die See, the sea;
der Heide, the heathen;	die Heide, the heath.

## II. DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 10. There are two declensions, the **WEAK** and the **STRONG**.

### I. WEAK DECLENSION.

§ 11. To the **WEAK** declension belong: 1. all masculine nouns ending in *e* (except *der Räse*), as: *der Knabe* (the boy), *der Gehülfe* (the assistant), *der Preuße* (the Prussian); 2. several masculine nouns which have dropped their former ending *e*;<sup>\*</sup> 3. most appellations of males taken from foreign languages, provided they have their accent on their ultima,<sup>†</sup> as: *der Tyrann* (the tyrant); *der Theolog* (the theologian); *der Prinz* (the prince); *der Student* (the student); 4. most **FEMININE** nouns (for exceptions see § 13. REM. 2), which however are indeclinable in the singular number: *die Frau* (the woman); *die Schönheit* (the beauty).

§ 12. The weak declension takes in all cases of the singular (except in the nominative) and of the plural the ending **en**, and is inflected after the following scheme:

\* The most important of these nouns are: *Heiß* (hero), *Graf* (count), *Fürst* (prince), *Hirt* (herdsman), *Mensch* (man), *Herr* (gentleman), *Thor* and *Narr* (fool), *Bär* (bear), *Ochse* or *Ochse* (ox). To these must be added some few national nouns in *r*, as *Ungar* (Hungarian), *Bair* (Bavarian). Many of the nouns mentioned have retained their ending *e* in popular dialects and often in poetry.

† Most of these nouns likewise added formerly the ending *e*, and some do still so in poetry and popular dialects, as: *der Tyranne* (in Schiller), *der Theologe*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Masculines.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Der Knabe, the boy	Nom.	die Knaben, the boys	
Gen.	des Knaben, of the boy (the boy's)	Gen.	der Knaben, of the boys (the boys')	
Dat.	dem Knaben, to the boy	Dat.	den Knaben, to the boys	
Acc.	den Knaben, the boy	Acc.	die Knaben, the boys.	

	<i>Feminines.</i>		<i>Feminines.</i>
Nom.	Die Frau, the woman	Nom.	die Frauen, the women
Gen.	der Frau, of the woman (the woman's)	Gen.	der Frauen, of the women (the women's)
Dat.	der Frau, to the woman	Dat.	den Frauen, to the women
Acc.	die Frau, the woman	Acc.	die Frauen, the women.


REM.—1. The feminine nouns in *er* and *el* add only the ending *n* to the nominative, as: *die Schwester* (sister), plur. *die Schwestern*; *die Gabel* (fork), plur. *die Gabeln*. *Herr* takes in the singular the ending *n*, in the plural *en* (*des Herrn, die Herren*). Feminines in *in* double the *n* in the plural (*die Königin*, plur. *die Königinnen*).

2. The following masculine nouns in *e*: *Friede* (peace), *Funke* (spark), *Gebante* (thought), *Gefalle* (favor), *Glaube* (faith), *Haufe* (heap), *Name* (name), *Same* (seed), *Schade* (damage), *Wille* (will) and the neuter *das Herz* (heart), take in the genitive singular *ens* instead of *en*, but retain in all other cases the ending *en* (*Herz*, being a neuter, makes the accusative like the nominative). All masculine nouns here mentioned, have in the nom. sing. a collateral form in *en* (*der Frieden, Gefallen* etc.).

## II. STRONG DECLENSION.

§ 13. All NEUTER nouns (except *Herz*) and those masculines and feminines not following the weak declension, belong to the STRONG declension, according to the following

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Der Fisch, the fish	Nom.	die Fische, the fishes
Gen.	des Fisches, of the fish (the fish's)	Gen.	der Fische, of the fishes
Dat.	dem Fische (dem Fisch), to the fish	Dat.	den Fischen, to the fishes
Acc.	den Fisch, the fish	Acc.	die Fische, the fishes.

 Decline thus: *der Freund*, the friend; *der Hund*, the dog; *der Wein*, the wine; *der Kreis*, the circle; *das Verdienst*, the merit; *das Hinderniß\**, the obstacle.

\* Final *ß*, when an ending is attached to it, must be changed into *ff* if the preceding vowel is SHORT, which is always the case with the vowels *e* and *i*.

REM.—1. All feminine and most masculine nouns belonging to the strong declension, that have the radical vowels *a, o, u, au*, soften them in the plural in *ä, ö, ü, äu*, as: *der Kahn*, the boat, plur. *die Kähne*; *der Sohn*, the son, plur. *die Söhne*; *der Fuß*, the foot, plur. *die Füße*; *der Baum*, the tree, plur. *die Bäume*. The radical vowels in the plural of the **WEAK** declension are never softened.

2. The following feminine nouns (being indeclinable in the singular) follow this declension: 1. all ending in *niß* (as: *die Betrübniß*, the affliction, plur. *die Betrübnisse*; *die Kenntniß*, the knowledge, plur. *die Kenntnisse* u. s. w.; 2. about thirty monosyllables among which are: *die Art* (axe), *Bank* (bench), *Brust* (breast), *Gans* (goose), *Hand* (hand), *Kraft* (strength), *Kunst* (art), *Macht* (power), *Maus* (mouse), *Nacht* (night), *Stadt* (town), *Wand* (wall), and a few compounds.

#### PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>Die Stadt</i> , the town	Nom. <i>die Städte</i> , the towns
Gen. <i>der Stadt</i> , of the town	Gen. <i>der Städte</i> , of the towns
Dat. <i>der Stadt</i> , to the town	Dat. <i>den Städten</i> , to the towns
Acc. <i>die Stadt</i> , the town	Acc. <i>die Städte</i> , the towns.

3. The *e* in the ending *es* of the gen. sing. is often dropped if the word can be conveniently pronounced without it, especially if the word consists of more than one syllable, as: *Aufbruch* (sedition) gen. *Aufbruchs* (hardly *Aufbruches*); *Jüngling* (young man) gen. *Jünglings* (not *Jünglinges*); but *Todes* (hardly *Todes*); *Fisches* (not *Fisches*); *Arztes* (not *Arztes*). The *e* of the dative may always be dropped.

4. Nouns ending in *er, el, en* must drop the *e* of all endings in both singular and plural.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>Der Vater</i> , the father	Nom. <i>die Väter</i> , the fathers
Gen. <i>des Vaters</i> ,	Gen. <i>der Väter</i> ,
Dat. <i>dem Vater</i> ,	Dat. <i>den Vätern</i> ,
Acc. <i>den Vater</i> ,	Acc. <i>die Väter</i> .

Here belong the two femine nouns *Mutter*, mother (plur. *Mütter*) and *Tochter*, daughter (plur. *Töchter*). Nouns in *en* do not take another *n* in the dative plural, so that their plurals have entirely the appearance of the **WEAK** declension: *der Garten* (the garden), dat. pl. *den Gärten*.

§ 14. Many monosyllabic neuters, a few masculines, and all nouns ending in *thum* (as: *der Reichthum*, wealth; *das Fürstenthum*, the principality) form their plural by the ending *er*, to

which they add the ending *n* in the dative. They always soften the radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*.\*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Das Amt, the office	Nom. die Aemter, the offices
Gen. des Amtes,	Gen. der Aemter,
Dat. dem Amte,	Dat. den Aemtern,
Acc. das Amt,	Acc. die Aemter.

All monosyllabics following this declension (except some few not often used) are contained in the following list:

Der Geist, the mind;  
der Gott, the god;  
der Leib, the body;  
der Mann, the man;

der Ort, the place;  
der Rand, the border;  
der Wald, the forest;  
der Wurm, the worm.

Das Amt, the office;  
das Bad, the bath;  
das Band, the ribbon;  
das Bild, the image;  
das Blatt, the leaf;  
das Brett, the board;  
das Buch, the book;  
das Dach, the roof;  
das Dorf, the village;  
das Ei, the egg;  
das Fach, the shelf;  
das Faß, the cask;  
das Feld, the field;  
das Geld, the money;  
das Glas, the glass;  
das Glied, the limb;  
das Grab, the grave;  
das Gras, the grass;  
das Gut, the good;  
das Haupt, the head;  
das Haus, the house;  
das Holz, the wood;  
das Horn, the horn;

das Huhn, the chicken;  
das Kalb, the calf;  
das Kind, the child;  
das Kleid, the dress;  
das Korn, the grain;  
das Kraut, the herb;  
das Lamm, the lamb;  
das Land, the country;  
das Licht, the light;  
das Lied, the song;  
das Loch, the hole;  
das Nest, the nest;  
das Rad, the wheel;  
das Reis, the twig;  
das Rind, the cattle;  
das Schild, the shield;  
das Schloß, the castle;  
das Schwert, the sword;  
das Thal, the valley;  
das Tuch, the cloth;  
das Volk, the people;  
das Weib, the woman;  
das Wort†, the word.

\* Neuter nouns forming their plurals in *e*, do not soften their radical: das Jahr (year), die Jahre; das Thor (gate), die Thore etc.

† Das Wort forms the plural Worte, if words in logical connection with each other are designated; but Wörter, if unconnected words are referred to.

§ 15. The following masculine and neuter nouns decline **STRONG** in the singular, and **WEAK** in the plural: 1. Two neuters in *e*: *Auge*, eye; *Ende*, end; 2. those contained in the following list:

Der Forst, the forest;	der See, the lake;
der Gau, the district;	der Sporn (pl. Sporen), the spur;
der Vater, the godfather;	der Stachel, the prick;
der Lorbeer, the laurel;	der Strahl, the ray;
der Mast, the mast;	der Unterthan, the subject (citizen);
der Nachbar, the neighbor;	der Vetter, the cousin;
der Schmerz, the pain;	der Zierath, the ornament.

das Bett, the bed;	das Leid, the sorrow;
das Hemd, the shirt;	das Ohr, the ear.

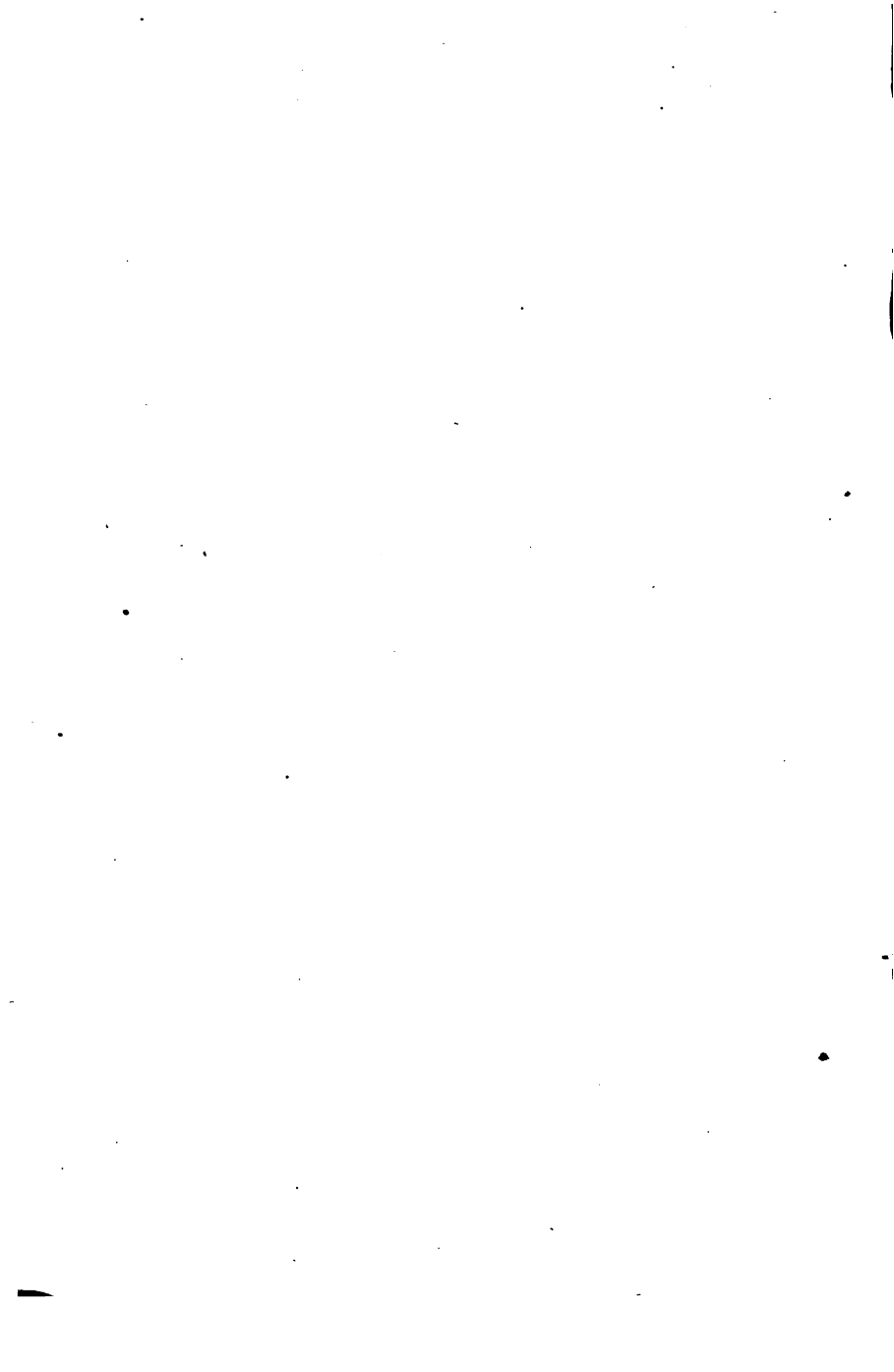
To these must be added several nouns taken from foreign languages, as: 1. Those ending in *or*, taken from the Latin (*Professor*, Gen. *Professors*, plur. *Professoren*, with the accent on the penult). 2. The names of the Roman offices: *Tribun*, *Consul*, etc. 3. Several nouns that cannot be classified, as: *Staat*, state (plur. *Staaten*); *Diamant* (diamond), *Zins* (interest), *Insect* (insect), *Psalm* (psalm), and some others.

§ 16. *Irregular plurals.* 1. Masculine and neuter nouns borrowed from the French and English languages generally form their plurals in *s*, if their terminations disagree with those of German words, (*die Departements*, *die Genies*, *die Lords*, *die Stuarts*, *die Clubs*.\*). 2. Words taken from the Latin in *um* form their plurals in *en*: *Studium*, pl. *Studien*; *Evangelium*; (gospel), pl. *Evangelien*; *Individuum* (individual), pl. *Individuen*. 3. The compounds with *Mann* generally change this word in *Leute* (people) in the plural: *Kaufmann* (merchant), pl. *Kaufleute*; *Landsmann* (countryman), pl. *Landleute*.

### III. DECLENSION OF PROPER NOUNS.

§ 17. Proper nouns (even the names of females) decline **STRONG**, but always drop the *e* in the ending of the genitive and dative sing.: Nom. *Karl*, Gen. *Karls*, Dat. *Karl*; Nom. *Deutich-*

\* In conversational style this ending *s* is often applied even to German nouns (*die Karls*, the fellows; *die Jungen*, the boys).





**AHN'S METHOD**  
**OF LEARNING THE**  
**GERMAN LANGUAGE.**

**REVISED**  
**BY**  
**GUSTAVUS FISCHER.**

**SECOND (THEORETICAL) COURSE.**

**FOURTH EDITION.**

**NEW YORK:**  
**E. Steiger.**

**1872.**

land, Gen. Deutschlands (not Deutschlandes); Dat. Deutschland. Even female proper names take the ending *s* in the Genitive, and those in *e* take *ens* (Nom. Adelheid, Gen. Adelheids; Nom. Marie, Gen. Mariens\*).

REM.—1. Some writers use before the ending *s* of proper names an apostrophe (Karl's).

2. Male or female names are often declined with the article or other determinative word, and then take no endings at all in the singular: *des Karl*; *der Adelheid*; *meiner Adelheid*. The same is frequently observed with other proper names, and always with those ending in *s*, *r* or *z*: *der Juni*, *des Juni* (or *Juni's*); *die Ufer des Mississippi* (the banks of the Mississippi). If proper names are in apposition to their own appellatives, they never take an ending: *der Stadt Berlin* (of the city (of) Berlin); *des Staates Dänemark* (of the state (of) Denmark).

3. The plural of male names declines **STRONG**; that of female names **WEAK** (*die Friedrichs*; *die Leonoren Goethes*). To names whose terminations disagree with those of German words is applied either the ending *s*, or they receive no ending at all if declined with the article (*die beiden Cicero*; *die Roussaus*, *Pitts*, *die Stuarts*). This is always the case with nouns in *s*, *die beiden Plinius* (not *Pliniusse*). Some Latin family-names decline **WEAK**: *die Gracchen* (the Gracchi), *die Cäsaren* (the Cæsars).

## CHAPTER III.

### THE SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

#### I. INTERROGATIVE SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 18. They are *wer* (who?), and *was* (what?), which are thus declined:

Nom.	<i>wer</i> , who?	<i>was</i> , what?
Gen.	<i>wessen</i> , whose (of whom)?	<i>wessen</i> (rare), of what?
Dat.	<i>wem</i> , to whom?	
Acc.	<i>wen</i> , whom?	<i>was</i> , what?

\* Some give to female proper names, and even to males, the ending *en* in dative and accusative (Dat. *Sophien*, to *Sophy*; *Goethen*, to *Goethe*). Formerly this method of declining was the rule, now it is coming out of use.

Wer ist da?	Who is there?
Wer ist dieser Mann?	Who is this man?
Wer ist diese Frau?	Who is this woman?
Wessen Haus ist das?	Whose house is this?
Wem schreiben Sie?	To whom do you write?
Wen suchen Sie?	Whom do you look for?
Was sind wir?	What are we?
Was sagen Sie?	What do you say?
Wessen ist er fähig?	Of what is he capable?

REM.—If the interrogative substantive pronoun *was* is connected with a preposition, it assumes the adverbial form *wo*, or *wor* if the preposition begins with a vowel. These forms are prefixed to the prepositions, as: *wovon*, of (from) what (not *von was*); *worin*, in what (not *in was*); *wofür*, for what (less good *für was*).

Womit bist du beschäftigt?	With what art thou occupied?
Worin besteht es?	In what does it consist?
Wofür leben wir?	For what do we live?

## II. PERSONAL SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 19. The pronouns denoting the grammatical persons are thus declined:

		SINGULAR.		
		<i>First person.</i>	<i>Second person.</i>	
Nom.	ich, I;*		du, thou;	
Gen.	meiner, of me;		deiner, of thee;	
Dat.	mir, to me;		dir, to thee;	
Acc.	mid, me.		dich, thee.	
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	wir, we;		ihr, you;	
Gen.	unser, of us;		euer, of you;	
Dat.	uns, to us;		euch, to you;	
Acc.	uns, us.		euch, you.	
		<i>Third person.</i>		
		SINGULAR.		
<i>Masculine.</i>		<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	
Nom.	er, he;	sie, she;	es, it;	
Gen.	seiner, of him;	ihrer, of her;	seiner, of it;	
Dat.	ihm, to him;	ihr, to her;	ihm, to it;	
Acc.	ihn, him;	sie, her;	es, it.	

\*Ich, is also used as a NOUN of the neuter gender: *das Ich* (our own self), and has then the declension of NOUNS, not of pronouns (Gen. *des Ichs*; Dat. *dem Ich*). It is also used without endings: *meines Ich* etc.

PLURAL FOR ALL GENDERS.

Nom.	sie, they;
Gen.	ihrer, of them;
Dat.	ihnen, to them;
Acc.	sie, them.

§ 20. 1. The pronouns of the first and second persons are also used as REFLEXIVE pronouns (see PART I, p. 52 and 83), corresponding to the English compounds with *self* (myself, thyself, ourselves etc.): Ich beschräftige mich, I occupy *myself*; ihr beschräftigt euch, you occupy *yourselves*.

2. The same is the case with the genitive sing. and plur. of the third person: er ist seiner bewußt, he is conscious of *himself*; sie ist ihrer nicht mächtig, she has no control of *herself*.

3. But the datives and accusatives of the third person in all genders and both numbers take the form sich, which corresponds to the forms (to) himself, (to) herself, (to) itself, (to) themselves.

Er	{	hat sich getödtet,	he has killed <i>himself</i> ;
sie			she has killed <i>herself</i> ;
sie haben			sich getödtet,

§ 21. The Germans employ the pronouns of the second person (du and ihr) only in relations of intimacy, and in addressing children. In polite conversation persons (in both numbers) are addressed by the THIRD PERSON PLURAL, which in this case is written with a capital, the reflexive sich, however, always keeping its small initial:

Wer sind Sie, who are you? (literally *who are they?*)  
 Ich will es Ihnen geben, I will give it to you (literally *to them*).  
 Haben Sie sich ausgeruht, have you rested yourself?

III. INDEFINITE SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

They refer either to persons or things.

§ 22. To PERSONS refer: 1. man (one); 2. Jemand (somebody, some one, anybody); Niemand (nobody, no one, not anybody); 4. Jedermann (everybody, every one).

REM.—1. Man can only be used as subject (in the nominative). If the English indefinite *one* is employed in other relations, it is generally rendered by the adjective Pronoun Einer (see PART I, p. 54), and in reflexive relations

by *sich* (one's self): *man ist nicht immer mit sich zufrieden*, one is not always pleased with one's self (himself). *Man kann es Einem nicht immer recht machen*, one cannot always please everybody (literally: *one cannot always make right to one*).

2. Jedermann, Jemand and Niemand decline **strong**, taking *s* (not *es*) in the genitive, but are used without ending both in dative and accusative: Jedermanns (Jemand's, Niemand's) Wünsche, everybody's (somebody's) desires. Er hat es Jedermann (Jemand, Niemand) gesagt, he has said it to everybody (somebody, nobody). Niemand and Jemand, however, often take the ending *em* or *en* in the dative, and *en* in the accusative. (Niemandem, Niemanden).

3. Instead of Jemand the Pronoun *wer* is sometimes used in Nom., Dat., Acc., as: *Sahet ihr wen?* Did you see any one? *Ist wer da gewesen?* Has any one been there?

§ 23. To THINGS refer *etwas* (*something, anything*), and *nichts* (*nothing, not-anything*). They are used in all cases, but take no endings. Instead of *etwas* the pronoun *was* is sometimes used, but is not considered elegant: *Hat er euch was gesagt?* Has he told you anything?

REM.—Jemand, *wer* and *etwas*, especially if denoting *anybody* and *anything*, are frequently connected with the adverb *irgend*: *Hast du irgend Jemand (irgend etwas) gesehen*, hast thou seen anybody (anything)? *Wenn er mit irgend wem gesprochen haben sollte*, if he should have spoken with anyone.

## CHAPTER IV.

### ADJECTIVES.

#### I. THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN GENERAL.

§ 24. Adjectives are used without inflectional endings, if they are used as **PREDICATES** (predicatively). But if they are used as **ATTRIBUTES** (attributively), that is, if they are followed by their nouns, they must be **DECLINED**, agreeing with their nouns in gender, number and case.

*Der Mann ist gut* (predicate), the man is good.

*Der gute Mann* (attribute), the good man.

REM.—Adjectives are also considered as attributes, if their nouns are *understood*: *Er unterstützt die Armen (Menschen)*, he assists the poor (men). *Dieses Buch ist ein gutes* (i. e. *Buch*), this book is a good one.


§ 25. Inflected adjectives belong either to the **STRONG** or the **WEAK** declension. Most **PRONOMINAL** adjectives follow the strong declension only, but every ordinary adjective may be declined according to the method of either declension.

§ 26. The scheme of the **STRONG** declension of adjectives, which is essentially different from that of the nouns, and almost agrees with the declension of the definite article, is best seen from the paradigm of *dieser*, this:

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	<i>Dieser</i> (Mann), this (man);	<i>diese</i> (Frau), this (woman);	<i>dieses*</i> (Kind), this (child);
Gen.	<i>dieses</i> , of this	<i>dieser</i>	<i>dieses</i>
Dat.	<i>diesem</i> , to this	<i>dieser</i>	<i>diesem</i>
Acc.	<i>diesen</i> , this	<i>diese</i>	<i>dieses</i>

PLURAL OF ALL GENDERS.

Nom.	<i>diese</i> , these
Gen.	<i>dieser</i> , of these
Dat.	<i>diesen</i> , to these
Acc.	<i>diese</i> , these.

 Decline thus: *welcher* (which), *guter* (good), *alter* (old).


§ 27. The **WEAK** declension is generally used, if an adjective is preceded and qualified by the **DEFINITE ARTICLE**, or an other word taking its place. It has the ending *e* in the nom. sing. of all genders, and in the acc. sing. of the feminine and neuter, taking the ending *en* in all other cases of both numbers. Hence its masculine forms are exactly the same as those of the weak declension of the noun. Its scheme is best seen in the paradigm of the ordinal numeral *der erste* (the first).

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	<i>Der erste</i> , the first (man etc.)	<i>die erste</i> , the first (woman etc.)	<i>das erste</i> , the first (thing etc.)
Gen.	<i>des ersten</i> , of the first	<i>der ersten</i>	<i>des ersten</i>
Dat.	<i>dem ersten</i> , to the first	<i>der ersten</i>	<i>dem ersten</i>
Acc.	<i>den ersten</i> , the first	<i>die erste</i>	<i>das erste</i>

\* *Dieses* in the nom. and acc. is frequently contracted into *dies*; but not in the genitive.

PLURAL OF ALL GENDERS.

Nom.	Die ersten, the first (men, things etc.)
Gen.	der ersten, of the first
Dat.	den ersten, to the first
Acc.	die ersten, the first

 Decline thus the adjectives: *der zweite*, the second; *der gute*, the good; *der alte*, the old.

II. DECLENSION OF PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES. •

§ 28. The pronominal adjectives are divided into 1) INTERROGATIVES; 2) RELATIVES; 3) DEMONSTRATIVES; 4) INDEFINITES; 5) POSSESSIVES.

1. *Interrogative Pronominal Adjectives.*

§ 29. They are: *welcher*, *which*, *what*; *welch ein*, *what a*; *was für*, *what* (what kind of); *was für ein*, *what a* (what kind of a). *Welcher* declines STRONG (like *dieser*); *was für* remains uninflected in all cases; *welch ein* and *was für ein* decline the indefinite article only. (§ 4.)

*Welchen* Hut haben Sie genommen, which hat have you taken?

*Welcher* Meinung sind Sie, of what opinion are you?

*Welchem* Lande gehören Sie an, to what country do you belong?

*Mit welchen* (dat. plur.) *Arbeiten* beschäftigen Sie sich, with what labors do you occupy yourself?

*Welch einem* Regimente bist du zugetheilt, to what a regiment art thou assigned?

*Was für* Fleisch haben Sie da (was haben Sie da für Fleisch), what (kind of) meat have you there?

*Was für* Landsleute sind sie (was sind sie für Landsleute), what countrymen are they?

*Was für* einen Arzt haben Sie, what (a) physician have you (whom have you for a physician)?

*Was für* ein Winterkleid tragen Sie, what a (style of) winter-dress do you wear (what do you wear for a winter-dress)?

2. *Relative Pronouns.*

§ 30. They are: *welcher*, *der* and *was*. About their English correspondents see REM. 1. *Welcher* declines STRONG, like the

interrogative *welcher*. *Was* declines like the interrogative *was*, and *der* declines like the definite article with this difference that it adds the WEAK ending *en* to the genitive of all genders and numbers, and to the dative plural:

*der, die, das* (who, which, that).

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	<i>der, who, which, that</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das,</i>
Gen.	<i>dessen, whose, of whom, of which</i>	<i>deren,</i>	<i>dessen,</i>
Dat.	<i>dem, to whom, to which</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>dem,</i>
Acc.	<i>den, whom, which</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>das.</i>

PLURAL OF ALL GENDERS.

Nom.	<i>die, who, which, that</i>
Gen.	<i>deren, whose, etc.</i>
Dat.	<i>denen, to whom, etc.</i>
Acc.	<i>die, whom, etc.</i>

REM.—1. The German language does not, as the English, employ the interrogative substantive pronoun *wer* (who) as a relative. But both, the adjective pronoun *welcher*, and the word *der* (properly demonstrative) correspond to each of the English relatives\* *who, which* and *that*.

2. The genitive of the pronoun *welcher* can generally not be employed as a relative. Instead of it must be used the genitives of *der* (*dessen, deren* in both singular and plural: *The boy whose father you know, der Knabe, dessen* (not *welches*) *Vater Sie kennen*. Only if the relative is connected as attribute with a noun, the use of *der* is forbidden in all cases, and in this instance *welches, welcher* must be used in the genitive: *Berlin, w e l c h e Stadt Sie kennen* (*w e l c h e r Stadt Eigenthümlichkeiten Sie kennen*), *Berlin, which city you know* (the peculiarities of which city you know).

3. The relative *was* must be used for the English *which* or *that* if a relative pronoun is required after indefinite or demonstrative pronouns, used without nouns in the neuter gender: *Alles, was* (all that), *Vielen, was* (much that), *das oder dasjenige, was* (that which), not *Alles, das* (*welches*), *Vielen, das* (*welches*) or *das* (*dasjenige*), *das* or *welches*. But if in this instance the relative stands in the genitive, *dessen* (not *wessen*) must be used (see the examples).

\* There is no difference in the use of *welcher* and *der* as relatives. *Der* is far more used in colloquial language, and is generally preferred in writing, unless euphonic reasons make its use inelegant. Nobody would for instance write: *der, der der erste ist* (instead of: *der, w e l c h e r der erste ist* (he who is the first). But it is certainly thus used in speaking, since the pitch of the three *der*'s is different. After personal and interrogative pronouns *der* must always be used in place of *welcher*: *I who, ich, der* etc.




### EXAMPLES OF RELATIVES.

- Nom.** Der Mann, *der* or *welcher* (not *wer*) dir es gesagt hat, the man *who* (that) has told you (it).  
 Die Kinder, *die* or *welche* mit dir gespielt haben, the children *who* have played with you.  
 Die Bücher, *die* or *welche* dir gehören, the books *which* (that) belong to you.  
 Alles, was (not *das* or *welches*) mir gehört, all *that* belongs to me.
- Gen.** Der Mann, *dessen* (not *welches* or *wessen*) Haus ich gekauft habe, the man *whose* house I have bought.  
 Die Kinder, *deren* (not *welcher* or *wessen*) Vater ihr kennt, the children *whose* father you know.  
 Das Haus, *dessen* Gebrauch Sie haben, the house the use of *which* you have.  
 Alles, *dessen* (not *wessen* or *welches*) ihr beschuldigt seid, all of *which* you are accused.
- Dat.** Der Freund, mit *dem* or *welchem* (not mit *wem*) ich umgehe, the friend with *whom* I associate.  
 Das Land, *dem* or *welchem* ich angehöre, the country to *which* I belong.  
 Die Freunde, *denen* or *welchen* ihr treu seid, the friends to *whom* you are faithful.  
 Alles, *womit*\* (not mit *welchem*) ihr beschäftigt seid, all (everything) *with which* you are occupied.
- Acc.** Der Mann, *den* or *welchen* (not *wen*) du kennst, the man *whom* you know.  
 Das Pferd, *das* or *welches* du reitest, the horse *which* (that) you ride.  
 Alles, *was* (not *das* or *welches*) ich gehört habe, all (that) I have heard.

### 3. Demonstrative Pronouns.

§ 31. The demonstratives are: 1. *der*, that (plur. those); 2. *dieser*, this (plur. these); 3. *jener*, that; 4. *solcher*, such; 5. *derjenige* (see § 35.), and 6. *derselbe*, the same.

§ 32. The pronouns *dieser*, *jener* and *solcher* decline STRONG throughout (see the paradigm of *dieser*, § 26.).

 Of *solcher* exists a collateral form *solch ein*, *such a*, of which only the indefinite article *ein* is declined: *Solch einem Manne*, to such a man. *Such a* is also rendered *ein solcher*, and inflected like *ein jeder*, § 39.

\* The change of *was* into *wo* in connection with prepositions takes also place if *was* is a relative (§ 18, REM.). Many make use of the combinations with *wo* even in the place of the relatives *der* or *welcher*, as: *die Feder, womit ich schreibe*, instead of: *die Feder, mit der or welcher ich schreibe*, the pen with which I am writing. But others object to the usage.

EXAMPLES:—*This man, dieser Mann; of that woman, jener Frau; to this child, jenem Kinde; to those men, jenen Männern.*

§ 33. The demonstrative *der*\* is declined like the article if it is followed by a noun with which it agrees in gender, number, and case. *Mit den Büchern kann ich nichts thun*, with those books I cannot do anything. But if its noun is understood, it has the same declension as the *relative der* (§ 30). It is thus frequently used with the force of an emphasized personal pronoun of the third person:

*Den kenne ich nicht, him* I do not know.

*Das kann ich nicht thun, that* I cannot do.

*Der en gibt es wenige, of those* there are few.

*Mit denen kann ich nichts thun, with those* I cannot do anything.

§ 34. In *derjenige* and *derselbe* each of the two components *der* and *jenige* (*selbe*) is inflected: *der*, entirely like the article, and *jenige* (*selbe*) after the WEAK form (§ 27.):

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>All Genders.</i>
Nom.	<b>derjenige</b>	<b>diejenige</b>	<b>dasjenige</b>	<b>diejenigen</b>
Gen.	<b>desjenigen</b>	<b>derjenigen</b>	<b>desjenigen</b>	<b>derjenigen</b>
Dat.	<b>demjenigen</b>	<b>derjenigen</b>	<b>demjenigen</b>	<b>denjenigen</b>
Acc.	<b>denjenigen</b>	<b>diejenige</b>	<b>dasjenige</b>	<b>diejenigen</b>
Nom.	<b>derselbe</b>	<b>dieselbe</b>	<b>dasſelbe</b> (generally	<b>dieselben</b>
Gen.	<b>deſſelben</b> (gen- erally <i>deſſelben</i> )	<b>derſelben</b>	written <i>daſſelbe</i> ) <b>deſſelben</b> ( <i>deſſelben</i> )	<b>derſelben</b>
Dat.	<b>demſelben</b>	<b>derſelben</b>	<b>demſelben</b>	<b>denſelben</b>
Acc.	<b>denſelben</b>	<b>dieselbe</b>	<b>dasſelbe</b>	<b>dieselben.</b>

§ 35. *Derjenige* is used only in a CORRELATIVE connection. It corresponds: 1) to the English *he* or its equivalent *the one* (pl. *those, the ones*), if these words are determined and completed by a relative clause; 2) to the English *that* (*the one*, pl. *those, the ones*), if these words take the place of a noun previously mentioned, provided that a relative clause or a dependent phrase is attached to the demonstrative.

\* The vowel *e* in the demonstrative *der* is more strongly emphasized than either in the article or in the relative *der*. If the word is connected, as demonstrative, with a noun, it is always spaced in print, to distinguish it from the article.

Derjenige, der keine Freunde hat, ist zu beklagen, *he* (the one) who has no friends is to be pitied.

Diejenigen, die nicht denken, leben nicht, *those* (the ones) who do not think, do not live.

Mein Haus ist schöner, als dasjenige deines Bruders, my house is more beautiful than *that* (the one) of thy brother.

Dieses Pferd ist größer als dasjenige, das du gekauft hast, this horse is larger than *the one* (that) which you have bought.

REM.—1. The masculine sing. *derjenige*, *der* if both words are in the nominative, may be replaced by the interrogative *wer*, and the plural *diejenigen*, *die* may be replaced by *die* alone. *Wer keine Freunde hat, ist zu beklagen*, who has no friends etc.; *Die nicht denken, leben nicht*, those who do not think etc.

2. The neuter *dasjenige*, if used absolutely, and not referring to a particular noun, must be followed by the relative *was* (see § 30. REM. 3). In this instance *dasjenige* may be dropped.

*Dasjenige, was* (not *das* or *welches*), *du sagst ist wahr*, or: *Was du sagst, ist wahr*, what (that which) you say is true.

But if the demonstrative is in the genitive or dative, it cannot be dropped: *Die Wahrheit desjenigen, was Sie mir gesagt haben* (not *die Wahrheit wissen*), the truth of what you have told me.

§ 36. The demonstrative *der* (§ 33.) is frequently used with the force of *derjenige*; but in this instance it takes the form *derer*, instead of *deren*, in the genitive plural. The demonstrative *jener* is generally not employed in this connection.

*Der, welcher* (or *derjenige, der*; or *wer*; not *der, wer*) *säet, wird ernten*, *who* (*he who*) sows will reap.

*Geht nur um mit denen, die* (*denjenigen, die*; *denen, welche*) *euern Geist bilden*, associate with *those* only *that* benefit your mind.

*Folgt nicht dem Rathe derer* (*derjenigen, but not deren\**), *die euch beneiden*, do not follow the advice of *those* that envy you.

• *Das Leiden der Einwohner* (or *derjenigen, but not derer or deren*), *die durch den Krieg verarmt waren*, the suffering of *those* inhabitants who were impoverished by the war.

*Unsere Literatur ist groß, aber die der Deutschen* (or *diejenige der Deutschen*) *ist größer*, our literature is great, but *that* of the Germans is greater.

---

\* There are passages enough, in which we find *deren* in this connection. But it is considered as faulty.

#### 4. Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives.\*

§ 37. *Sing.* ein, eine, ein (the indefinite article), a, some, any (sing.), one.

einiger, e, es (STRONG),  
etwas (indeclinable),  
welcher, e, es (STRONG), } some, any, a little.

*Plur.* einige (STRONG),  
welche (STRONG), } some, any, a few.

1. Ein refers to individual nouns (such as *friend, horse, field*, etc.) in the singular. Referring to nouns previously mentioned, or used with the force of *Somebody* or *man* (see the note), it declines *strong* throughout (*einer, eine, eines* or *eins*). Its force is often increased by the adverb *irgend* placed before it. For its declension as indefinite article see § 4.

Haben Sie einen Hammer? Hier ist einer. Have you any hammer? Here is *one*. Ist nicht Einer an der Thür? Is not *some one* at the door? Hast du ein Messer? Ja, ich habe eins (*eines*). Have you a knife? Yes, I have one. Hast du eine Feder bei der Hand? Have you *some* (a) pen at hand? Können Sie nicht irgend ein Werkzeug finden? Can you not find *some* tool? Wenn Sie irgend einen Wunsch haben, bringen Sie ihn vor! If you have any desire, state it.

*Note.* In this connection the English *one* or *any* cannot be rendered by *etwas* or *einiger*. For the form *der eine* see § 46.

2. *Etwas* and the SINGULAR of *einiger* and *welcher* refer exclusively to nouns denoting a QUANTITY (such as *water, grain, gold*), and to ABSTRACTS (as *diligence, courage* etc.). *Welcher* in this connection cannot be joined to nouns, but may be used in reference to nouns mentioned before. These words may also be preceded by *irgend*, in which case *welcher* may be joined to nouns.

Wenn Sie nur einigen Fleiß anwenden wollten, if you would but apply *some* diligence. Haben Sie etwas Geld bei sich? Ja, ich habe welches. Have you *any* (some, a little) money with you? Yes, I have *some*. Wenn er irgend einiges (etwas, welches) Selbstvertrauen hätte, if he had *any* self-reliance (at all).

*Note.* The English *some* and *any* employed in a merely partitive† sense are not expressed in German, except if referring to a noun previously men-

\* All these pronominal adjectives may, like all other adjectives, be employed 'substantively', replacing the substantive indefinite pronouns, mentioned § 22. They are then written with a capital. Thus *Einer* stands for *Somebody* or *man*; *Keiner* with the force of *Nobody*; *Jeder* for *Everybody*; *Einiges* for *Something*. But this does not make these words 'substantive pronouns', as they always keep their adjective inflection.

† That the English *some* or *any* are employed in a partitive sense will be generally evident, if we may not replace these words by *a little* or *a few*.

tioned: Trinken Sie Wein (not einigen or etwas Wein), do you drink *any* wine? Verlaufen Sie Zucker (not einigen or etwas Zucker), do you sell *any* sugar? Ja, ich verkaufe w e l c h e n , yes, I sell *some*.

3. Einige and welche in the PLURAL answer to the English *some* or *any*, if they are used in the sense of '*a few*' before plural nouns. Welche refers to plural nouns which are mentioned before. If irgend is used before plural nouns, welche generally takes the place of einige. If *some* and *any* cannot be replaced by '*a few*', before plural nouns, they are not expressed in German, except when they are used with emphasis.

Ich ging mit einigen Freunden spazieren, I took a walk with *some* (a few) friends. Wenn diese Wände einige Zierathen hätten, würden sie besser aussehen, if these walls had *some* (a few) ornaments, they would look better. Wenn er irgend welche Schwierigkeiten erheben sollte, if he should raise *any* difficulties (whatever). Was suchst du? Ich suche Nägel. Hast du welche gefunden? What are you looking for? I am looking for (*some*) nails. Have you found *some* (any)?

4. Instead of *einiger* in all its forms the indefinite pronoun *etlicher* (STRONG) may be used. But it cannot be connected with irgend, nor can it be used with abstracts.

### § 38. Kein, keine, kein, no, not—any; plur. keine (STRONG), no.

Kein before nouns is declined like the indefinite article. But if it refers to nouns mentioned before, or if it is used substantively, it declines STRONG throughout (keiner, keine, keines or keins), and is translated *none* or *no one* (nobody).

Ich habe keine Nachricht erhalten, I have not received *any* news. Er hat keine Freunde, he has no friends. Er hat einige Ansprüche, aber du hast keine, he has some claims, but thou hast *none*. Ist Einer hier gewesen? Nein, Keiner ist hier gewesen. Has any one been here? No, no one has been here.

### § 39. Jeder, e, es (STRONG), each, every (without plural).


It may also, without changing its meaning, be preceded by the indefinite article, and declines then WEAK, except in those forms in which the indefinite article takes no ending: Nom. ein jeder; Gen. eines jeden; Dat. einem jeden; Neuter: ein jedes. In both forms it may be used substantively with the force of *Jebermann*.

Er gab jedem (einem jeden) Knaben einen Thaler, he gave to each boy a dollar. Jeder (ein Jeder), der nicht für mich ist, ist wider mich, every one that is not for me, is against me. Gib Jedem (einem Jeden) das Seine, give every one his own.

### § 40. Aller, alle, alles (STRONG), all; plur. alle, all.

The neuter singular *Alles*, used substantively, is rendered by *everything*, and is also used in speaking of persons (all, every one, all the people).

Alle<sup>r</sup> Tadel tränk<sup>t</sup>, all censure hurts. Mit alle<sup>r</sup> Aufmerksamkei<sup>t</sup>, with all attention; mit alle<sup>n</sup> seine<sup>n</sup> Freunde<sup>n</sup>, with all his friends. Alles i<sup>st</sup> verloren, all (everything) is lost. Alles freu<sup>t</sup> sich, all rejoice.

 If *all* with the article before singular nouns is equivalent to 'the whole', it is not rendered by *aller*, but by the adjective *gan<sup>z</sup>*: all the city, die ganze Stadt.

#### § 41. Viel, much; plur. many.

If *viel* is not preceded by the article or another qualifying word, it is either not inflected at all, or it declines *strong*. In nom. and acc. sing the uninflected forms are far more usual; in the other cases the inflected forms prevail. (Nom. viel Wein; Gen. vieles Weins; Dat. vielem Wein; Acc. viel Wein). In the plural, the nom. and acc. are about as often inflected as not (*viel* or *vieler* Soldaten, many soldiers). In the other cases of the plural the inflected forms prevail. If it stands without noun, the singular *much* answers to the neuter *Viel* or *Vieles*, the genitive and dative being almost always inflected. The plural '*many*', used substantively, is always rendered by the inflected form *Viele*. Er weiß Viel or Vieles\*, he knows much (many things). Dies i<sup>st</sup> die Meinung Vieler, this is the opinion of many.

*Viel* may be preceded and qualified by the definite article, by demonstratives or possessives, and inflects then *weak*†, being translated by '*great amount or quantity of*', der viele Regen, the great amount of rain. Was willst du mit diesem vielen Golde anfangen? What will you do with this great amount of gold? Mit seinem vielen Gelde, with his great amount of money.

#### § 42. Wenig, little; plur. few.

If *little* is opposed to *great*, it is translated by *kein*; if opposed to *much*, by *wenig*. *Wenig*, in respect to its inflection is almost entirely treated like *viel*: Nom. wenig Geld, little money; Gen. wenig<sup>e</sup>s (en)‡ Geldes; Dat. wenigem Gelde; Acc. wenig Geld. After prepositions the uninflected forms decidedly prevail (mit wenig Geld). In the plural the inflected forms are required in the genitive, and more frequent in the dative; but in nom. and acc. the uninflected forms rather prevail: Er hat wenig Freunde, he has few friends; but weniger Freunde, of few friends. If used substantively in the plural, *wenig* is inflected in all cases: Wenige (not wenig) bezweifeln es, few doubt it. *Little*, used absolutely in the singular is generally rendered by the uninflected *wenig*, rarely by *weniges*. *Wenig* in the singular, like *little*, may be preceded by the indefinite article: ein wenig, a little, which is almost equivalent to *etwas*. It remains in all cases uninflected (mit ein wenig Fleiß, with a little diligence). The plural *a few* is translated by *einige* or *etliche*, not by *ein wenig*. Not *a few* is rendered by *nicht wenig* or by *manche*, and not *a little* by *nicht wenig*.

\* Some make a difference between *Viel* and *Vieles*, which is not warranted by the usage of the best writers.

† With possessives it must inflect *strong* if the possessive takes no ending. See § 55. REM. 1.

‡ See § 55. REM. 2.

§ 43. *Mancher, e, es*; plur. *manche* (STRONG),\* many a, not a few.

*Mancher* both in the singular and plural corresponds to *many a* or *not a few*: *Er hatte mit manchem Hindernisse* (or *manchen Hindernissen*) *zu kämpfen*, he had to struggle with many an obstacle (not a few obstacles).

§ 44. *Mehr, more.*

It is indeclinable in all cases: *mit mehr Geld*, with more money; *mehr Freunde*, more friends.

*Weniger, less*, is treated in the same way, but is sometimes, though rarely, found with (strong) inflection.

§ 45. *Mehrere* (STRONG), several.

It is used only in the plural: *Er machte mehrere Einwendungen*, he made several objections. *Nach mehreren Versuchen*, after several attempts.

§ 46. *Der* (die, das) *eine*, the one; *der* (die, das) *andere*, the other (both WEAK).

Both form plurals (*die einen, die anderen*; the ones, the others). *Andere* takes also the indefinite article before it and is then declined like *ein jeder*, (*ein anderer, e, es*, another). Without an article it is declined STRONG throughout: *Von anderem Stoffe*, of other material; *die Sitten anderer Zeiten*, the manners of other times.

#### 5. Possessive Pronouns.

§ 47. The simple possessives are:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	
1. Singular Person.	<i>mein,</i>	<i>meine,</i>	<i>mein,</i>	<i>my;</i>
2. " "	<i>dein,</i>	<i>deine,</i>	<i>dein,</i>	<i>thy;</i>
3. { " masc. Pers.	{ <i>sein,</i>	{ <i>seine,</i>	{ <i>sein,</i>	{ <i>his;</i>
{ " fem. "	{ <i>ihr,</i>	{ <i>ihre,</i>	{ <i>ihr,</i>	{ <i>her;</i>
{ " neuter "	{ <i>sein,</i>	{ <i>seine,</i>	{ <i>sein,</i>	{ <i>its;</i>
1. Plural Person.	<i>unser,</i>	<i>unsere,</i>	<i>unser,</i>	<i>our;</i>
2. " "	<i>euer,</i>	<i>eure,</i>	<i>euer,</i>	<i>your;</i>
3. " "	<i>ihr,</i>	<i>ihre,</i>	<i>ihr,</i>	<i>their.</i>

REM. — The second singular and plural persons (*dein, euer*) are confined to relations of intimacy, like the corresponding substantive personal pronouns. Among persons less intimately connected the third person plural *Ihr* (their) is used in addressing either one or more persons. *Ihr* is then written with a capital. Your brother, *Ihr Bruder*; your sister, *Ihre Schwester*. *Ich baue auf Ihre Nachsicht, meine Herren*, I rely on your indulgence, gentlemen.

\* *Mancher* in connection with an adjective or the indefinite article may be used without any inflection: *Manch ein Künstler*, many an artist; *manch großer Mann*.

§ 48. The simple possessives inflect **STRONG** in the plural, and in the singular like the indefinite article:

**SINGULAR.**

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	mein Bruder,	meine Schwester,	mein Buch,
Gen.	meines Bruders,	meiner Schwester,	meines Buchs,
Dat.	meinem Bruder,	meiner Schwester,	meinem Buche,
Acc.	meinen Bruder,	meine Schwester,	mein Buch.

**PLURAL FOR ALL GENDERS.**

Nom.	meine Brüder,
Gen.	meiner Brüder,
Dat.	meinen Brüdern,
Acc.	meine Brüder.

Thus are declined:

sein	} Bruder,	his	} her or their	} brother,	seine	} Schwester,	his	} her or their	} sister.
ihr		our			ihre		our		
unser		your			unsere		your		
euer					eure*				
Ihr					Ihre				

¶ In *unser* and *euer* the final letters are not inflectional endings, but radical, and cannot be dropped in declining them, as it is the case in *dieser* Gen. *dieses*. *Unser* and *euer* form Gen. *unseres* (or *unser*), *eures* (not *unses*, *es*).

— § 49. The possessive pronouns, like ordinary adjectives, may be used predicatively, answering to the English possessive cases *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, *its*, etc. They are then not inflected, the same as other predicative adjectives.

*Dieses Buch ist mein*, this book is mine; *diese Bücher sind dein* (*sein*, *unser*, *euer*†); these books are thine (his, ours, yours).

◀ § 50. Aside from this case, the English possessive forms *mine*, *thine*, etc. are rendered by any of the following three forms of the German possessives:

1) By the ordinary possessives with **STRONG** inflection even in the nominative:

*Ich habe meine Pflicht gethan*, thou *ihre eure*, I have done my duty, do ye yours. — *Das ist nicht dein Vortheil*, aber *es ist meiner*, that is not thy advantage, but it is mine. — *Euer Loos ist leicht*, aber *unsere* ist traurig, your lot is easy, but ours is sad.

\* Instead of *eure* the form *eure* is preferred.

† With the third person plural this form is not used.



2) By placing the definite article before the possessive, which has then WEAK inflection throughout (der, die, das meine, Gen. des meinen, etc.; der, die, das unsre, Gen. des unsren, etc.).

Unser Haus ist alt, das eure ist neu, our house is old, yours is new. Er bedient sich meiner Zimmer hier, und ich bediene mich der seinen dort; he makes use of my rooms here, and I make use of his there.

3) By attaching the termination *ige* to the possessives, and placing the definite article before them. These forms, likewise, decline WEAK (der, die, das meinige, Gen. des, der meinigen; der, die, das seinige; Gen. des seinigen; Plur. die seinigen; der, die, das unsrige\*, eurige, ihrige, etc.).

Während ihr eure Mitbürger verfolgt, beschützten wir die unsrigen, while you persecuted your countrymen, we protected ours. Dies ist mein Schicksal, was wird aber das deinige sein? this is my fate, but what will be thine?

The two forms with the definite article have often conventional significations. Das Meinige, Seinige, etc. (substantively) means my, his, etc. *property*; die Meinigen, Deinen, etc. denote persons who are in some particular connection with the person designated by the pronoun, as his family, his friends, adherents, etc.

### III. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

#### § 51. The cardinal numerals are:

1 eins,	19 neunzehn,
2 zwei,	20 zwanzig,
3 drei,	21 einundzwanzig,
4 vier,	22 zweiundzwanzig,
5 fünf,	23 dreiundzwanzig,
6 sechs,	24 vierundzwanzig,
7 sieben,	25 fünfundzwanzig,
8 acht,	30 dreißig,
9 neun,	40 vierzig,
10 zehn,	50 fünfzig,
11 elf,	60 sechzig,
12 zwölf,	70 siebzig (siebenzig)
13 dreizehn,	80 achtzig,
14 vierzehn,	90 neunzig,
15 fünfzehn,	100 hundert,
16 sechzehn,	101 hundert und eins,
17 siebzehn (siebenzehn),	102 hundert und zwei,
18 achtzehn,	103 hundert und drei,

\* In der unsrige, der eurige the *e* of the possessive stem is dropped.

† The English *a hundred* and *a thousand* are expressed without article in German; but *one hundred*, *one thousand* take the form *Ein hundert*, *Ein tausend*.

200 zwei hundert,  
1,000 tausend,  
1871 tausend acht hundert ein und siebenzig, or achtzehn hundert ein und siebenzig;  
a million, eine Million.

REM.—1. The form *Eins* is used only in counting, or as a neuter when it inflects **STRONG**. Else the numeral *one* is expressed by the indefinite article which has then the emphasis, and is spaced in print, or written with a capital; *einer Frau*, to one woman. If the noun is understood, it has the **STRONG** inflection throughout. *Wie viel Knaben waren dort? Nur einer*; how many boys were there? Only *one*. *Er hatte nicht mehr Bücher als eins (eines)*, he had no more books than *one*.

2. *Both* is expressed by *beide*. If employed with the definite article, which always precedes, it answers the English *the two*, and declines **WEAK**; else **STRONG**: *Die Bücher beider Brüder*, the books of both brothers; *die Bücher der beiden Brüder*, the books of the two brothers. *Beide* forms a neuter singular *Beides*, corresponding to the English *both*, referring to **THINGS IN GENERAL**: *Beides ist richtig*, both is correct.

3. *Zwei* and *drei*, if not preceded by the article or an adjective pronoun, take in the genitive the **STRONG** termination *er*, for instance: *Die Aussage zweier Zeugen*, the deposition of two witnesses. The other cardinal numbers remain unaltered, except that in the dative they sometimes take the termination *en*, if not followed by nouns. *Hundert* and *tausend*, if their nouns are understood, decline **STRONG**, if referring to an indefinite number of hundred or thousand, corresponding to the English *hundreds*, *thousands*. *Er hat oft in einem Tage Tausende verloren*, he has often lost thousands in one day.

§ 52. The ordinal numerals are adjectives, and are derived from the cardinal numerals by the addition of the syllable *te* or *ste*. From two to nineteen is added *te*, the rest take *ste*.

Der erste, the first;	der zwanzigste, the twentieth;
der zweite, the second;	der ein und zwanzigste, the twenty-first;
der dritte, the third;	der dreißigste, the thirtieth;
der vierte, the fourth;	der fünfzigste, the fiftieth;
der fünfte, the fifth;	der hundertste, the hundredth;
der achte, the eight;	der tausendste, the thousandth.
der zwölfte, the twelfth;	

REM.—1. The ordinals generally decline **WEAK**. But they decline **STRONG**, if neither the definite article nor an inflected pronominal adjective stand before them: *Erster Band*, volume first; *sein dritter Sohn*, his third son.

2. To the class of the ordinals belongs the interrogative numeral *der wievielte*? (with weak inflection), corresponding to *which* (in order)? if an ordinal numeral is expected as answer. It must be generally expressed in English by circumlocution: *Der wievielte Band ist dies?* What is the number

of this volume? It is used substantively to ask for the date: *Der wievielte ist heute?* What day of the month is to-day?

3. From the ordinals are formed 1) the **ORDINAL ADVERBS** by the ending **ens**: *erstens*, firstly, in the first place; *zweitens*, in the second place, secondly; *drittens*, in the third place, etc. 2) the **FRACTIONS** by the ending *el*, being of neuter gender if used substantively: *ein Drittel*, one third; *ein Viertel*, one fourth; *ein Zwanzigstel*, one twentieth. The numeral *zweite* does not form a fraction; instead of it the word *halb* is used. If *halb* is preceded by the indefinite article\*, it is declined like *ein jeder*, but preceded by the definite article it declines **WEAK** (*ein halbes Pfund*, half a pound; *ein halber Fuß*, half a foot; *das halbe Regiment*, half the regiment). If used as an abstract fraction it is not declined (*zwanzig und ein halb*, twenty and one half). Instead of *ein und ein halb* the expression *anderthalb* is often used. Thus *drittehalb*, two and a half; *vierttehalb*, three and a half, etc.

§ 53. The other numerals are:

1. *Multiplicative Numerals.*

<i>Einfach</i> , single;	<i>zehnfach</i> , tenfold;
<i>doppelt</i> or <i>zweifach</i> , double;	<i>hundertfach</i> , a hundredfold;
<i>dreifach</i> , treble;	<i>tausendfach</i> , a thousandfold.

They are ordinary adjectives, and decline like these.

2. *Cardinal Adverbs.*

<i>Einmal</i> , once;	<i>viermal</i> , four times;
<i>zweimal</i> , twice;	<i>hundertmal</i> , a hundred times;
<i>dreimal</i> , thrice;	<i>tausendmal</i> , a thousand times.

3. *The Indeclinable Numerals in lei.*

<i>Einerlei</i> , of one kind;	<i>mancherlei</i> , of several kinds;
<i>zweierlei</i> , of two kinds;	<i>vielerlei</i> , of many kinds;
<i>dreierlei</i> , of three kinds;	<i>allerlei</i> , of all kinds.

They are formed by adding *erlei* to the cardinals and indefinite pronouns, expressing quantity.

IV. ORDINARY ADJECTIVES.

§ 54. Ordinary Adjectives decline **WEAK** if they are preceded and qualified by the **DEFINITE** article, or any adjective pronoun or numeral that has an inflectional ending:

**SINGULAR.**

*Masculine.*

Nom.	<i>der gute Mann</i> , the good man;
Gen.	<i>des guten Mannes</i> , of the good man;
Dat.	<i>dem guten Manne</i> , to the good man;
Acc.	<i>den guten Mann</i> , the good man.

---

\* *Halb* never takes its articles or determinative words after it.

*Feminine.*

Nom.	die gute Frau, the good woman;
Gen.	der guten Frau, of the good woman;
Dat.	der guten Frau, to the good woman;
Acc.	die gute Frau, the good woman.

*Neuter.*

Nom.	das gute Kind, the good child;
Gen.	des guten Kindes, of the good child;
Dat.	dem guten Kinde, to the good child;
Acc.	das gute Kind, the good child.

PLURAL FOR ALL GENDERS.

Nom.	die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder;
Gen.	der guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder;
Dat.	den guten Männern, Frauen, Kindern;
Acc.	die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder.

Thus are declined adjectives preceded by the interrogative *welcher*, by the demonstratives *dieser*, *jener*, *solcher*, *derselbe*, *derjenige*; by the indefinites *jeder*, *aller*, *einiger*, *etlicher*, *mancher*, *vieler*, by the ordinals (*der erste* etc.), the numeral *beide* and by those cases of *ein*, *kein* and the possessives that have inflectional endings, as: *meinem guten Freunde*; *unsere guten Nachbarn*; *keiner guten Männer*, etc.

REM.—After the plurals of the indefinite *viele*, *alle*, *mehrere*, *einige*, *etliche*, *manche*, and the following adjective generally declines **STRONG**, although these indefinites are themselves inflected by strong endings: *Alle gute Männer* (Gen. *aller guter Männer*); *mehrere große Künstler*; *viele berühmte Feldherren*, etc. Sometimes, however, this rule is not observed, and the adjectives are found with **WEAK** inflection after these words.

§ 55. Adjectives not qualified by the definite article or an adjective pronoun or numeral with strong endings, decline **STRONG**:

SINGULAR.

*Masculine.*

Nom.	guter Wein, good wine;
Gen.	gutes Weines, of good wine;
Dat.	gutem Weine, to good wine;
Acc.	guten Wein, good wine.

*Feminine.*

Nom.	frische Milch, fresh milk;
Gen.	frischer Milch, of fresh milk;
Dat.	frischer Milch, to fresh milk;
Acc.	frische Milch, fresh milk.

*Neuter.*

Nom.	schwarzes Tuch, black cloth;
Gen.	schwarzes Tuches, of black cloth;
Dat.	schwarzem Tuche, to black cloth;
Acc.	schwarzes Tuch, black cloth.

PLURAL FOR ALL GENDERS.

Nom.	schöne Blumen, fine flowers;
Gen.	schöner Blumen, of fine flowers;
Dat.	schönen Blumen, to fine flowers;
Acc.	schöne Blumen, fine flowers.

REM.—1. Hence adjectives inflect strong, 1) if they are immediately preceded by prepositions: Mit großem Fleiße, with great diligence; 2) if they are preceded by those forms of the indefinite article or of the possessives that have no endings: ein großer Mann, a great man; mein lieber Bruder, my dear brother; unser gutes Kind, our good child; 3) if they are preceded by any pronominal adjective or numeral without inflectional endings: mehr gute Bücher, more good books; viel guter Wein, much good wine; manch junges Kind, many a young child; zwei schöne Pferde, two fine horses; 4) if the pronominal adjectives which precede them are not in the same case with them: dessen großer Irrthum, whose great error.

2. It is now customary to give to the genitive singular of the masculine and neuter of adjectives the weak ending *en*, even if the adjective should decline strong according to the general rules: Eine Menge guten Weins (instead of: gutes Weins), a quantity of good wine; guten Muths, of good cheer (instead of: gutes Muths). But some authors reject this rule, and genitives with the strong ending *es* can not be considered as faulty.

3. Those pronominal adjectives that may or may not be inflected, require the strong inflection of the following adjective, if they take no inflection; but if they are themselves inflected, the following adjective declines weak: Viel guter Wein, or vieler gute Wein; vieles Gute, or viel Gutes (much good); manch junges Kind, or manches junge Kind (many a young child).

4. Since the indefinite article, the possessives, and the indefinite *kein* take no endings in the nom. sing. of the masculine and neuter, and the accusative singular of the neuter, but decline their other cases strong, the following adjective must always decline strong in the nom. sing. masc., and nom. and accus. singular neuter, but weak in all other cases. Some have called this the "mixed declension" with the following scheme:

SINGULAR.

*Masculine.*

Nom.	ein ganzer Tag, a whole day;
Gen.	eines ganzen Tages, of a whole day;
Dat.	einem ganzen Tage, to a whole day;
Acc.	einen ganzen Tag, a whole day.

*Feminine.*

Nom.	eine ganze Nacht, a whole night;
Gen.	einer ganzen Nacht, of a whole night;
Dat.	einer ganzen Nacht, to a whole night;
Acc.	eine ganze Nacht, a whole night.

*Neuter.*

Nom.	ein ganzes Jahr, a whole year;
Gen.	eines ganzen Jahres, of a whole year;
Dat.	einem ganzen Jahre, to a whole year;
Acc.	ein ganzes Jahr, a whole year.

*Plural.*

Nom.	meine guten Freunde, my good friends;
Gen.	meiner guten Freunde, of my good friends;
Dat.	meinen guten Freunden, to my good friends;
Acc.	meine guten Freunde, my good friends.

V. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 56. The comparative of an adjective is formed by adding the termination *er*, and the superlative by adding the termination *ste*, as:

Reich, rich;	reicher, richer;	der reichste, the richest;
schön, fine;	schöner, finer;	der schönste, the finest;
mild, mild;	milder, milder;	der mildeste*, the mildest.

The radical vowel of the positive is softened in the comparative and superlative: *a* changes into *ä*, *o* into *ö*, *u* into *ü*, as:

Alt, old;	älter, older;	der älteste, the oldest;
groß, great;	größer, greater;	der größte, the greatest;
jung, young;	jünger, younger;	der jüngste, the youngest

The following Adjectives are exceptions:

Wahr, true;	schät, soft, slow;
schlank, slender;	starg, stingy;
schlaff, lax;	rund, round;
sanft, soft;	bunt, motley;
matt, faint;	stumpf, blunt;
flach, flat;	froh, joyful;
falsch, false;	höf, gracious;
blaß, pale;	roh, raw;
glatt, slippery;	toll, mad;
gerade, straight;	voll, full,

\* Instead of *ste*, we add *este*, when euphony demands it.

and the Adjectives ending in *bar*, *haft*, and *sam*, as: *danfbar*, grateful; *danfbarer*, more grateful; *boßhaft*, malicious; *boßhafter*, more malicious; *fparfam*, economical; *fparfamer*, more economical.

§ 57. The following Adjectives are irregular:

Gut, good;	better, better;	der beſte, the best;
nah, near;	näher, nearer;	der nächſte, the next;
hoch, high;	höher, higher;	der höchſte, the highest;
viel, much;	mehr, more;	der meifte, or mehrſte, the most.

§ 58. Comparatives and superlatives are declined according to the same rules as the adjectives in the positive, as: *der kleine Tiſch*, the small table; *der kleinere Tiſch*, the smaller table; *der kleinſte Tiſch*, the smallest table; *ein kleiner Tiſch*, a little table; *ein kleinerer Tiſch*, a smaller table; *ein ſchönes Buch*, a beautiful book; *ein ſchöneres Buch*, a more beautiful book.

§ 59. Superlatives can generally not be used predicatively without the definite article. In order to render the English predicative superlative without an article, a peculiar adverbial form is used in German, consisting of the preposition *an*, contracted with the dative neuter of the definite article (*am* inst. of *an dem*) and the WEAK form of the superlative: *ſchön*, beautiful, superl. *am ſchönſten*, most beautiful; *kalt*, cold, superl. *am kälteſten*, coldest.

Welches Thier iſt dem Menſchen am treuſten? What beaſt is moſt faithful to man?

Wann ſind die Menſchen am glücklichſten? When are men happieſt?

Mein Freund iſt am zufriedeſten, wenn er allein iſt, my friend is moſt pleaſed when he is alone.

REM.—If a predicative ſuperlative is connected with the article, it agrees in gender, number, and caſe with the ſubject. But if the ſuperlative is qualified by a partitive noun which is logically the predicate, it agrees only in caſe and number with the ſubject, but in gender with the partitive noun:

Dieſe Stunde war die ſchönſte meines Lebens, this hour was the moſt beautiful of my life.

Alte Soldaten ſind nicht immer die tapferſten, old ſoldiers are not always the braveſt.

Der Mord iſt das größte aller Verbrechen, murder is the greateſt of all crimes.

## CHAPTER V.

### THE VERB.

#### I. PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

§ 60. German verbs have four moods: the Indicative, the Subjunctive, the Conditional, and the Imperative.

The indicative mood has two simple tenses, as:

Present Tense: *ich lobe*, I praise;

Imperfect Tense: *ich lobte*, I praised.

All other tenses are formed by means of the auxiliary verbs.

Perfect Tense: *ich habe gelobt*, I have praised;

Pluperfect Tense: *ich hatte gelobt*, I had praised;

First Future Tense: *ich werde loben*, I shall praise;

Second Future Tense: *ich werde gelobt haben*, I shall have praised.

The subjunctive mood has the same tenses as the Indicative. The conditional mood has two tenses, the Present or the First Conditional, and the Past or Second Conditional.

§ 61. The infinitive of all German verbs terminates in *en* or *n*\*. By taking off this termination we find the stem of the verb, as: *schreib* is the stem of the verb *schreiben*, to write; *sag*, the stem of the verb *sagen*, to say; *änder* is the stem of the verb *ändern*, to change.

§ 62. The German verbs are divided into **WEAK** and **STRONG** verbs. **WEAK** verbs are those the imperfect of which is formed by the ending *te*, without affecting the stem, as: *loben*, imperf. *ich lobte*; *sagen*, imperf. *sagte*. **STRONG** verbs are those which form their imperfect without ending by a change of the radical vowel, as: *geben*, to give; imperf. *ich gab*; *sterben*, to die; imperf. *ich starb*; *schlagen*, to strike; imperf. *ich schlug*.

#### II. CONJUGATION OF WEAK VERBS.

§ 63. The present tense of weak verbs is formed by the following termination, which are attached to the stem:

Indicative. Sing. 1. —e,	Subjunctive. Sing. 1. —e,
2. —est,	2. —est,
3. —et,	3. —e,

---

\* *Sein* (to be), *thun* (to do), and verbs with stems in *er* and *el* take only *n* as ending, as *bette(n)*, to beg; *vermindern*, to diminish.



Plur. 1. —en,  
2. —et,  
3. —en,

Plur. 1. —en,  
2. —et,  
3. —en.

The imperfect has the same endings in both indicative and subjunctive:

Sing. 1. —ete,  
2. —etest,  
3. —ete,

Plur. 1. —eten,  
2. —etet,  
3. —eten.

The imperative and the two participles are formed by the following endings:

Imperative. Sing. —e,  
Plur. —et,

Present Participle. —end,

Past Participle. —et, (in connection with the prefix ge).

REM.—1. In the PRESENT INDICATIVE, IMPERATIVE AND PAST PARTICIPLE the vowel *e* of the ending, when followed by *st* or *t*, is generally dropped, except in those verbs that cannot be conveniently pronounced without it. These are the verbs with stems ending in *b*, *t*, (*th*), *gn* and *chn*, as: *reden* (*redest*, *redet*); *antworten* (*antwordest*, *antwortet*); *begegnen* (*begegnest*, *begegnet*); *rechnen* (*rechnest*, *rechnet*); but *loben*, *lobst*, *lobt*; *sagen*, *sagst*, *sagt*; *lernen*, *lernst*, *lernt*. Verbs ending in a sibilant (*s*, *ß*, *sch*, *z*) retain *e* before *st* only: *reisen*, *reigest*, *reist*; *mischen*, *mischest*, *mischt*; *verleihen*, *verleiest*, *verleiht*. The dropping of the *e* does not apply to the subjunctive present: *loben*, *lobest*, *lobet*; *sagen*, *sagest*, *saget*, except in verbs ending in *ern* and *eln*, which drop the *e* of the ending in *all* forms, unless it be final: *ich ändere*, *du änderst*, *er ändert*, *wir ändern* (both for indicative and subjunctive).

2. In the imperfect the *e*, preceding the final consonants is *always* kept, but *initial e* of the ending is dropped in all persons, except in verbs with stems in *b*, *t*, *gn* and *chn* (*ich lobte*; but *ich rebete*).

3. The prefix *ge* of the past participle (*gelobt*) is generally called the AUGMENT. It is used in all verbs, except those that are not accented on the first syllable. The verbs which do not take such an accent, and hence drop the augment, are these: 1) Verbs with the foreign ending *iren* or *ieren*, as: *regieren* (part. *regiert*, not *geregirt*); *marschiren* (*marschirt*); 2) verbs with the prefixes *be*, *ge*, *ent*, *emp*, *er*, *ver*, *zer* (see § 82), as: *besuchen*, part. *befucht*; *gehören*, part. *gehört*; *zerstören*, part. *zerstört*; 3) most compounds with the prepositions *durch*, *unter*, *über*, *um*, *hinter*, *wider*, and the adverb *voll* (see § 82), as: *unterrichten*, part. *unterrichtet*; *umringen*, part. *umringt*; *widerlegen*, part. *widerlegt*; *vollenden*, part. *vollendet*. Verbs compounded with other prepositions or adverbs take their augment between the preposition and the simple verb: *anklagen*, part. *angeklagt*; *ausreichen*, part. *ausgereicht*. (See § 83).

# MODEL OF CONJUGATION OF WEAK VERBS.

a) dropping the *e*.

Infinitive: loben, to praise.

<i>Indicative Mood.</i>		<i>Subjunctive Mood.</i>
PRESENT TENSE.		
Sing.	1. ich lobe, I praise, I do praise, I am praising	ich lobe, I praise*
	2. du lobst, thou praisest, dost praise, etc.	du lobest,
	3. er lobt, he praises, does praise, etc.	er lobe,
Plur.	1. wir loben, we praise, etc.	wir loben,
	2. ihr lobt, you praise, etc.	ihr lobet,
	3. sie loben, they praise, etc.	sie loben.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Indicative and Subjunctive.*

Sing.	1. ich lobte, I praised, I did praise, I was praising,	
	2. du lobtest, thou praisedst, thou didst praise, etc.	
	3. er lobte, he praised, etc.	
Plur.	1. wir lobten, we praised, etc.	
	2. ihr lobtet, you praised, etc.	
	3. sie lobten, they praised, etc.	
Imperative.	Sing. lobe, praise (thou), Plur. lobt, praise (you),	Pres. Participle. lobend, praising, Past Participle. gelobt, praised.

b) retaining the *e*.

Infinitive: reden, to speak.

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>
PRESENT TENSE.		
Sing.	1. ich rede, I speak, I do speak, I am speaking,	ich rede,
	2. du redest, thou speakest, etc.	du redest,
	3. er redet, he speaks, etc.	er rede,
Plur.	1. wir reden, we speak, etc.	wir reden,
	2. ihr redet, you speak, etc.	ihr redet,
	3. sie reden, they speak, etc.	sie reden.

\* The translation of the subjunctive mood is generally not different from the indicative, although it must often be rendered by one of the forms of the potential. See the syntax §105. In our paradigms the subjunctive is given without translation.

† If the third person is used for address, the present subjunctive is used with the personal pronoun after the verb: loben Sie, praise (you).


IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Indicative and Subjunctive.*

Sing. 1. *ich rebete*, I spoke, did speak, was speaking  
 2. *du rebetest*, thou spoked, etc.  
 3. *er rebete*, he spoke, etc.

Plur. 1. *wir rebeten*, we spoke, etc.  
 2. *ihr rebetet*, you spoke, etc.  
 3. *sie rebeten*, they spoke, etc.

Imperative. Sing. *rede*, speak (thou)      Pres. Participle. *redend*, speaking  
 Plur. *redet*, speak (you)      Past Participle. *geredet*, spoken.

 Verbs, to be conjugated for practice: *sagen*, to say; *glauben*, to believe; *wünschen*, to wish; *scherzen*, to jest; *schaden*, to hurt; *ändern*, to change; *verirren*, to frustrate, *marschieren*, to march; *unterrichten*, to instruct.

§ 64. Irregular weak verbs. The following weak verbs deviate more or less from the above scheme:

1. The auxiliary *haben* in many of its forms drops the consonant *b*, or changes it into *t*, and softens the radical vowel in the imperfect subjunctive. See the paradigm page 41.

2. The potential verbs *wollen*, *sollen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *dürfen*, *wissen* are conjugated by a peculiar intermixture of strong and weak forms. (See the paradigms page 55.)

3. The verbs *brennen* (to burn), *kennen* (to know), *nennen* (to name), *rennen* (to run), *senden* (to send), *wenden* (to turn), change their radical vowel *e* into *a* in the imperfect indicative and past participle (*brannte*, *kannte*, *nannte*, etc., *gebrannt*, *gekannt*, etc.). *Senden* and *wenden* drop, moreover, the *e* of the imperfect indicative and past participle (against § 63. REM. 1): *sandte*, *wandte*; *gesandt*, *gewandt*.\* All these verbs restore the original vowel *e* in the imperfect subjunctive (*brennte*, *kannte*, etc., *sendete*, *wendete*).

4. *Bringen* (to bring) and *denken* (to think) make the imperfects *brachte*, *dachte*; Imperf. subj. *brächte*, *dächte*; Past. part. *gebracht*, *gedacht*.

III. CONJUGATION OF STRONG VERBS.

§ 65. There are about a hundred and seventy-five strong verbs in modern German†, some of which, however, admit of

\* *Senden* and *wenden* sometimes form their imperfects or past participles regularly (*sendete*, *gesendet*).

† A list of all strong verbs is contained in the Appendix. Verbs not occurring in that list are weak. The present language does not form any more strong verbs; but all verbs newly introduced in the language are weak verbs by necessity.

both the **STRONG** and the **WEAK** conjugation, as for instance *rufen*, imperfect *riefte* or *rief*. Their conjugation varies from that of the weak verbs in the following particulars:

1. Their imperfect indicative in the first pers. sing. takes no ending, and always changes the radical vowel of the infinitive (*kommen*, imperf. *ich kam*).

2. Their past participle takes the ending *en* and a radical vowel differing either from the infinitive, or from the imperfect, or from both (see the formulas in the remark).

3. The imperfect indicative has the following scheme of personal endings:

Sing.	1. —	Plur.	1. <i>en</i>
	2. <i>st</i> ( <i>est</i> )		2. <i>t</i> ( <i>et</i> )
	3. —		3. <i>en</i> .

4. The imperfect subjunctive adds the endings of the present subjunctive of weak verbs, and softens the radicals *a*, *o*, *u* into *ä*, *ö*, *ü* (indic. *ich käme*; subj. *ich käme, du kämest*, etc.).

5. The second and third pers. sing. of the present indicative soften the radical *a* into *ä*, and sometimes *o* into *ö* (*schlagen*, *schlägst*, *schlägt*), and mostly change the radical *e* into *i* (*ie*) *sehen*, *siehst*, *sieht*.

6. The singular of the imperative undergoes the same change of *e* into *i*, but not the softening of the radical vowel, which never takes place in the imperative. It drops the ending *e* whenever it changes its vowel (*sehen*, imper. *sieh*; *sterben*, imper. *stirb*).

7. The remainder of the present indicative, the whole present subjunctive and the present participle are always formed as in the weak verbs.

**RM.**— The vowel-changes of the imperfect and participle cannot be reduced to a rule, but must be learned by the appended list of strong verbs. The formulas of the vowel-changes are these:

*Present (Inf.). Imperfect. Participle.*

<i>a</i>	<i>i</i> ( <i>ie</i> )	<i>a</i>	( <i>schlafen</i> , <i>schief</i> , <i>geschlafen</i> .)
<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>a</i>	( <i>tragen</i> , <i>trug</i> , <i>getragen</i> .)
<i>e</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>e</i>	( <i>sehen</i> , <i>sah</i> , <i>gesehen</i> .)
<i>e</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>o</i>	( <i>sterben</i> , <i>starb</i> , <i>gestorben</i> .)
<i>e</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	( <i>sechten</i> , <i>socht</i> , <i>gesechten</i> .)
<i>i</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>	( <i>singen</i> , <i>sang</i> , <i>gesungen</i> .)
<i>ie</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	( <i>fliegen</i> , <i>flog</i> , <i>geflogen</i> .)
<i>ei</i>	<i>i</i> ( <i>ie</i> )	<i>i</i> ( <i>ie</i> )	( <i>scheinen</i> , <i>schien</i> , <i>geschienen</i> .)

Some few verbs (as *kommen*, *bitten*, *stoßen*, *rufen*) fit none of these formulas.

## § 66. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE STRONG FORM.

These are:

1. *sein* and *werden*, the former of which makes its tenses from several different roots, while the latter has two different forms for the imperfect ind. sing., (*wurde* and *ward*). See the paradigms page 43, 44, 45, 46.

2. *t h u n*, *to do*, repeats the initial consonant as final letter of the imperfect (that), a relic of former reduplication. Moreover, it drops the *e* in the endings of the present indicative in all persons but the first singular (*thue*, *thust*, *thut*, *thun*, *thut*, *thun*).

3. *stehen* and *gehen* form their imperfects and participles from other roots (imperf. *stand* [*stund*], *ging*; part. *gestanden*, *gegangen*). They do not change their radical *e* in the present. *Stehen* generally makes *stünde* in imperf. subj.

4. Many verbs belonging to the formula *e, a, o* take in the imperf. subj. the softened vowels *ö* or *ü*, instead of *ä* (*befehlen*, *befahl*, subj. *beföhle*; *sterben*, *starb*, subj. *stürbe*).

Minor irregularities are stated in the list.

### MODEL OF CONJUGATION OF STRONG VERBS.

a) Formula *a, u, a* with softening of the radical.

Infinitive: *schlagen*, to strike.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

#### PRESENT.

- Sing. 1. *ich schlage*, I strike, do strike, I am striking  
 2. *du schlägst*, thou strikest, etc.  
 3. *er schlägt*, he strikes, etc.  
 Plur. 1. *wir schlagen*, we strike, etc.  
 2. *ihr schlagt*, you strike, etc.  
 3. *sie schlagen*, they strike, etc.

- ich schlage*  
*du schlägest*  
*er schlage*  
*wir schlagen*  
*ihr schlaget*  
*sie schlagen.*

#### IMPERFECT.

- Sing. 1. *ich schlug*, I struck, did strike, was striking  
 2. *du schlugst*, thou struckst, etc.  
 3. *er schlug*, he struck, etc.  
 Plur. 1. *wir schlugen*, we struck, etc.  
 2. *ihr schlugt*, you struck, etc.  
 3. *sie schlugen*, they struck, etc.

- ich schlüge*  
*du schlügest*  
*er schlüge*  
*wir schlügen*  
*ihr schlüget*  
*sie schlügen.*

- Imperative. Sing. *schlage*, strike (thou)      Pres. Participle. *schlagend*, striking  
 Plur. *schlagt*, strike (you)      Past Participle. *geschlagen*, struck.

b) Formula *e, a, o*, with change of the vowel in the pres. ind.

Infinitive Present: *sterben*, to die.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

#### PRESENT.

- Sing. 1. *ich sterbe*, I die  
 2. *du stirbst*, thou diest  
 3. *er stirbt*, he dies  
 Plur. 1. *wir sterben*, we die  
 2. *ihr sterbt*, you die  
 3. *sie sterben*, they die

- ich sterbe*  
*du sterbest*  
*er sterbe*  
*wir sterben*  
*ihr sterbet*  
*sie sterben.*

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<b>IMPERFECT.</b>		
Sing.	1. <i>ich starb</i> , I died 2. <i>du starbst</i> , thou diedst 3. <i>er starb</i> , he died	<i>ich stürbe</i> <i>du stürbest</i> <i>er stürbe</i>
Plur.	1. <i>wir starben</i> , we died 2. <i>ihr starbt</i> , you died 3. <i>sie starben</i> , they died	<i>wir stürben</i> <i>ihr stürbet</i> <i>sie stürben.</i>
Imperative.	Sing. <i>stirb</i> , die (thou) <i>sterbt</i> , die (you)	Pres. Participle. <i>sterbend</i> , dying Past Participle. <i>gestorben</i> , died.

#### IV. FORMATION OF THE COMPOUND TENSES.

§ 67. Compound tenses are those which are formed by means of an auxiliary as finite (conjugated) verb, and with the past participle or the infinitive of the verb proper. There are the following compound tenses in German: 1) perfect; 2) pluperfect; 3) first future; 4) second future, all of which have an indicative and subjunctive mood; 5) and 6) the first and second tenses of the conditional mood. Besides these, there is a perfect infinitive.

§ 68. As auxiliaries of the ACTIVE VOICE are used the present and imperfect tenses of the verbs *haben*, to have, *sein*, to be, and *werden*, which as an ordinary verb means *to become*, but as an auxiliary has different meanings.

REM.—The present and imperfect tenses of the auxiliaries *haben*, *sein* and *werden* are these:

<i>Present Indicative.</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive.</i>
<i>ich habe</i> , I have	<i>ich habe</i> , I have
<i>ich bin</i> , I am	<i>ich sei</i> , I be
<i>ich werde</i> , I shall (will)	<i>ich werde</i> , I shall
<i>Imperfect Indicative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>
<i>ich hatte</i> , I had	<i>ich hätte</i> , I had
<i>ich war</i> , I was	<i>ich wäre</i> , I were
<i>ich wurde</i> , —*	<i>ich würde</i> , I should or would.

§ 69. The auxiliaries *haben* or *sein* are used for the formation of the perfect and pluperfect tenses. The perfect is combined of the PRESENT tense of *haben* or *sein*, and the past participle of the verb proper; the pluperfect is composed of the IMPERFECT of *haben* or *sein*, and the past participle of the verb proper.

\* The indicative imperfect *ich wurde* does not occur as auxiliary of the active voice; but it occurs as auxiliary of the passive (see below).

**REM.** The regular auxiliary is *haben*, which is used to form the perfect and pluperfect tenses active of all transitive, almost all intransitive, all reflexive and many neuter verbs. But with the auxiliary *sein* are formed all neuter verbs that denote a passing either from one *place* or from one *state* to another, as *kommen*, to come; *gehen*, to go; *fallen*, to fall; *sterben*, to die; *erkranken*, to fall sick; *bersten*, to burst. Besides these the verbs *bleiben*, to remain, *sein*, to be (see the paradigms), and the intransitives *folgen*, to follow, and *begegnen*, to meet, are conjugated with *sein*.

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES.

##### a) With the auxiliary *haben*.

Perfect Infinitive, *gelobt (zu) haben*, (to) have praised.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

##### PERFECT.

*ich habe gelobt*, I have praised

*ich habe gelobt*, I have praised.

##### PLUPERFECT.

*ich hatte gelobt*, I had praised

*ich hätte gelobt*, I had praised.

##### b) With the auxiliary *sein*.

Perfect Infinitive, *gekommen (zu) sein*, (to) have come.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

##### PERFECT.

*ich bin gekommen*, I have come

*ich sei gekommen*, I have come.

##### PLUPERFECT.

*ich war gekommen*, I had come

*ich wäre gekommen*, I had come.

§ 70. The auxiliary *werden* occurs as auxiliary of the two futures, and the two tenses of the conditional mood. The first future is formed by the present tense of *werden* and the PRESENT infinitive of the verb proper; the second future by the present of *werden*, and the PERFECT infinitive of the verb proper.

The first conditional is formed by the imperfect subjunctive of *werden* and the PRESENT infinitive of the verb proper; the second conditional is formed by the imperfect subjunctive of *werden* and the PERFECT infinitive of the verb proper.

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE TWO FUTURES AND CONDITIONALS.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive\*.*

##### FIRST FUTURE.

*ich werde loben*, I shall praise

*ich werde loben*, (that) I should praise

\* The conjugation of the future indicative in some of its persons is the same as that of the subjunctive; in other persons it is different from that of the subjunctive (see the Paradigms). The subjunctive of these tenses is only used in dependent clauses, especially such as are introduced by *daß* (that). It is always translated by the English potential. The conditional which is likewise rendered by the English potential may be often substituted for it. (See the syntax.)

SECOND FUTURE.

*Indicative.* ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have praised.

*Subjunctive.* ich werde gelobt haben, (that) I should have praised.

*First Conditional.* ich würde loben, I should (would) praise.

*Second Conditional.* ich würde gelobt haben, I should (would) have praised.

REM. — If the verb is conjugated with sein, the second future and second conditional, of course, take perfect infinitives formed with sein: SECOND FUTURE. ich werde gekommen sein, I shall have come. SECOND CONDITIONAL. ich würde gekommen sein, I should (would) have come.

PARADIGMS.

1) haben, to have.

Present Infinitive.	(zu) haben, to have.
Perfect Infinitive.	gehabt (zu) haben, to have had.
Present Participle.	habend, having.
Past Participle.	gehabt, had.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

	PRESENT.	
Sing. 1. ich habe, I have	ich habe, I have (may have), etc.	
2. du hast, thou hast	du habest	
3. er hat, he has	er habe	
Plur. 1. wir haben, we have	wir haben	
2. ihr habt, you have	ihr habet	
3. sie haben, they have	sie haben.	

IMPERFECT.

Sing. 1. ich hatte, I had	ich hätte, I had (would have), etc.
2. du hättest, thou hadst	du hättest
3. er hatte, he had	er hätte
Plur. 1. wir hatten, we had	wir hätten
2. ihr hättet, you had	ihr hättet
3. sie hatten, they had	sie hätten.

PERFECT.

Sing. 1. ich habe gehabt, I have had	ich habe gehabt, I have had, etc.
2. du hast gehabt, thou hast had	du habest gehabt
3. er hat gehabt, he has had	er habe gehabt
Plur. 1. wir haben gehabt, we have had	wir haben gehabt
2. ihr habt gehabt, you have had	ihr habet gehabt
3. sie haben gehabt, they have had	sie haben gehabt.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. 1. ich hatte gehabt, I had had	ich hätte gehabt, I had had, etc.
2. du hättest gehabt, thou hadst had	du hättest gehabt
3. er hatte gehabt, he had had	er hätte gehabt
Plur. 1. wir hatten gehabt, we had had	wir hätten gehabt
3. ihr hättet gehabt, you had had	ihr hättet gehabt
2. sie hatten gehabt, they had had	sie hätten gehabt.



*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

FIRST FUTURE.

- Sing. 1. ich werde\* haben, I shall have  
 2. du wirst haben, thou wilt have  
 3. er wird haben, he will have  
 Plur. 1. wir werden haben, we shall have  
 2. ihr werdet haben, you will have  
 3. sie werden haben, they will have

- ich werde haben, I should  
 du werdest haben [have  
 er werde haben  
 wir werden haben  
 ihr werdet haben  
 sie werden haben.

SECOND FUTURE.

- Sing. 1. ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had  
 2. du wirst gehabt haben, thou wilt have had  
 3. er wird gehabt haben, he will have had  
 Plur. 1. wir werden gehabt haben, we shall have had  
 2. ihr werdet gehabt haben, you will have had  
 3. sie werden gehabt haben, they will have had

- ich werde gehabt haben  
 du werdest gehabt haben  
 er werde gehabt haben  
 wir werden gehabt haben  
 ihr werdet gehabt haben  
 sie werden gehabt haben.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

- Sing. 1. ich würde haben, I should have  
 2. du würdest haben, thou wouldst have  
 3. er würde haben, he would have  
 Plur. 1. wir würden haben, we should have  
 2. ihr würdet haben, you would have  
 3. sie würden haben, they would have.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

- Sing. 1. ich würde gehabt haben, I should have had  
 2. du würdest gehabt haben, thou wouldst have had  
 3. er würde gehabt haben, he would have had  
 Plur. 1. wir würden gehabt haben, we should have had  
 2. ihr würdet gehabt haben, you would have had  
 3. sie würden gehabt haben, they would have had.

IMPERATIVE.

- Sing. habe (du), have (thou)†  
 Plur. habt (ihr), have (you)  
 [haben Sie, have (you)].

2) sein, to be.

Present Infinitive. (zu) sein, to be.

Perfect Infinitive. gewesen (zu) sein, to *have* been.

Present Participle. *seiend* (very rare), being.

Past Participle. gewesen, been.

\* See the paradigm of *werden*.

† If a command is issued to a third person, the German generally uses the subjunctive: *habe er*, may he have, let him have. Thus in the first person plural: *haben wir*, let us have.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

**PRESENT.**

- Sing. 1. *ich bin*, I am  
 2. *du bist*, thou art  
 3. *er ist*, he is
- Plur. 1. *wir sind*, we are  
 2. *ihr seid*, you are  
 3. *sie sind*, they are

- ich sei*, I (may) be  
*du seiest*  
*er sei*
- wir seien*  
*ihr seiet*  
*sie seien.*

**IMPERFECT.**

- Sing. 1. *ich war*, I was  
 2. *du warst*, thou wast  
 3. *er war*, he was
- Plur. 1. *wir waren*, we were  
 2. *ihr wäret* (wart), you were  
 3. *sie waren*, they were

- ich wäre*, I were  
*du wärest*  
*er wäre*
- wir wären*  
*ihr wäret*  
*sie wären.*

**PERFECT.**

- Sing. 1. *ich bin gewesen*, I have been  
 2. *du bist gewesen*, thou hast been  
 3. *er ist gewesen*, he has been
- Plur. 1. *wir sind gewesen*, we have been  
 2. *ihr seid gewesen*, you have been  
 3. *sie sind gewesen*, they have been

- ich sei gewesen*  
*du seiest gewesen*  
*er sei gewesen*
- wir seien gewesen*  
*ihr seiet gewesen*  
*sie seien gewesen.*

**PLUPERFECT.**

- Sing. 1. *ich war gewesen*, I had been  
 2. *du warst gewesen*, thou hadst been  
 3. *er war gewesen*, he had been
- Plur. 1. *wir waren gewesen*, we had been  
 2. *ihr wäret* (wart) *gewesen*, you had been  
 3. *sie waren gewesen* they had been

- ich wäre gewesen*  
*du wärest gewesen*  
*er wäre gewesen*
- wir wären gewesen*  
*ihr wäret gewesen*  
*sie wären gewesen.*

**FIRST FUTURE.**

- Sing. 1. *ich werde sein*, I shall be  
 2. *du wirst sein*, thou wilt be  
 3. *er wird sein*, he will be
- Plur. 1. *wir werden sein*, we shall be  
 2. *ihr werdet sein*, you will be  
 3. *sie werden sein*, they will be

- ich werde sein*, I should be  
*du werdest sein*  
*er werde sein*
- wir werden sein*  
*ihr werdet sein*  
*sie werden sein.*

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

SECOND FUTURE.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Sing. 1. <i>ich werde gewesen sein, I shall have been</i>   | <i>ich werde gewesen sein, I should have been</i> |
| 2. <i>du wirst gewesen sein, thou wilt have been</i>        | <i>du werdest gewesen sein</i>                    |
| 3. <i>er wird gewesen sein, he will have been</i>           | <i>er werde gewesen sein</i>                      |
| Plur. 1. <i>wir werden gewesen sein, we shall have been</i> | <i>wir werden gewesen sein</i>                    |
| 2. <i>ihr werdet gewesen sein, you will have been</i>       | <i>ihr werdet gewesen sein</i>                    |
| 3. <i>sie werden gewesen sein, they will have been</i>      | <i>sie werden gewesen sein.</i>                   |

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

- Sing. 1. *ich würde sein, I should be*  
 2. *du würdest sein, thou wouldst be*  
 3. *er würde sein, he would be*
- Plur. 1. *wir würden sein, we should be*  
 2. *ihr würdet sein, you would be*  
 3. *sie würden sein, they would be.*

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

- Sing. 1. *ich würde gewesen sein, I should have been*  
 2. *du würdest gewesen sein, thou wouldst have been*  
 3. *er würde gewesen sein, he would have been*
- Plur. 1. *wir würden gewesen sein, we should have been*  
 2. *ihr würdet gewesen sein, you would have been*  
 3. *sie würden gewesen sein, they would have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

- Sing. *sei (du), be (thou)*  
 Plur. *seid (ihr), be (you)*  
*[sein Sie, be (you)].*

3. *werden, to become.*

Present Infinitive. *(zu) werden, to become.*

Perfect Infinitive. *geworden (zu) sein, to have become.*

Present Participle. *werdend, becoming.*

Past Participle. *geworden, become, having become.*

*Indicative.*

**PRESENT.**

- Sing. 1. *ich werde*, I become  
 2. *du wirst*, thou becomest  
 3. *er wird*, he becomes
- Plur. 1. *wir werden*, we become  
 2. *ihr werdet*, you become  
 3. *sie werden*, they become

**IMPERFECT.**

- Sing. 1. *ich wurde (ich ward)*, I became  
 2. *du wurdest (du wardst)*, thou becamest  
 3. *er wurde (er ward)*, he became
- Plur. 1. *wir wurden*, we became  
 2. *ihr wurdet*, you became  
 3. *sie wurden*, they became

**PERFECT.**

- Sing. 1. *ich bin geworden*, I have become  
 2. *du bist geworden*, thou hast become  
 3. *er ist geworden*, he has become
- Plur. 1. *wir sind geworden*, we have become  
 2. *ihr seid geworden*, you have become  
 3. *sie sind geworden*, they have become

**PLUPERFECT.**

- Sing. 1. *ich war geworden*, I had become  
 2. *du warst geworden*, thou hadst become  
 3. *er war geworden*, he had become
- Plur. 1. *wir waren geworden*, we had become  
 2. *ihr waret geworden*, you had become  
 3. *sie waren geworden*, they had become

**FIRST FUTURE.**

- Sing. 1. *ich werde werden*, I shall become  
 2. *du wirst werden*, thou wilt become  
 3. *er wird werden*, he will become
- Plur. 1. *wir werden werden*, we shall become  
 2. *ihr werdet werden*, you will become  
 3. *sie werden werden*, they will become

*Subjunctive.*

- ich werde*, I become  
 (may become)  
*du werdest*  
*er werde*
- wir werden*  
*ihr werdet*  
*sie werden.*

- ich würde*  
*du würdest*  
*er würde*
- wir würden*  
*ihr würdet*  
*sie würden.*

- ich sei geworden*  
*du seiest geworden*  
*er sei geworden*
- wir seien geworden*  
*ihr seiet geworden*  
*sie seien geworden.*

- ich wäre geworden*  
*du wärest geworden*  
*er wäre geworden*
- wir wären geworden*  
*ihr wäret geworden*  
*sie wären geworden.*

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

**SECOND FUTURE.**

Sing. 1. ich werde geworden sein, I shall have become	ich werde geworden sein
2. du wirst geworden sein, thou wilt have become	du werdest geworden sein
3. er wird geworden sein, he will have become	er werde geworden sein
Plur. 1. wir werden geworden sein, we shall have become	wir werden geworden sein
2. ihr werdet geworden sein, you will have become	ihr werdet geworden sein
3. sie werden geworden sein, they will have become	sie werden geworden sein.

**FIRST CONDITIONAL.**

Sing. 1. ich würde werden, I should become
2. du würdest werden, thou wouldst become
3. er würde werden, he would become
Plur. 1. wir würden werden, we should become
2. ihr würdet werden, you would become
3. sie würden werden, they would become.

**SECOND CONDITIONAL.**

Sing. 1. ich würde geworden sein, I should have become
2. du würdest geworden sein, thou wouldst have become
3. er würde geworden sein, he would have become
Plur. 1. wir würden geworden sein, we should have become
2. ihr würdet geworden sein, you would have become
3. sie würden geworden sein, they would have become.

**IMPERATIVE.**

Sing. werde (du), become (thou)
Plur. werdet (ihr), become (you)
[werden Sie, become (you)].

**4) Active Voice of the Weak Verb.**

Present Infinitive.	(zu) loben, to praise.
Perfect Infinitive.	gelobt (zu) haben, to have praised.
Present Participle.	lobend, praising.
Past Participle.	gelobt, praised, having been praised.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

**PRESENT.**

- Sing. 1. ich lobe, I praise  
 2. du lobst, thou praisest  
 3. er lobt, he praises
- Plur. 1. wir loben, we praise  
 2. ihr lobt, you praise  
 3. sie loben, they praise

- ich lobe  
 du lobest  
 er lobe  
 wir loben  
 ihr lobet  
 sie loben.

**IMPERFECT.**

- Sing. 1. ich lobte, I praised  
 2. du lobtest, thou praisedst  
 3. er lobte, he praised
- Plur. 1. wir lobten, we praised  
 2. ihr lobtet, you praised  
 3. sie lobten, they praised

- ich lobte  
 du lobtest  
 er lobte  
 wir lobten  
 ihr lobtet  
 sie lobten.

**PERFECT.**

- Sing. 1. ich habe gelobt, I have praised  
 2. du hast gelobt  
 3. er hat gelobt
- Plur. 1. wir haben gelobt  
 2. ihr habt gelobt  
 3. sie haben gelobt

- ich habe gelobt  
 du habest gelobt  
 er habe gelobt  
 wir haben gelobt  
 ihr habet gelobt  
 sie haben gelobt.

**PLUPERFECT.**

- Sing. 1. ich hatte gelobt\*, I had praised  
 2. du hättest gelobt  
 3. er hatte gelobt
- Plur. 1. wir hatten gelobt  
 2. ihr hättet gelobt  
 3. sie hatten gelobt

- ich hätte gelobt  
 du hättest gelobt  
 er hätte gelobt  
 wir hätten gelobt  
 ihr hättet gelobt  
 sie hätten gelobt.

**FIRST FUTURE.**

- Sing. 1. ich werde loben, I shall or will praise  
 2. du wirst loben  
 3. er wird loben
- Plur. 1. wir werden loben  
 2. ihr werdet loben  
 3. sie werden loben

- ich werde loben  
 du werdest loben  
 er werde loben  
 wir werden loben  
 ihr werdet loben  
 sie werden loben.

\* Not unfrequently a pluperfect ich hatte gelobt gehabt is met with, to indicate a time happening *before* an action, expressed by an ordinary pluperfect.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

SECOND FUTURE.

Sing.	1. ich werde gelobt haben, I shall or will have praised	ich werde gelobt haben
	2. du wirst gelobt haben	du werdest gelobt haben
	3. er wird gelobt haben	er werde gelobt haben
Plur.	1. wir werden gelobt haben	wir werden gelobt haben
	2. ihr werdet gelobt haben	ihr werdet gelobt haben
	3. sie werden gelobt haben	sie werden gelobt haben.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Sing.	1. ich würde loben, I should or would praise, etc.
	2. du würdest loben
	3. er würde loben
Plur.	1. wir würden loben
	2. ihr würdet loben
	3. sie würden loben.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Sing.	1. ich würde gelobt haben, I should or would have praised, etc.
	2. du würdest gelobt haben
	3. er würde gelobt haben
Plur.	1. wir würden gelobt haben
	2. ihr würdet gelobt haben
	3. sie würden gelobt haben.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing.	lobe (du), praise (thou)
Plur.	lobt (ihr), praise (you)
	[loben Sie, praise (you)].

REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATION OF THE VERB.

§ 71. The present (sometimes also the perfect) infinitive of all verbs may be used with the force of a noun, denoting the action, expressed by the verb, as an abstract. Such infinitives are of neuter gender, and are declined (in the singular only) like nouns ending in *en* (§ 13. REM. 4). They must be preceded by a neuter article or pronominal adjective in the neuter gender and correspond to the English participial noun in *ing*: das Lesen (Gen. des Lesens), the reading; mein Handeln (Gen. meines Handelns), my acting; nach meinem Dafürhalten, according to my opinion (supposing). Many of these

infinitives have assumed the meaning of common nouns: *das Schreiben*, the writing (a letter); *das Dasein*, the existence; *das Leben*, life, etc.

§ 72. Both participles are frequently used with the force of attributive adjectives, and are then declined and generally may be compared like ordinary adjectives with weak or strong inflection: *der blühende Baum*, the blooming tree; *ein anziehendes Buch*, an attracting book; *vorbereitende Schritte*, preparatory (preparing) steps; *ein auffallenderes Ereigniß*, a more striking event. Past participles of transitive verbs have always passive signification, if used attributively; they are thus more freely used than the English past participles: *nach gethaner Arbeit*, literally: after done labor (after the labor was done). But the past participles of many verbs, conjugated with *sein*, may be used attributively in an active sense: *der gewesene Professor* (literally: *the been Professor*), the ex-professor; *mein verstorbener Bruder*, my 'died' brother (my late brother).

§ 73. The conjugation of the strong verb differs only in the simple tenses. In all compound tenses the conjugations of weak and strong verbs are entirely the same, aside from the deviating form of the past participle. /

#### V. THE PASSIVE VOICE.

§ 74. The conjugation of the PASSIVE VOICE consists in the different forms of the auxiliary *werden* (page 45) in combination with the past participle of the verb. The verb *werden* corresponds, in the passive voice, entirely to the English passive auxiliary 'to be.'

REM.—1. The order in which the auxiliary and the verb are placed in the passive voice is the same in English and in German, except that in those tenses which are formed from the compound tenses of the auxiliary (perfect, pluperfect, future, etc.) the past participle of the verb proper must always precede both the participle and the infinitive of the auxiliary. Thus in the German perfect passive the arrangement is '*I have praised been*,' *ich bin gelobt worden*.

2. Since *werden* in its compound tenses takes *sein* as an auxiliary, it follows that the verb '*have*,' wherever it occurs in the English passive, must be expressed by the German "*sein*".



The augment of the past participle of *werden* (*geworden*) is always dropped if *werden* is used as auxiliary of the passive, (*ich bin gelobt worden*, not: *ich bin gelobt geworden*).

# PARADIGM OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Present Infinitive. *gelobt (zu) werden*, to be praised.  
 Perfect Infinitive. *gelobt worden (zu) sein*, to have been praised.  
 Present Participle. *gelobt werdend* (extremely rare), being praised.  
 Past Participle. *gelobt*, praised.

## PRESENT.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Sing.	1. <i>ich werde gelobt</i> , I am praised	<i>ich werde gelobt</i>
	2. <i>du wirst gelobt</i>	<i>du werdest gelobt</i>
	3. <i>er wird gelobt</i>	<i>er werde gelobt</i>
Plur.	1. <i>wir werden gelobt</i>	<i>wir werden gelobt</i>
	2. <i>ihr werdet gelobt</i>	<i>ihr werdet gelobt</i>
	3. <i>sie werden gelobt</i>	<i>sie werden gelobt.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

Sing.	1. <i>ich wurde gelobt</i> , I was praised	<i>ich würde gelobt</i>
	2. <i>du würdest gelobt</i>	<i>du würdest gelobt</i>
	3. <i>er wurde gelobt</i>	<i>er würde gelobt</i>
Plur.	1. <i>wir wurden gelobt</i>	<i>wir würden gelobt</i>
	2. <i>ihr würdet gelobt</i>	<i>ihr würdet gelobt</i>
	3. <i>sie wurden gelobt</i>	<i>sie würden gelobt.</i>

## PERFECT.

Sing.	1. <i>ich bin gelobt worden</i> , I have been praised	<i>ich sei gelobt worden</i>
	2. <i>du bist gelobt worden</i>	<i>du seiest gelobt worden</i>
	3. <i>er ist gelobt worden</i>	<i>er sei gelobt worden</i>
Plur.	1. <i>wir sind gelobt worden</i>	<i>wir seien gelobt worden</i>
	2. <i>ihr seid gelobt worden</i>	<i>ihr seiet gelobt worden</i>
	3. <i>sie sind gelobt worden</i>	<i>sie seien gelobt worden.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

Sing.	1. <i>ich war gelobt worden</i> , I had been praised	<i>ich wäre gelobt worden</i>
	2. <i>du warst gelobt worden</i>	<i>du wärest gelobt worden</i>
	3. <i>er war gelobt worden</i>	<i>er wäre gelobt worden</i>
Plur.	1. <i>wir waren gelobt worden</i>	<i>wir wären gelobt worden</i>
	2. <i>ihr wäret gelobt worden</i>	<i>ihr wäret gelobt worden</i>
	3. <i>sie waren gelobt worden</i>	<i>sie wären gelobt worden.</i>

FIRST FUTURE.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

Sing.	1. ich werde gelobt werden, I shall or will be praised	ich werde gelobt werden
	2. du wirst gelobt werden	du werdest gelobt werden
	3. er wird gelobt werden	er werde gelobt werden
Plur.	1. wir werden gelobt werden	wir werden gelobt werden
	2. ihr werdet gelobt werden	ihr werdet gelobt werden
	3. sie werden gelobt werden	sie werden gelobt werden.

SECOND FUTURE.

Sing.	1. ich werde gelobt worden sein, I shall or will have been praised	ich werde gelobt worden sein
	2. du wirst gelobt worden sein	du werdest gelobt worden sein
	3. er wird gelobt worden sein	er werde gelobt worden sein
Plur.	1. wir werden gelobt worden sein	wir werden gelobt worden sein
	2. ihr werdet gelobt worden sein	ihr werdet gelobt worden sein
	3. sie werden gelobt worden sein	sie werden gelobt worden sein.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Sing.	1. ich würde gelobt werden, I should or would be praised
	2. du würdest gelobt werden
	3. er würde gelobt werden
Plur.	1. wir würden gelobt werden
	2. ihr würdet gelobt werden
	3. sie würden gelobt werden.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Sing.	1. ich würde gelobt worden sein, I should or would have been praised
	2. du würdest gelobt worden sein
	3. er würde gelobt worden sein
Plur.	1. wir würden gelobt worden sein
	2. ihr würdet gelobt worden sein
	3. sie würden gelobt worden sein.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing.	werde (sei*) gelobt, be (thou) praised
Plur.	werdet (seid) gelobt, be (you) praised [sein Sie gelobt, be (you) praised.]

---

\* The form of the imperative with *sein* is more frequent than that with *werden*.

§ 75. The German verbs form also a passive voice by means of the auxiliary *sein*, instead of *werden*. This is the case if the action expressed by the verb, is conceived as accomplished or as a state. The meaning of the English passive is ambiguous, and it can only be decided by its connection with the rest of the sentence whether the action at the specified time is considered as going on or as accomplished. The present passive in '*the house is sold*' generally means that the sale has been accomplished, while the sentence '*the news is believed to be true*', means that the belief is going on. The German passive is free from this ambiguity, since the passive with *werden* always means the going on of the action at the time spoken of, while the passive with *sein* represents the action as accomplished. Thus the present tense in „*das Haus ist verkauft*“, means that the house *is sold* in consequence of a former sale, while „*das Haus wird verkauft*“ denotes that the house 'is being sold' at present.


#### VI. REFLEXIVE VERBS.

§ 76. Verbs which are conjugated with reflexive pronouns as objects (§ 20) are called REFLEXIVE verbs. Their number is considerably larger than in English, and the German reflexive verb must often be translated by an English neuter or passive verb, or by means of a phrase: *sich freuen*, to rejoice; *sich schämen*, to be ashamed; *sich erkälten*, to take cold.

REM. — Ordinary transitive verbs may in both languages become reflexive, if the object of the verb denotes the subject itself, as: *sich tödten*, to kill one's self; *ich tödte mich*, I kill myself; *du tödest dich*, thou killest thyself; *er tödtet sich*, he kills himself; *wir tödten uns*, we kill ourselves; *ihr tödtet euch*, you kill yourselves (*Sie tödten sich*, you kill yourself); *sie tödten sich*, they kill themselves. But even in common transitive verbs the reflexive pronoun is often *understood* in English, and the verb assumes then both a transitive and neuter force. Such English neuter verbs must be generally rendered by German reflexives, as: *to dress (one's self)*, *sich ankleiden*, *to move (one's self)*, *sich bewegen*.

§ 77. Many German verbs occur as reflexives only (PROPER REFLEXIVES). In these the reflexive pronoun is almost always in the ACCUSATIVE case (see the Paradigm). In verbs that may also be used with non-reflexive objects, the case of the

reflexive pronoun may be the dative, if the verb as such takes its object in that case: *ich schmeichle mir*, I flatter myself (*schmeicheln* being construed with the dative); *du gibst dir Mühe*, thou takest pains (givest trouble to thyself).

 For reciprocal verbs see Practical Part p. 83, Obs. 4. For impersonal reflexives see § 79, Rem. 3. For the translation of the forms with *self* by *selbst*, see P. P. p. 83, Obs. 2.

PARADIGM OF A PROPER REFLEXIVE VERB.

Present Infinitive.	<i>sich freuen</i> , to rejoice.
Perfect Infinitive.	<i>sich gefreut (zu) haben</i> , to have rejoiced.
Present Participle.	<i>sich freuend</i> , rejoicing.
Past Participle.	wanting.*

PRESENT.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Sing. 1.	<i>ich freue mich</i> , I rejoice	<i>ich freue mich</i>
2.	<i>du freust dich</i> , thou rejoicest	<i>du freuest dich</i>
3.	<i>er freut sich</i> , he rejoices	<i>er freue sich</i>
Plur. 1.	<i>wir freuen uns</i> , we rejoice	<i>wir freuen uns</i>
2.	<i>ihr freut euch</i> , you rejoice	<i>ihr freuet euch</i>
3.	<i>sie freuen sich</i> , they rejoice	<i>sie freuen sich</i> .

IMPERFECT.

Sing. 1.	<i>ich freute mich</i> , I rejoiced	<i>ich freute mich</i>
2.	<i>du freutest dich</i> , thou rejoicest	<i>du freutest dich</i>
3.	<i>er freute sich</i> , he rejoiced	<i>er freute sich</i>
Plur. 1.	<i>wir freuten uns</i> , we rejoiced	<i>wir freuten uns</i>
2.	<i>ihr freutet euch</i> , you rejoiced	<i>ihr freutet euch</i>
3.	<i>sie freuten sich</i> , they rejoiced	<i>sie freuten sich</i> .

PERFECT.

Sing. 1.	<i>ich habe mich gefreut</i> , I have rejoiced	<i>ich habe mich gefreut</i>
2.	<i>du hast dich gefreut</i>	<i>du habest dich gefreut</i>
3.	<i>er hat sich gefreut</i>	<i>er habe sich gefreut</i>
Plur. 1.	<i>wir haben uns gefreut</i>	<i>wir haben uns gefreut</i>
2.	<i>ihr habt euch gefreut</i>	<i>ihr habet euch gefreut</i>
3.	<i>sie haben sich gefreut</i>	<i>sie haben sich gefreut</i> .

---

\* Reflexives cannot form passives, and since the past participle has always passive signification (unless the verb be conjugated with *sein*), a past participle of reflexive verbs cannot exist. In the past participle which is used for forming the compound tenses the reflexive pronoun grammatically belongs to the auxiliary, not to the participle.

PLUPERFECT.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

Sing.	1. ich hatte mich gefreut, I had rejoiced	ich hätte mich gefreut
	2. du hättest dich gefreut	du hättest dich gefreut
	3. er hatte sich gefreut	er hätte sich gefreut
Plur.	1. wir hatten uns gefreut	wir hätten uns gefreut
	2. ihr hättet euch gefreut	ihr hättet euch gefreut
	3. sie hatten sich gefreut	sie hätten sich gefreut.

FIRST FUTURE.

Sing.	1. ich werde mich freuen, I shall or will rejoice	ich werde mich freuen
	2. du wirst dich freuen	du werdest dich freuen
	3. er wird sich freuen	er werde sich freuen
Plur.	1. wir werden uns freuen	wir werden uns freuen
	2. ihr werdet euch freuen	ihr werdet euch freuen
	3. sie werden sich freuen	sie werden sich freuen.

SECOND FUTURE.

Sing.	1. ich werde mich gefreut haben, I shall or will have rejoiced	ich werde mich gefreut haben
	2. du wirst dich gefreut haben	du werdest dich gefreut haben
	3. er wird sich gefreut haben	er werde sich gefreut haben
Plur.	1. wir werden uns gefreut haben	wir werden uns gefreut haben
	2. ihr werdet euch gefreut haben	ihr werdet euch gefreut haben
	3. sie werden sich gefreut haben	sie werden sich gefreut haben.

*First Conditional.*

Sing.	1. ich würde mich freuen, I should or would rejoice
	2. du würdest dich freuen
	3. er würde sich freuen
Plur.	1. wir würden uns freuen
	2. ihr würdet euch freuen
	3. sie würden sich freuen.

*Second Conditional.*

Sing.	1. ich würde mich gefreut haben, I should or would have rejoiced
	2. du würdest dich gefreut haben
	3. er würde sich gefreut haben
Plur.	1. wir würden uns gefreut haben
	2. ihr würdet euch gefreut haben
	3. sie würden sich gefreut haben.

*Imperative.*

Sing.	freue dich, rejoice (thou)
Plur.	freuet euch, rejoice (you)
	[freuen Sie sich, rejoice (you),]

## VII. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 78. The impersonal relation of verbs is expressed both in German and in English by the neuter singular of the personal substantive pronoun of the third person (es, it). But many impersonal expressions are peculiar to the German language, and must be rendered by personal forms in English (see Practical Course, pp. 86, 87).

§ 79. The German IMPERSONAL PASSIVE is a general impersonal form, applying to all neuter and intransitive verbs if the agency of the action is assigned to PERSONS\* in GENERAL, without any statement of their names or qualities, as: Es wird getanzt (literally: 'it is danced'), meaning 'people dance,' 'there is dancing'; es wird viel gebaut (literally: 'it is much built'), meaning 'people are building much,' 'there is much building.'

REM.— 1. The English equivalents that are applied to rendering this peculiar German form are various, and depend on the idea conveyed by the impersonal expression. In general an ACTIVE expression with some impersonal or uncertain subject may be employed (*there is, people, one, they*). Often a phrase may be substituted with a transitive object, in which case the passive form may be kept: Es wurde spät zu Nacht gespeist, a late supper was taken. Es wurde stark gevettet, bets were made freely.

2. The impersonal passive form is the only passive form of which neuter verbs are capable, and the only one that can be applied to those active verbs which in German require their object to be in the DATIVE or GENITIVE. The English language, connecting all active verbs with the objective case, may always use such verbs in a PERSONAL passive form, which must be rendered by an IMPERSONAL passive, if the German verb requires any other case of the object but the accusative: *I am believed*, es wird mir geglaubt (not ich werde geglaubt, the verb glauben requiring the dative); *I am commanded*, es wird mir befohlen (literally: *it is commanded to me*); *I am obeyed*, es wird mir gehorcht. The impersonal es in such transitive verbs is frequently dropped, and the dative opens the phrase: Mir wird geglaubt, mir wird befohlen, mir wird gehorcht. Thus with the genitive: Es wird meiner gedacht (meiner wird gedacht), I am remembered (gedenken governing the genitive).

3. If a neuter verb is qualified by an adverb or a clause, a REFLEXIVE IMPERSONAL may often be used instead of an impersonal passive to express facts always happening under the circumstances, as: Es tanzt sich hier gut (literally: *it dances itself well here*), one dances well here, here is good dancing. Es stirbt sich leicht, wenn man ein gutes Gewissen hat, one dies easily if he has a good conscience.

\* It cannot be applied to those neuter or intransitive verbs the idea of which apply to things only. Thus we cannot say: es wird gebüht; es wird geschienen (of stars for instance); es wird misglückt, etc.

# VIII. THE POTENTIAL VERBS.

§ 80. There are seven POTENTIAL VERBS: können, mögen, wollen, sollen, müssen, dürfen and wissen\*, the conjugation of which is irregular. (See Practical Course pp. 108. 109.)

REM. — The POTENTIAL VERBS OR MODAL AUXILIARIES are in several respects treated alike:

1. They reject the ending *e* in the first pers. sing. ind. present.
2. The third pers. sing. ind. present is like the first.
3. The radical vowel of the SINGULAR ind. pres. is different from that of the infinitive, except in *sollen*.
4. The radical vowel of the PLURAL ind. present and of the whole subjunctive present is the same as that of the infinitive.
5. The radical vowel of the imperfect indicative is different from that of the infinitive, except in *wollen* and *sollen*, and also different from that of the present, except in *müssen* and *sollen*.
6. The imperfect subjunctive has the same radical vowel as the infinitive, except in *wissen*.
7. The imperfect conjugates **WEAK**.
8. The past participle has the **WEAK** form, taking the radical vowel of the imperfect. But it has the **STRONG** form without augment (which gives it the appearance of the infinitive†), whenever another infinitive is dependent on it: *Ich habe nicht kommen können* (instead of *ich habe nicht kommen gekonnt*), *I have not been able to come*. Only *wissen* forms always the participle *gewußt*.
9. The present and imperfect tenses of all potential verbs may be rendered by one of the English auxiliaries of the potential mood or future tense. But the infinitive, the participles and the compound tenses must be rendered by English verbs different from the auxiliaries of the potential and future.

## PARADIGMS.

### 1) können, mögen, wollen.

#### *Present Infinitive.*

können, to be able	mögen, to like	wollen, to intend, to be willing
--------------------	----------------	----------------------------------

#### *Perfect Infinitive.*

gekonnt (zu) haben, to have been able	gemocht (zu) haben, to have liked	gewollt (zu) haben, to have intended, to have been willing
---------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--

\* The verb *wissen* belongs here in regard to its conjugation. In its meaning, too, it often answers to the English potential: *Er wußte es nicht anders zu machen*, he could not do otherwise.

† The history of the language distinctly shows that these forms are no infinitives, but strong forms of the participles without augment. See Grimm's German Grammar P. IV p. 168 foll.

*Present Participle (rare).*

fönnend, being able	mögend, liking	wönnend, intending.
---------------------	----------------	---------------------

*Past Participle.\**

gekonnt (können)	gemocht (mögen)	gewollt (wollen).
------------------	-----------------	-------------------

*Present Indicative.*

ich kann, I can	ich mag, I may	ich will, I will, I intend
du kannst	du magst	du willst, thou intendest, etc.
er kann	er mag	er will, he intends, etc.
wir können	wir mögen	wir wollen, we will, we intend, etc.
ihr könnt	ihr mögt	ihr wollt, you intend, etc.
sie können	sie mögen	sie wollen, they intend, etc.

*Present Subjunctive.*

ich könne	ich möge	ich wolle.
-----------	----------	------------

(is conjugated regularly).

*Imperfect Indicative.†*

ich konnte, I could	ich mochte, I might	ich wollte, I intended, etc.
---------------------	---------------------	------------------------------

*Imperfect Subjunctive.*

ich könnte	ich möchte	ich wollte.
------------	------------	-------------

*Perfect.*

ich habe gekonnt (können), I have been able	ich habe gemocht (mögen), I have liked	ich habe gewollt (wollen), I have intended, etc.
--	---	---

*Pluperfect.*

ich hatte gekonnt (können), I had been able	ich hatte gemocht (mögen), I had liked	ich hatte gewollt (wollen), I had intended, etc.
---	--	--

*First Future.*

ich werde können, I shall be able	ich werde mögen, I shall like	ich werde wollen, I shall intend, etc.
-----------------------------------	-------------------------------	--

*Second Future.*

ich werde gekonnt haben, I shall have been able	ich werde gemocht haben, I shall have liked	ich werde gewollt haben, I shall have intended, etc.
---	---	--

---

\* The past participle of the potential verbs is only used to form the compound tenses.

† The conjugation of all tenses through the different persons is regular, except that of the present indicative.



*First Conditional.*

ich würde können, I should be able	ich würde mögen, I should like	ich würde wollen, I should intend, etc.
---------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--

*Second Conditional.*

ich würde gekonnt haben, I should have been able	ich würde gemocht haben, I should have liked	ich würde gewollt haben, I should have intended, etc.
--	---	---

*Imperative.*

wollt, (used redundantly).

2) müssen, dürfen, wissen.

*Present Infinitive.*

müssen, to be obliged	dürfen, to be at liberty	wissen, to know, to be able.
-----------------------	--------------------------	------------------------------

*Perfect Infinitive.*

gemußt haben, to have been obliged	geburt haben, to have been at liberty	gewußt haben, to have known.
---------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------

*Present Participle.*

müssend ( <i>rare</i> ), being obliged	dürfend ( <i>rare</i> ), being at liberty	wissend, knowing.
---	--	-------------------

*Past Participle.*

gemußt (müssen)	geburt (dürfen)	gewußt.
-----------------	-----------------	---------

*Present Indicative.*

ich muß, I must	ich darf, I may (am at liberty)	ich weiß, I know
du mußt	du darfst	du weißt
er muß	er darf	er weiß
wir müssen	wir dürfen	wir wissen
ihr müßt	ihr dürft	ihr wißt
sie müssen	sie dürfen	sie wissen.

*Present Subjunctive.*

ich müsse	ich dürfe	ich wisse.
-----------	-----------	------------

*Imperfect Indicative.*

ich mußte, I must (was obliged)	ich durfte, I was at liberty	ich wußte, I knew,
------------------------------------	------------------------------	--------------------

*Imperfect Subjunctive.*

ich müßte	ich dürfte	ich wüßte.
-----------	------------	------------

*Perfect.*

ich habe gemußt (müssen), I have been obliged	ich habe geburt (dürfen), I have been at liberty	ich habe gewußt, I have known.
--	---	-----------------------------------

*Pluperfect.*

ich hatte gemußt (müssen), ich hatte gedurft (dürfen), ich hatte gewußt, I had  
I had been obliged I had been at liberty known.

*First Future.*

ich werde müssen, I shall ich werde dürfen, I shall ich werde wissen, I shall  
be obliged be at liberty know.

*Second Future.*

ich werde gemußt haben, ich werde gedurft haben, ich werde gewußt haben,  
I shall have been ob- I shall have been at I shall have known.  
liged liberty

*First Conditional.*

ich würde müssen, I ich würde dürfen, I ich würde wissen, I should  
should be obliged should be at liberty know.

*Second Conditional.*

ich würde gemußt haben, ich würde gedurft haben, ich würde gewußt haben, I  
I should have been I should have been at should have known.  
obliged liberty

*Imperative.*

wisse, know.

✍ The verb *sein* in the present indicative singular is thus conjugated *ich* *se*, *du* *seist*, *er* *sei*. In all other forms it is regular. It is translated by *I am to*, and sometimes by *I shall*; also by *it is said that*, as: *er* *se* *angekommen sein*, *it is said that he has arrived, he is said to have arrived.*

REM. The Pluperfect of the English potential mood with *could have*, *might have* and *should have* is generally rendered by *hätte können*, *hätte sollen*; as: *he could (might) have praised*, *er hätte loben können* (not *mögen*); *he should have praised*, *er hätte loben sollen*. But '*should have*' in the first person generally corresponds to the German conditional: *I should have praised*, *if* etc., *ich würde gelobt haben, wenn* etc.

IX. COMPOUND VERBS.

✍ § 81. COMPOUND VERBS are either SEPARABLE or INSEPARABLE, according as their prefixes or words which enter in composition with them, may or may not be separated in some of their forms.

✍ § 82. INSEPARABLE compound verbs are conjugated like ordinary verbs, except that they refuse the augment of the past participle. See § 63, Rem. 3. They are compounded 1) with one of the prefixes *ge*, *be*, *ent*, *er*, *ver*, *zer* and *miß*; 2) with one of the prepositions *hinter*, *wider*, *durch*, *über*, *um*, *unter* and the ad-

verbs *voll* and *wieder*. But verbs compounded with *durch*, *über*, *um*, *unter*, *voll* and *wieder* are sometimes separable\*.

§ 83. SEPARABLE compound verbs are those which are compounded with prepositions or adverbs other than those mentioned § 82†. These are the prepositions *ab*, *an*, *auf*, *aus*, *bei*, *in* (with accus., always taking the form *ein*), *mit*, *nach*, *vor*, *ob*, *zu*, and the adverbs *da* (generally taking the form *dar*), *fort*, *nieder*, *weg*, *zurück*, *zusammen*, *her*, *hin* with the compounds of the last two (*herab*, *heran*, *herauf*, *hinab*, *hinauf*, *einher*, *umher*, *umhin*), and many other adverbs and adjectives as *fern*, *frei*, *lieb*, *los*, etc.

§ 84. Those words which form separable compounds with simple verbs, are detached from their verbs in the present and imperfect tenses and the imperative mood, and are placed after them (generally at the end of the sentence), as *anfangen*: pres. *ich fange an*; imperf. *ich fing an*; imper. *fange an*. The sign *zu* of the infinitive is placed between the prefix and the simple verb: *anzufangen*. The augment of the past participle is likewise inserted between the prefix and the verb: *angefangen*.

#### PARADIGM.

<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>anfangen</i> ( <i>anzufangen</i> ), to begin.
<i>Perf. Infinitive.</i>	<i>angefangen</i> ( <i>zu</i> ) <i>haben</i> , to have begun.
<i>Pres. Participle.</i>	<i>anfangend</i> , beginning.
<i>Past Participle.</i>	<i>angefangen</i> , begun.
<i>Pres. Indicative.</i>	<i>ich fange an</i> , I begin <i>du fängst an</i> , thou beginnest <i>er fängt an</i> , he begins <i>wir fangen an</i> , we begin <i>ihr fangt an</i> , you begin <i>sie fangen an</i> , they begin.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>ich fange an</i> , <i>du fangest an</i> , etc.
<i>Imperf. Ind.</i>	<i>ich fing an</i> , <i>du fingst an</i> , etc.
<i>Imperf. Subj.</i>	<i>ich finge an</i> , <i>du fingeest an</i> , etc.
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>ich habe angefangen</i> , <i>du hast angefangen</i> , etc.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>ich hatte angefangen</i> , <i>du hattest angefangen</i> , etc.
<i>First Future.</i>	<i>ich werde anfangen</i> , <i>du wirst anfangen</i> , etc.
<i>Second Future.</i>	<i>ich werde angefangen haben</i> , <i>du wirst angefangen haben</i> , etc.

\* Whether a compound verb is separable or not, may always be seen from the lexicons.

† There are some verbs, having the appearance of compound verbs, which seem to contradict this rule, as: *lieblos*, *lustwandel*, *offenbaren*. The treatment of these few exceptional verbs must be learned from the lexicons.

*First Conditional.* ich würde anfangen, du würdest anfangen, etc.

*Second Conditional.* ich würde angefangen haben, du würdest angefangen haben, etc.

*Imperative.* fange an, begin (thou); fanget an, begin (you).

REM.—1. If a separable compound is in a clause, requiring the transposition of the finite verb to the end of the clause (see § 106, 7.10), no separation of the prefix takes place, and the separable compound is treated like an inseparable compound verb, retaining however the augment, and *zu* as sign of the infinitive between the prefix and the verb: wenn (daß) er anfängt, *if (that) he begins*; welche wir anfangen, *which we begin*.

2. Many of the particles entering into composition with verbs, are themselves COMPOUND. If they are both separable compounds, both are separated from the verb: vorangehen, to precede; *Pres.* ich gehe voran. If the former of the two is inseparable, the latter being separable, the whole verb is INSEPARABLE if the compound prefix cannot be used as a word by itself: verabsolgen, to hand over; *Pres.* ich verabsolge (since a word *verab* does not exist). But bevorstehen, to impend; *Pres.* ich stehe bevor, I impend (the word *bevor* occurring separately as an adverb).— If the former of the two prefixes is separable, and the latter inseparable, the verb is SEPARABLE, and only the first prefix is separated: vorenthalten, to keep away; *Pres.* ich enthalte vor, I keep away\*. This last class of verbs does not admit of an augment in the participle: ich habe vorenthalten, I have kept away.

3. Some verbs have the appearance of separable compounds, but are derived from compound nouns, as frühstücken, to breakfast (from Frühstück); kurzweilen, to cause pastime (from Kurzweil); rathschlagen, to deliberate (from Rathschlag), and many others. Such verbs can never be separated (ich frühstückte, etc.).

4. Separable compounds and those verbs derived from compound nouns (Rem. 3.) have their principal accent on the prefix (an'fangen; bevor'stehen; rath'schlagen). Inseparable compounds have their main accent on the radical syllable of the VERB: entwei'chen, vollbrin'gen. Those prefixes which may belong to an inseparable or to a separable verb (§ 82.) have the main accent if the verb is separable, but the accent is on the radical syllable of the verb if the latter is inseparable (überwin'den, to defeat; but über'gehen, to go over). Those exceptional inseparables which are mentioned page 59† have partly their accent on the prefixes, partly on the verbs. Thus lieblos'en and lustwandeln are accented on the prefix; the verb frohlock'en, to exult, is by some accented on froh, by some on lock; the compounds with miß are generally, but not always accented on the prefix (miß'brauchen, but also mißbrau'chen). This

\* There are some verbs, especially those beginning with *auser* and *auser*, which never occur in those forms, which would require a separation of the particle. Thus we may say: als er auferstand (*when he arose*) or welche er auserjah, (*which he selected*), if the clause requires a transposition of the verb, in which no separation of the prefix takes place. But if the clause does not admit of transposition, such verbs cannot be employed at all (*not*: Er erstand auf; ich ersah aus; nor can we say: Ich auferstand, etc.).

class of compounds takes the augment *ge* in the participle if the accent is on the prefix; if the accent is on the verb, the augment is dropped (*gelieb'test*, *gelust'wandelt*; *gefroh'locht* or *frohlocht'*; *gemiß'braucht* or *mißbraucht'*). The verb *offenbaren*, although it has its accent always on the syllable *ba*, is used both with or without the augment (*offenbart'* or *geoffenbart'*).


## CHAPTER VI.

### PREPOSITIONS.

§ 85. Prepositions govern either the genitive, or the dative, or the accusative, or both the dative or accusative.


§ 86. 1. The prepositions governing the genitive are:

<i>halber</i> ( <i>halben</i> ), for the sake of;	<i>jenseit</i> , beyond;
<i>außerhalb</i> , outside of;	<i>statt</i> ( <i>anstatt</i> ), instead of;
<i>innerhalb</i> , within;	<i>ungeachtet</i> , notwithstanding;
<i>oberhalb</i> , above;	<i>unweit</i> ( <i>unfern</i> ), not far from;
<i>unterhalb</i> , below;	<i>vermöge</i> , by means of;
<i>kraft</i> , in virtue of;	<i>während</i> , during;
<i>längs</i> ( <i>entlang</i> ), along;	<i>wegen</i> , on account of;
<i>laut</i> , according to;	<i>um—willen</i> , for the sake of;
<i>mittelft</i> ( <i>vermittelft</i> ), by means of;	<i>troß</i> , in spite of;
<i>diesseit</i> , this side of;	<i>zufolge</i> , in consequence of.

 The prepositions *längs* (*entlang*), *troß*, *zufolge* are also connected with the dative. *Halber*, *zufolge* (generally) and sometimes *ungeachtet* are placed after their governing nouns. *Wegen* mostly follows its noun.

2. With the dative are construed:

<i>auß</i> , out of;	<i>nach</i> , after;
<i>außer</i> , outside, except;	<i>nächst</i> ( <i>zunächst</i> ), next to;
<i>bei</i> — (see REM. 2);	<i>nebst</i> , }
<i>innen</i> , within;	<i>sammit</i> , } together with;
<i>entgegen</i> , against;	<i>seit</i> , since;
<i>gegenüber</i> , opposite;	<i>von</i> , from, of;
<i>gemäß</i> , in accordance with;	<i>zu</i> , to;
<i>mit</i> , with;	<i>zuwider</i> , contrary to.

 *Entgegen*, *gegenüber*, *gemäß* are generally placed after their nouns. The preposition *ob*, *over*, *on account of*, is now obsolete, except in poetry.

3. The prepositions requiring the accusative are:

<i>durch</i> , through, by;	<i>ohne</i> , without;
<i>für</i> , for;	<i>um</i> , about, around;
<i>gegen</i> , against;	<i>wider</i> , against.

 The preposition *sonder*, *without*, is now obsolete, except in some phrases and in poetry.

#### 4. The prepositions requiring either the dative or the accusative are:

an, at;	über, over, above;
auf, on, upon;	unter, under, beneath, among;
hinter, behind;	vor, before;
in, in, into;	zwischen, between*.
neben, beside;	

REM.—1. The adverb *bis* is frequently connected with, and placed before prepositions expressing motion in space, or progress in time in order to denote the limit *up to* which a motion takes place, or to limit the extent of time. Such combinations are *bis nach*, *bis zu*, *bis an*, *bis auf*, *bis in*, *bis vor*. They are generally rendered *as far as*, *till*, *up to* or *to*: *Bis nach Berlin*, as far as Berlin; *bis an den Fluß*, up to the river; *bis zu Weihnachten*, (up) to Christmas. Before proper names of places, and in some other phrases the preposition connected with *bis* is often omitted: *Bis Berlin*, as far as Berlin; *bis heute*, till to-day.

#### 2. There is no general equivalent for the preposition *bei* in English.

1) In local connections *bei* means 'near by': *Ein Dorf bei Berlin*, a village near Berlin; *die Schlacht bei Sadowa*, the battle of (at) Sadowa. 2) Before names of PERSONS *bei* denotes the PLACE where these persons are or live: *Ich war bei meinem Bruder*, I was *with* (at the house of) my brother; *ich bleibe bei Ihnen*, I remain *with* you; *dies war Sitte bei den Griechen*, this was the custom *among* the Greeks (in their country). 3) Before nouns expressing EVENTS it denotes their coincidence with the action, (*bei seiner Ankunft*, at his arrival; *bei jener Gelegenheit*, at that occasion), or a relation of cause, being generally rendered by a participial clause: *Bei dem guten Erfolge dieser Maßregel trug er kein Bedenken, noch weiter zu gehen*, this measure *being successful* (considering the success of this measure), he did not hesitate to go still farther.

3. The preposition *seit* denotes not only a TIME-POINT, represented as the beginning of actions, but also a PERIOD of time not completed. In the former signification it corresponds to *since* or *ever since*, in the latter to *for*: *Ich bin hier seit dem ersten dieses Monats*, I have been here *since* (ever since) the first of this month. *Ich bin (schon) seit drei Monaten hier*, I have been here *for* three months.

---

\* The meanings which are here assigned to the different prepositions are those by which they are GENERALLY translated. But often German prepositions must be rendered by English prepositions different from those which we have assigned to them in the above lists. Such idiomatic differences must be learned by practice and the lexicons, as for instance: *Unter jemandes Augen sein*, to be *before* one's eyes; *an jemanden denken*, to think of somebody; *sich um etwas drehen*, to turn *on* something; *von etwas abhängen*, to depend *on* something. *Furcht vor jemandem*, fear of somebody; *mit jemandem* or *an jemandem verheirathet sein*, to be married *to* somebody; *reich an Metallen*, rich *in* metals, etc., etc.

4. Those prepositions that govern two cases (No. 4) require the accusative: 1) if they imply a motion towards their object; 2) if they denote the placing of something upon an object, or the application of something to a thing; 3) if they indicate a direction or tendency of the mind towards something.

EXAMPLES: To No. 1: Ich gehe in den Garten, I go into (to) the garden. Ich schicke ihn in die Stadt, I send him into (to) the city. Er steigt auf das Dach, he ascends the roof (*literally*: mounts upon the roof). Ein Angriff auf den Feind, an attack upon the enemy. Sie schicken Gesandte an den König, they send envoys to the king. Sie ziehen sich hinter ihre Verschanzungen zurück, they withdraw behind their intrenchments. — To No. 2: Ich stecke Geld in die Tasche, I put money into my pocket. Ich lege das Buch auf den Tisch, I place the book on the table. Ich klopfe an die Thür, I knock at the door (apply a knock to it). Ich baue ein Haus auf den Platz, I build a house on the ground (the house being *placed* there). Er stützt sich auf mich, he leans on me (implying the *placing* of the body). Ein Schlag ins Gesicht, auf die Schulter, a blow in the face, a tap on the shoulder (*applied* to the face, etc.). Ich setze mich neben ihn, I seated myself beside him. Er setzt sich unter den Baum, he takes a seat beneath the tree.—To No. 3: Er denkt an mich, he thinks of me. Sie schauten auf die Stadt, they looked on the town. An Jemanden schreiben, to write to somebody. Über eine Sache sprechen, to speak of something.

5. If these prepositions are used in other relations, they require the DATIVE. Thus the dative is required if the governing verb denotes **REST** or **BEING**: Er wohnt in der Stadt, he lives in the city. Er steht hinter dem Hause, he stands behind the house. Er sitzt unter dem Baume, he is sitting beneath the tree. Er ist in großer Verlegenheit, he is in a great embarrassment. Der Unterschied zwischen dieser und jener Sache ist nicht groß, the difference (being) between this and that thing is not great.

When the governing verb expresses **MOTION**, but the preposition does not denote the aim of the motion, the DATIVE, not the accusative, must be used: Er ging an dem Walde vorbei, he passed by the wood (*literally*: went past at the wood). Er kam unter der Erde hervor, he came from below the ground.

6. If these prepositions are used in relations of **TIME**, they require the DATIVE in answer to the question *when*, but the ACCUSATIVE in answer to the question *how long*: Vor einigen Tagen, several days ago, am (an dem) zweiten Mai, on the second of May. But: Er besuchte mich auf einige Tage, he visited me for several days. After *bis* they always require the accusative: bis auf diesen Tag, up to this day. Ueber, in relations of time, requires the ACCUSATIVE: Ueber vierzehn Tage, in a fortnight.

7. It is often difficult to determine the correct case to be employed after these prepositions when **INTERNAL** relations are spoken of. All depends here on the manner in which such relations are conceived in the German language. This cannot be fully understood unless the different meanings of

the governing verbs have been made entirely clear. In such instances the use of the correct case must be learned by practice or the lexicons.

§ 87. Prepositions can generally not be used before the interrogative pronoun *was* and the neuter *es* of the personal pronoun of the third person. Instead of such combinations the German language generally employs adverbs compounded with *wo* (or *wor*), for *was*; and adverbs compounded with *da* (or *dar*), instead of *es*: *Womit* (not *mit was*\*) *beschäftigt ihr euch*, with what do you occupy yourselves? — *Ich habe mich da rin* (not in *es*) *geirrt*, I was mistaken in it.

REM.—1. These combinations with *wo* and *da* are used only with the following prepositions: *mit*, *nebst*, *bei*, *von*, *nach*, *aus*, *zu*, *durch*, *für*, *um*, *gegen*, *wider* and all prepositions governing both the accusative and dative. Instead of *wegen* with *es*, we say *deswegen* (on account of it), and instead of *wegen* with *was*: *weßwegen*† (for what reason)?

2. The same adverbial combination with *wo* and the prepositions mentioned above is frequently used instead of prepositions with relative pronouns, as *wo rin*, instead of *in welchem*, in which; *woran*, instead of *an welchem*, at which; *wodurch* instead of *durch welchem* (*welche*, *welches*), etc. But these combinations are inadmissible if the relative pronoun has a PERSON as antecedent.

§ 88. The dative and neuter accusative of the definite article is frequently contracted with some prepositions into one word, taking the form of the letter *m* for the dative, and *s* for the neuter accusative.

Thus are especially used:

<i>am</i>	instead of <i>an dem</i>
<i>ans</i>	„ <i>an das</i>
<i>im</i>	„ <i>in dem</i>
<i>ins</i>	„ <i>in das</i>
<i>aufs</i>	„ <i>auf das</i>
<i>beim</i>	„ <i>bei dem</i>

<i>vom</i>	instead of <i>von dem</i>
<i>zum</i>	„ <i>zu dem</i>
<i>durchs</i>	„ <i>durch das</i>
<i>fürs</i>	„ <i>für das</i>
<i>überm</i>	„ <i>über dem</i>
<i>übers</i>	„ <i>über das</i>

The dative feminine of the article is thus contracted with the preposition *zu* only (*zur* instead of *zu der*).

\* Occasionally we meet with the expressions *auf was*, *von was*, *mit was*, *durch was*. But these combinations are considered as faulty if the preposition governs the dative, and as inelegant if the preposition is connected with the accusative.

† The spelling *deswegen* and *weßwegen* is very frequently met with; but *deswegen* and *weßwegen* are more correct.



## CHAPTER VII.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 89. Conjunctions are divided into coordinating and subordinating conjunctions. The coordinating conjunctions are:

und, and	denn, for
aber,	entweder....oder, either....or
allein, } but	weder....noch, neither....nor
sondern,	nicht nur (bloß) .... sondern auch, not
doch, yet, still, but	only....but also.
oder, or	

REM. *Sondern* is only used after sentences or phrases containing a negative: *Ihr sollt nicht spielen, sondern lernen*, you must not play but study. See P. C. page 72. The conjunction *but*, if it does not correct a previous clause, but merely restricts it, is rendered by *aber*, not by *sondern*: *Ich kann dir nicht helfen; aber mein Bruder will es thun*, I cannot help you, but my brother will [do it]. *Allein* and *aber* are used almost synonymously, but *allein* imparts a stronger emphasis to the sentence than *aber*: *Du magst dies thun, allein erinnere dich deines Versprechens*, you may do this, but remember your promise.

§ 90. The subordinating conjunctions are:

daß, that	nachdem, after
damit, in order that	während, } while
als, when, than, as	indem, }
so....als*, as....as	indessen, }
da, since, as	wie, as; bis, till
weil, because	seitdem, seit, since (ever since)
wenn, if, when	obgleich, }
ob, whether (if)	obchon, }
als ob (wie wenn), as if	obwohl, etc. } (See P. C. p. 102).
ehe, } before	je....desto, the....the
bevor, }	ungeachtet, although

REM.—1. Clauses introduced by subordinating conjunctions (or by relative adjectives and adverbs) are called **DEPENDENT SENTENCES OR CLAUSES**. They require the finite verb to be at the end of the clause: *Er ist glücklich, weil er zufrieden ist*, he is happy, because he is contented. The sentence to which the dependent clause is appended, is called the **PRINCIPAL SENTENCE**.

\* Here belongs the combination *sowohl....als (auch)*, as well....as, both....and, which is mostly used to connect single words or phrases with the force of coordinating conjunctions: *Sowohl deine, als auch meine Freunde*, both your and my friends. *Sowohl Vergangenes als Zukünftiges*, the past as well as the future.

2. For the relation of the words *wenn*, *wann*, *als*, *when*, *if*, see Practical Course p. 74. For *nachdem* and *the* see P. C. p. 81. For *obgleich*, *obgleich* and the other equivalents of *although* and *even if*, see P. C. p. 102. For the ellipsis of *wenn* and *ob* see P. C. p. 102, Rem. 3. The conjunction *ob* is sometimes omitted in the combination *als ob*, *as if*. In this case the verb must be immediately placed after *als*: *Er sprach, als ob er unschuldig wäre*, or *a l s w ä r e e r u n s c h u l d i g*, he spoke as if he were innocent.

3. In comparative clauses *as* is rendered either by *als* or by *wie*, the former referring to *DEGREE* and *INTENSITY*, and the latter to *MANNER*: *Wir sind so reich als ihr*, we are as rich as you. *Wir denken wie ihr*, we are thinking as you do (in the same manner as).

4. *Als* (not *wie*) is also used after the combinations of *so* with adverbs of *TIME* (*sobald als*, as soon as; *so oft als*, as often as; *so lange als*, as long as). In these combinations *als* is frequently omitted, and *so* with the adverb of time is used with the force of a subordinating conjunction: *Sobald er nach der Stadt zurückkehrte*, as soon as he returned to the city. *So oft ich dich ansehe*, as often as I look at you.

5. The comparative conjunction *als* corresponds also to the English *than* after comparatives (P. C., p. 12), and to the conjunction *but* after the negative pronouns: *Niemand als ich*, nobody but I. *Nichts als dies wird mir genügen*, nothing but this will satisfy me.

6. The conjunction *daß* is frequently connected with certain prepositions (*statt*, *außer*, *ohne*) or prepositional adverbs (*dadurch*, *dafür*, *darin*, *daran*, etc.), being generally rendered by an English preposition followed by a participial clause: *Statt daß er seinen Auftrag ausführte*, instead of performing his charge. *Ohne daß er es zu merken schien*, without seeming to notice it. *Außer daß er seine Gesundheit verlor*, *except that* he lost his health (or *besides* losing his health). *Dadurch daß er stets seine Versprechungen hielt*, by always keeping his promises. *Daran daß er hier ist, habe ich nicht gedacht*, of his being here I did not think.

7. *Als* *daß* with the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect (mostly of a modal auxiliary) is used idiomatically after adjectives or adverbs preceded by *zu* (*too*), corresponding to a mere English infinitive: *Ich weiß dies zu gewiß, als daß ich mich irren könnte*, I know this too certainly *to be mistaken*. *Er war zu hartnäckig, als daß er seinen Plan aufgegeben hätte*, he was too obstinate *to give up* his plan. If the subjects in both clauses are different, the English sentence must be recast: *Die Festung wurde zu hartnäckig vertheidigt, als daß wir sie hätten nehmen können*, the fortress was too bravely defended *to be taken by us*. *Es ist zu spät, als daß er noch kommen könnte*, it is too late *for him to come* (literally: *than that he should come*).

8. The adverbs *falls* (in the case that), and *wofern* (provided that) are frequently used with the force of the conjunction *wenn* (*if*): *Falls es morgen regnen sollte*, if it should rain to-morrow. *Wofern er sein Versprechen hält*, if (provided that) he keeps his promise.

9. The English conjunction *unless* (*except if*) is either translated by *wenn nicht*, *wofern nicht*, *außer wenn*, or by the circumlocution *es sei denn daß*, or by the subjunctive of the verb placed at the beginning of the clause, and followed by *denn*: *I shall depart to-morrow unless he should order (it) otherwise*, *ich werde morgen abreißen, wenn er es nicht anders bestimmt*; or *es sei denn, daß er es anders bestimmt*; or *er bestimme es denn anders*.

10. The adverb *auch* in connection with preceding relative adjectives or adverbs (*wo*, *wie*, *wann*) or with the adverbs *so sehr* or with *so* and an adjective, is used with the force of a *concessive conjunction*, similar to the conjunctions *obwohl*, *obgleich*, etc. (although). These combinations are rendered in different ways:

- a) *Auch* after relatives corresponds to the English combinations with *ever*, *soever*: *Wer es auch sei*, whoever he (it) may be. *Wo er sich auch befinde*, wherever he may stay. *Was auch geschehen mag*, *er wird sein Wort halten*, whatsoever may happen, he will keep his word.
- b) *Auch* after *so sehr* (*wie sehr*) corresponds to the adverb *however*, *however much*: *Wir können es nicht thun, so (wie) sehr wir es auch wünschen*, we cannot do it however much we may desire it.
- c) *Auch* after *so* with an adjective or adverb is rendered by *however* or by *as*: *So ehrlich seine Gefinnungen auch sein mochten*, man traute ihm dennoch nicht, *however* honest might have been his sentiments, he was nevertheless not trusted. *So groß auch sein Einfluß war*, er konnte seine Wünsche nicht durchsetzen, *great as* was his influence, he could not carry out his desires.

§ 91. If a clause introduced by a subordinating conjunction is placed BEFORE the principal sentence, the clause is called **PROTASIS** (*Vordersatz*), and the principal sentence, **APODOSIS** (*Nachsatz*). The apodosis generally has the **INVERTED ORDER** of arrangement, in which the finite verb has the first place before the subject of the sentence. If the protasis be introduced by one of the conjunctions *wenn*, *als*, *da*, *weil*, *wie*, *obgleich* (and its synonyms) and the combinations with *so* (Rem. 10), the apodosis is frequently introduced by the adverb *so*, which in this connection is not translated in English:

**EXAMPLES:** — *Daß sich dies ereignen würde, hatte ich längst vermuthet*, that this would happen I had supposed long ago. *Während ich auf dem Lande war, brannte mein Haus in der Stadt ab*, while I was in the country, my house in the city burned down. *Wenn ihr ruhig zuhören wollt, (so) werde ich euch die Gründe auseinanderlegen*, if you will listen quietly I shall explain to you the reasons. *Obwohl du Recht hast, (so) wirst du doch wohl thun, dich zu mäßigen*, although you are right, you would nevertheless

do well to restrain yourself. So sehr du auch eilen magst, (so) werde ich doch früher dort sein, als du, however much you may hasten, I shall yet be sooner there than you.

REM. In periods with the combination *je . . . . desto* (the . . . . the), the clause introduced by *je* is the dependent clause (protasis), and that with *desto* the principal sentence (apodosis). Hence the former has the order of dependent clauses (§ 90, REM. 1), while the latter has the inverted order: Je weniger ihr darüber sprecht, desto besser wird es für euch sein, the less you speak about it, the better will it be for you.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### ADVERBS.

§ 92. All adverbs are derived words, being formed from any of the other parts of speech. The most important class of the adverbs is that which is derived from ADJECTIVES.

REM. Adverbs are condensations of speech, representing either prepositional phrases, containing one of the ideas of SPACE, TIME, MANNER, INTENSITY, CAUSE, or whole clauses. Thus the adverb *hier* (here) denotes *at this place*: the adverb *wann* (when), *at what time*; *wie* (how), *in what manner*; *leicht* (easily), *in an easy manner*; *sehr* (very, very much), *in a high degree*; *warum* (why), *for what cause*. Other adverbs denote whole clauses, as:  *Zwar, it is true that*; *bekanntlich, as you (we) know*; *hoffentlich, it may be hoped that*; *wahrscheinlich* (probably), *it is probable that*; *sonst* (else), *if this is not the case, then . . . .* Thus the adverbs *ja* (yes) and *nein* (no) denote the affirmation or denial of the whole preceding interrogative sentence.

§ 93. Adverbs derived from ADJECTIVES imply 1) the idea of a preposition;\* 2) the idea of the adjective from which they are derived; 3) one of the ideas of space, time, manner, intensity or cause. The adjectives from which adverbs are derived are either ORDINARY or PRONOMINAL adjectives. Ordinary adjectives are used as adverbs in their own crude forms with-

---

\* Thus the adverbs of manner imply the preposition *in* (*schön, in a beautiful manner*); adverbs of time imply the preposition *at* or *on* (*heute, at this day*).

out receiving any ending\*: *Er spricht gut, he speaks well. Sie handeln weise, they act wisely. Diese Schwierigkeit ist leicht erklärt, this difficulty is easily explained.*

REM. — 1. Some adverbs add the ending *lich* (English *ly*) to the adjective: *schwerlich*, hardly; *wahrlich*, verily; *lediglich*, only, and several others. Other adverbs add the word *weise* (like the English *wise* in *otherwise*) to the gen. fem. of the adjective, this word being originally the fem. noun *Weise* (manner), as: *glücklicherweise*, fortunately; *merkwürdigerweise*, peculiarly; *klugerweise* (or *küßlich*) prudently. A few adjectives add the ending *e*, as: *lange*, long, a long time; *ferne* or *fern*, far. The adjective *gut* forms two adverbs *wohl* and *gut*, both corresponding to the English *well*.

2. The COMPARATIVES of adjectives are used as adverbs without any further ending, in the same manner as the positives: *er lief schneller*, he ran more quickly. *Er wußte das besser*, he knew that better.

3. The adverbs of SUPERLATIVES are differently formed for absolute superlatives (denoting a very high degree), and relative superlatives (denoting the highest degree among compared qualities).

The adverbs of absolute superlatives are formed:

- a) Without any ending in the manner of positives. Only a few adverbial superlatives, thus formed, are in common usage, as: *freundlichst*, most amicably; *herzlichst*, most cordially; *innigst*, most tenderly; *ehrerbietigst*, most humbly; *ergebenst*, (most) respectfully; *gehörigst*, (most) obediently. Several adverbs thus formed cannot be translated literally, as: *gefalligst* or *gütigst*, if you please; *möglichst* as much as possible; *bestmöglichst*, as well as possible; *baldmöglichst*, as soon as possible; *längst*, long ago; *äußerst* (*höchst*), exceedingly.
- b) A few superlative adverbs add the ending *ens* to the superlative of the adjective, as: *bestens* (in the best manner), *schönstens* (in the handsomest manner), *frühestens* (at the earliest), *spätstens* (at the latest), *wenigstens* (at least).
- c) Generally the absolute superlative of adverbs is formed by the preposition *auf* with the accus. neuter of the adjective superlative: *aufse sorgfältigste*, in the most accurate manner; *aufse kostbarste*, most expensively. *Er unterlagte dies aufse strengste*, 'he forbade this in the most positive manner'. Very frequently the absolute superlative adverbs are expressed by circumlocution with superlatives of degree and the positives of the adverbs: *außerst heftig*, most (extremely) violently. *Er ward höchst milde bestraft*, he was punished most leniently.

---

\* Hence it is impossible to distinguish formally a predicative adjective from an adverb in German. The connection alone must show whether a word must be parsed as a predicative adjective or as an adverb. Compare: *Dies ist leicht* (this is easy), and *dies ist leicht gethan* (this is easily done). *Er ist vorsichtig*, he is cautious, and *er handelt vorsichtig*, he acts cautiously.

Adverbs of relative superlatives are formed by *am* with the dative of the adjective-superlative, the same as predicative superlatives (§ 59): *Er hat diesen Punkt am sorgfältigsten behandelt*, he has treated this subject most accurately (that is: *more accurately than the other objects*, or: *than other persons*). *Dies Regiment hat dem Feinde am längsten widerstanden*, this regiment has withstood the enemy longest (that is: *longer than any other regiment*). Rarely the preposition *zu* is used instead of *an*: *zum mindesten*, at least.

§ 94. To the PRONOMINAL adjectives correspond PRONOMINAL adverbs which, accordingly, are called INTERROGATIVE, RELATIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, INDEFINITE and NUMERAL ADVERBS. From possessive pronouns no adverbs are formed.

To the interrogatives (*wer*, *was*, *welcher*) correspond the following adverbs: 1) of PLACE: *wo*, where; *wohin*, whither; *woher*, whence; 2) of TIME: *wann*, when; 3) of MANNER and INTENSITY: *wie*, how (in what MANNER or DEGREE); 4) of CAUSE: *warum*, *weßhalb*, *weßwegen*, why.

REM. — 1. The adverb *wie* is used in connection with other adverbs to form adverbial expressions of TIME, QUANTITY, DEGREE and MANNER: *wie oft*, how often; *wie sehr*, how much; *wie bald*, how soon. *Wie* is also used, like the English *how* before adjectives as an adverb of intensity (*wie groß*, *wie gut*, etc.). Such combinations must often be recast in English: *Ein wie theures Pferd haben Sie*; how dear is the horse you have? (literally: *A how dear horse have you?*)

2. The adverb *wo* forms compounds with most prepositions, having the force of the corresponding English preposition with the interrogative pronoun *what* (*was*), as *womit*, *woburch*, *wonach* (with what, by what, after what). With prepositions beginning with a vowel, *wo* takes its old and original form *wor* (*worauf*, *woran*, *worin*). See § 87.

§ 95. The demonstrative adverbs are mostly formed from the demonstrative root *da* (corresponding to the demonstrative adjective *der*), and the ancient demonstrative root *hi* (corresponding to the adjective *dieser*). They are: 1) adverbs of PLACE: *hier*, here (at *this* place); *da* (*dort*), there (at *that* place); *her* (toward the place of the speaker); *hin* (away from the place of the speaker), and the combinations *daher* or *dorthier* (thence, from there), *dahin* or *dorthin* (thither), *hierher* and *hierhin* (hither); 2) adverbs of TIME: *dann*, *then*, and the compound *damalß*, at *that* time; *jetzt*, now, at *this* time; 3) of MANNER and INTENSITY: *so*, *so*, *thus*; 4) of CAUSE: *darum*, *deßhalb*, *deßwegen*, therefore, for that reason.

REM.—1. The adverbs *her* and *hin* belong to the most frequent words of the German language, without having any precise English equivalents. They are used either in composition or in close connection with other words. See P. C. p. 99, Obs. 4:

- a) In composition with adverbs they take the last place, *hin* denoting a direction away from the place of the speaker to or *towards* a place, and *her* a direction from another place toward that of the speaker. Thus are used *wohin* (whither), *dahin* or *dorthin* (thither), *fernhin* to [into] a distance; *woher* (whence), *daher* or *dorthher*-(thence), *feruher* (from afar). In composition with *hier*, however, both *hin* and *her* denote direction toward the speaker, *hierher* denoting *hither* (not hence\*), and *hierhin* *hither* or *thither*, referring to a place near the speaker. *Er kommt d o r t h e r* or *d a h e r*, he comes *thence* (from there); *er geht d o r t h i n* or *d a h i n*, he goes *thither*. But: bringe dies *h i e r h e r*, bring this *hither* (to me); lege das Buch *h i e r h i n*, place the book *here* (at a spot near the speaker). *Hierhin* is often used in opposition to *dorthin*, the same as *dieser* in opposition to *jener*.
- b) In composition with VERBS *her* has generally the meaning of *hierher* (hither), and *hin* the meaning of *dorthin* (thither). *Er eilte h e r*, he hastened *hither*; *er eilte h i n*, he hastened *thither*.
- c) In composition with prepositions *her* and *hin* generally take the first place, the accent being on the preposition (*heran*, *hinauf*, *herein*,† *hinab*,† etc.). In these compounds, which are generally again composed with verbs, the words *her* and *hin* are not distinguished in the English translation (see the examples in P. C. p. 100), and merely refer to the place of the speaker, or to that place to which the speaker imagines himself transferred in his narrative. '*He stepped into the carriage*' may be rendered: *er stieg in den Wagen herein* or *hinein*. The former translation indicates that the speaker *is* in the carriage or dwells there with his mind; the latter translation indicates that the speaker *is*, or imagines himself to be, outside of the carriage.

If the words *her* and *hin* follow the preposition with which they are compounded, they have mostly conventional meanings. The word *her* in this combination frequently denotes the absence of precise direction: *Er schritt e i n h e r*, he walked *along*; *er ging u m h e r*, he walked *about*. The metaphorical meanings of the different compositions of *her* and *hin* are very different, and must be learned from the lexicon.

\* The English *hence* is rendered by *von hier*, not by *hierher*.

† The preposition *in* with the accusative takes in all compositions the form *ein*. The preposition *in* with the dative takes the form *inne*, which in the verb *inwohnen* is changed into *in*, but in the noun *Einwohner* into *ein*. Both forms are inorganic.

† *Ab* in compositions corresponds to the English *off* and often to the preposition *von*.

2. *Da* and *hier* (like *wo*) form compounds with most prepositions (see § 87.), corresponding to an English preposition with the pronoun *it* or the demonstratives *this* and *that*. *Da* (before vowels *dar*) implies the pronoun *it* or the demonstrative *that*; *hier* implies the demonstrative *this*: *Dadurch*, *by that, by it, thereby*; *hierdurch*, *by this*; *darin*, *in that, in it, therein*; *hierin*, *in this*. Both *da* and *hier*, but especially the former, are frequently used as adverbs of **TIME**, with the meaning *then*, and often serve as loose connectives to denote the progress of the narrative: *Da kam ihm sein Bruder entgegen*, *then* his brother met him.

3. To the adverbs formed from the demonstrative root *hi* belong the words *heute* (old German *hiutu*, contracted from *hiutagu*, at this day), *to-day*; and *heuer* (old German *hiuru*, contracted from *hiujaru*, in this year), *this year*. Here belongs also the word *heint* or *hint*, *to-night* (old German *hinah*), which occurs only in some local dialects.

4. To the demonstrative *derselbe* corresponds the adverb *eben* in its different compositions: *ebenso*, in the same manner; *ebenda* (*ebendafelbst*), at the same place; *ebendahin*, to the same place; *ebendaher*, from the same place; *ebenefalls*, likewise. *Eben* is also connected with *derselbe* and the other demonstrative adjectives, making them more emphatic: *eben derselbe*, *eben dieser*, *eben jener*, *eben der* (that very man, etc.). The various idiomatic significations of *eben* must be learned from the lexicon.

§ 96. The indefinite adverbs are of very various formation, being either ancient words, or compounds of modern origin. They are best classified according to their connection with the indefinite adjectives (p. 20, 21, 22).

- a) To the indefinites *einiger*, *welcher* and *etwas* (§ 37.), or to the idea represented by *some* and *any* belong the adverbs *je* (*jemals*), *ever*; the compounds of the adverbs *wo*, *wann* and *wie* with *irgend*, *irgendwo*\*, *somewhere, anywhere*; *irgend wann*, *at some time*; *irgendwie*, *in some manner, somehow, anyhow*, and the adverb *etwa* (or *etwan*, instead of *etwann*), denoting 'indefiniteness in general, and corresponding to *about*, *perhaps*, 'say': *Er ist etwa acht Jahre alt*, he is *about* eight years old. *Habt ihr etwa geschlafen?* did you sleep perhaps? *Nehmen Sie einige Pfund . . . , etwa drei oder vier*, take some pounds of . . . , *say* three or four.
- b) To the indefinite *kein* belong the negative adverbs *nie*, *niemals*, *nimmer* (opposed to *je*), *never*; *nirgend*, *nowhere*; *nicht*, *not*; *nein*, *no*; *keineswegs*, *by no means*; *keinenfalls*, *in no case*.
- c) To *jeder* and *aller* belong the adverbs *überall* (*allenthalben*), *every where*; *immer* (*allezeit*, *jederzeit*, *stets*), *always, ever*; *jedenfalls*, *at any rate*; *jedesmal*, *allermal*, *every time*.

\* Even the simple adverb *wo* is sometimes used as an indefinite adverb, with the meaning *somewhere*.



- d) To viel belong the adverbs oft, often; häufig, frequently; vielfach, many times; sehr, very, very much, much; zu, too; zu sehr, too much.
- e) To wenig belong selten, seldom, rarely, and to mancher the adverbs manchmal, bisweilen, zuweilen, sometimes.

REM.—1. The root of the adverb je (old German io) is found in several indefinite adjectives and adverbs, as jeder, nie, immer (instead of *iemer*). Je is used especially in interrogative and conditional sentences: Seid ihr je dort gewesen? were you *ever* there? Wenn er je wiederkommen sollte, if he should *ever* return. Von je or von jeher denotes '*from times immemorial*'. Je has also a distributive meaning: Er gab ihnen je vier Thaler, he gave four dollars *to each*. Je nachdem means *according as*; je nach, *according to*. Je is also used as a conjunction. See § 90.

2. The indefinite adjectives viel, wenig, mehr are also used as adverbs. The English adverb *much* (very much) is generally translated by sehr: Er betrübt sich sehr (not viel), he is *much* afflicted. Viel is used as adverb only if it does not refer to INTENSITY: er geht viel spazieren, he walks *much*. The adverb mehr with a negative often corresponds to the English *longer*: Er ist nicht mehr Soldat, he is *no longer* a soldier. Er hat keine Freunde mehr, he has *no longer* any friends (no friends left). The adverbs gar and recht have a meaning similar to sehr, as: Er ist ein gar rechtlicher Mann, he is a very honest man; er ist recht geschickt, he is very clever. Gar nicht means *not at all*. The peculiar idiomatic meanings of gar must be learned from the lexicon.

§ 97. The relative adverbs have no peculiar formation of their own. The German language borrows either the interrogative or the demonstrative adverbs (with da) for the purpose of relative clauses.

REM.—1. As relatives of PLACE serve the adverbs wo, wohin, woher, and the compounds of wo with prepositions (§ 94, Rem. 2.): der Ort\*, wo ich ihn sah, the place where (at which) I saw him. Die Stadt, woher er kam, the city from which (whence) he came. Gehe, wo hin du willst, go where (whither) you like. Das Haus, worin er wohnt, the house in which he lives. The use of demonstrative adverbs as relatives of place is only poetical: der Berg, daher (instead of woher) er kam, the mountain from which he came.

2. As relatives of TIME the German language borrows either the interrogative or demonstrative adverbs of PLACE, as: das Jahr, wo (or da) dies geschah, the year *in which* this happened. The relative adverbs of MANNER are borrowed from the interrogatives (wie): die Art, wie dies geschah, the manner in which this was done.

\* Relative clauses, and clauses introduced by conjunctions are in German always separated by commas.

3. Relative adverbs are also used in correlation to demonstratives: Ich stand da, wo er mich erwartete, I stood *there where* he expected me. Ich handelte so, wie er es beschlossen hatte, I acted *so as* he had determined it. In such connections the demonstratives are frequently omitted, and the relative adverbs pass over into CONJUNCTIONS: Ich stand, wo er mich erwartete; ich handelte, wie er es beschlossen hatte.

§ 98. Many adverbs that formerly were adjectives, are now used only as adverbs, as bald, *soon*, gern, *willingly*. Other adverbs are formed in various ways from nouns, verbs and prepositions. See the lexicons.

REM. Adverbs not derived from adjectives are generally not susceptible of comparison. But of some adverbs that formerly were used as adjectives, an irregular comparison has been preserved. Bald (*soon*) forms the comparatives eher or früher (*sooner*) and the superlatives am ehesten, am frühesten (*soonest*). Gern (*willingly*) forms the comparative lieber (*more willingly*, rather) and the superlative am liebsten (*most willingly*): Ich thue es gern, I do it willingly (I like to do it); ich thue es lieber, I rather do it; ich thue es am liebsten, I like most to do it. Oft (*often*) forms the comparatives öfter, öfterer (*oftener*) or öfters (with the force of a positive—*rather often*). The superlative is rare: am (zum) öftesten, öftesten, öftersten (*oftenest*). Instead of it am häufigsten is generally used. It is peculiar that the comparatives öfter and öfterer, and (very rarely) the superlative are also used as adjectives.

## CHAPTER IX.

### THE MOST IMPORTANT SYNTACTICAL RULES\*.

§ 99. The DEFINITE ARTICLE is often used in German when the English language either uses no article at all, or an indefinite article. This is especially the case 1) before abstract nouns, especially if the case could not be recognized without an article: Die Vorschriften der Religion, the commands of religion; die Uebel des Kriegs, the evils of war; 2) if concrete nouns are used to represent a whole genus or species) as: Der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt, man proposes and God disposes. Die Thiere sind sterblich, beasts are mortal; 3) if an indefinite noun is followed by an attributive genitive with the indefinite article: Der Gesandte eines auswärtigen Hofes kam einst in eine kleine deutsche Stadt, an ambassador of some foreign court came once to a small German city.

The article is frequently not used in German, when the English language makes use of either the definite or indefinite article: 1) often with nouns

\* Only those syntactical rules are given here, which for the beginner are most necessary to know in order to introduce him in the reading of German text.

connected by *und* or *oder*: *Er verkaufte Haus und Garten*, he sold *the* house and *the* garden; 2) often before adjectives after prepositions: *Er antwortete mit größter Ruhe*, he answered with *the* greatest calmness; 3) often before predicative nouns: *Er ist Bürger der Vereinigten Staaten*, he is *a* citizen of the United States.

### § 100. AGREEMENT.

1. All adjective pronouns, adjectives and participles used adjectively must agree with their governing nouns in number, gender, and case: *Ein geräumiges Haus*, a spacious house. *Mit großer Aufmerksamkeit*, with great attention. *Solchen Männern*, to such men. *Die Sorgen liebender Eltern*, the cares of loving parents.

2. If adjectives, without a repetition of the article, are placed after their governing nouns\*, they are generally left without inflectional endings: *Die Bäume, grün und frisch*, the trees, green and fresh; but *die Kinder, die unschuldigen*, the children, the innocent ones.

3. Some adjectives are either altogether INDECLINABLE, or drop occasionally, or in some of their forms the inflectional endings. Altogether indeclinable are *a*) adjectives in *er*, formed from the names of cities, as: *der Pariser Friede*, the Parisian peace, *Gen. des Pariser Friedens*, etc. *b*) The adjectives *lauter* and *eitel*, if used in the signification *mere*, *nothing but*: *Er spricht in lauter Räthseln*, he speaks in mere riddles. *In eitel Lust und Pracht*, in mere gaiety and splendor. *c*) Numeral adjectives ending in *erlei* are indeclinable: *Mit mancherlei Bemerkungen*, with several remarks. *d*) Adjectives often drop their strong ending *es* in the nom. or acc. singular of the neuter gender: *Ein neu* (instead of *neues*) *Gesetz*, a new law. *e*) The adjectives *ganz* and *halb*, if used without an article, are used without inflectional endings before names of countries and towns: *Solchen Glauben habe ich in ganz Israel nicht gefunden*, such a faith I did not find in *all* Israel. *Halb London würde ruinirt werden*, one half of London would be ruined. *f*) For *mehr*, *viel*, *wenig*, see § 41, 42, 44. *g*) The pronominal adjectives *mancher*, *welcher*, *solcher*, frequently drop their inflectional endings, and always before the indefinite article: *manch ein* (many *a*), *welch ein* (what *a*), *solch ein* (such *a*).

4. Predicative adjectives are not inflected, except if used with an article (see p. 32.). Predicative nouns, and nouns in apposition always agree with their subjects or governing nouns in case, and generally in number also. *Er war verwandt mit Wilhelm, dem Prinzen von Oranien*, he was related to William, the prince of Orange. If the predicative noun (or the noun in apposition) denote a person (§ 6.), it must take the feminine gender in agreement with a feminine subject, provided the noun be capable of taking that ending. *Die Geschichte ist die Richterin der Könige*, history is the judge of kings.

---

\* The placing of adjectives after their governing nouns is mostly confined to poetry or higher style.

5. If two or more subjects are connected by *und*, the verb is generally in the plural; but if all the subjects are in the singular, the verb is sometimes found in the singular number. *Karl und Friedrich sind angekommen*, Charles and Frederick *have* arrived. *In seiner Gewalt war Tod und Leben*, in his power *were* life and death.

6. By two or more attributive adjectives the number of their governing noun is not affected: *Die deutsche und französische Sprache* (not *Sprachen*), the German and French languages.

7. If a personal or demonstrative pronoun, used substantively, is the subject of a sentence with the verb *sein* and a noun as predicate, the pronoun is frequently placed in the neuter singular, even if it refers to persons, or to things of different gender and number. The verb *sein* agrees in this instance in number with the predicative noun: *Es waren unsere Freunde, die ihr sahet*, *it was* our friends whom you saw. *Das (dies, dieses) sind meine Brüder*, *these are* my brothers. *Das war seine Rede*, that was his language.

8. Relative pronouns, and personal pronouns of the third person agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but not in case: *Die Stadt, in der wir wohnen*, the city in *which* we live. *Die Befehle, denen wir gehorchen mußten*, the orders *which* we had to obey. *Die öffentliche Meinung rächt sich an Allen, die sie verachten*, public opinion takes revenge on all that despise *it*.

9. If the subject of a clause is a relative pronoun, having a personal pronoun of the first or second person as antecedent, the verb of the clause is either placed in the third person, or in the person of the pronoun. But in the latter case the personal pronoun must be repeated after the relative: *Was kann ich thun, der selber hilflos ist* (or *der ich selber hilflos bin*), what can I do who am helpless myself?

10. Possessive pronouns of the third person have a double agreement. They agree as to the gender and number pertaining to their *ROOTS*, with their *ANTECEDENTS*; but in respect to their *ENDINGS* they agree in case, gender and number with their *GOVERNING NOUNS*. *Die Mutter segnet ihren Sohn*, the mother blesses her son. *Der Mond erhält sein Licht von der Sonne*, the moon receives her light from the sun. *Die Söhne Eduards wurden von ihrem Onkel Richard ermordet*, the sons of Edward were murdered by their uncle Richard.

11. English nouns preceded by the preposition *of* are frequently rendered by German appositional nouns without inflectional endings. Here belong a) names of countries and places: *Das Königreich Spanien*, the kingdom *of* Spain, Gen. *des Königreichs Spanien* (not *Spaniens*). *Die Stadt Berlin*, the city *of* Berlin, Gen. *der Stadt Berlin*. b) Names of months: *Der Monat Juni*, the month *of* June, Gen. *des Monats Juni*. c) Names of families: *Das Haus Hohenzollern*, the house *of* Hohenzollern, Gen. *des Hauses Hohenzollern*. d) Expressions denoting measured, weighed and computed substances. If these are in apposition to nouns expressing the units of measures and weights or to nouns expressing quantity, they do not generally assume case-endings, but take the sign of the plural when they do this in English: *Sehn Ellen*

Feinwand, ten yards of linen; fünf Duzend Nägel, five dozen of nails; eine Menge Soldaten, a multitude of soldiers. The nouns denoting the units of measure and weight, if they are masculine and neuter, take neither case-endings nor the sign of the plural: Mit drei Pfund Blei, with three pounds of lead. Ein zehn Fuß langes Brett, a board ten feet long.

### § 101. ABSOLUTE ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives used with the force of substantives are of masculine gender if they denote PERSONS in GENERAL; but if they refer to women they are feminine. They are used both in the singular and plural, and may refer to individuals or to whole classes of persons. In the singular they must be connected with the definite or indefinite article, but may be used without article in the plural: Ein Armer, a poor man. Die Kranke, the sick woman. Die Reichen, the rich (persons). Dem Schwachen ist sein Stachel auch gegeben, a sting is given even to the weak. Besiegten soll man eine goldne Brücke bauen, for the vanquished a golden bridge should be built. Of the pronominal adjectives the demonstratives and *mancher* may be used absolutely in both numbers, in reference to persons: Einige, Viele and Wenige are thus used in the plural only: Einer, Jeder and Keiner only in the singular.

2. The absolute singular neuters Alles and Was (instead of Alles was, Alle die) are often used idiomatically in a plural sense, referring to PERSONS: Alles freut sich, all rejoice. Was von den Einwohnern dem Gemetzel entgangen war, wurde in die Sklaverei verkauft, all of the inhabitants that had escaped the slaughter were sold into slavery. Often absolute adjectives in the neuter singular refer to persons in order to indicate that either of the two sexes is meant. Hat nicht ein Jeder von euch (men and women) schon Ähnliches erfahren? Has not every one of you already experienced similar things?

3. Absolute adjectives are placed in the neuter singular to denote THINGS or QUALITIES, both in an abstract and concrete sense: Das Erhabene und das Schöne, the sublime and the beautiful. Das Große und Unerwartete des Schauspiels, the greatness of the spectacle and the fact that it was unexpected (literally: the great and unexpected of the spectacle). Wenn wir Kleines mit Großem vergleichen, if we compare small with great things. Dies (dieses) nimmt mich Wunder, this takes me by surprise.

4. All absolute adjectives are inflected either STRONG or WEAK, according to the general rules, as if nouns of respectively masculine, feminine or neuter gender were added.

### § 102. THE THEORY OF THE CASES.\*

1. The NOMINATIVE is a) the case of the subject, and of all words that must agree with the subject; b) the case of the predicate-noun. A predicate-

\* The general English equivalents of the German cases (p. 6) denote the original ideas connected with them. They are only applied when the relations in which the nouns stand to other parts of the sentence are conceived in the same way by both languages. Wherever this conception differs, the German cases must be expressed by other equivalents. We give in § 102. the leading differences in the conceptions of both languages.

nominative is required *a.* by the verbs *sein*, to be; *werden*, to become; *bleiben*, to remain; *scheinen*, to seem; *heißen*, to be called. *b.* By the passive of those verbs that denote the application of a NAME to some one (*nennen*, to call, *schelten* or *schimpfen*, to call abusively; *taufen*, to give a name by baptism, to christen). The English predicate-nominatives after the passives of other verbs (as: *to consider*, *elect*, etc.) must, with the corresponding German verbs, be expressed by the preposition *zu* or *für*: *Er wurde zu dem Präsidenten erwählt*, he was elected President. *Er wird für einen Gelehrten gehalten*, he is considered a scholar. *c.* The nominative is used, as in English, with the force of a vocative with or without the interjection *o* (*Oh*).

2. The German VERBS, except those classes mentioned No. 1, are construed either with cases other than the nominative, or with nouns in connection with prepositions. The cases (without prepositions) required by verbs are the GENITIVE, DATIVE and ACCUSATIVE, each of which may correspond to a mere objective in English or to a prepositional construction. It is PRESUMED that a verb requiring the mere objective in the English language corresponds to a German verb construed with the accusative: *Ich lobe den Schüler*, I praise the scholar; *er tödtet seinen Feind*, he kills his enemy. The following rules are mostly exceptions to this principle.

- a) The GENITIVE is required 1) by many REFLEXIVES, as: *sich einer Sache anmaßen*, to usurp a thing; *sich einer Sache bedienen*, to make use of a thing; *sich einer Sache erinnern*, to remember a thing; *sich Jemandes erbarmen*, to take pity on somebody. 2) By many verbs which besides an accusative of the direct object require a genitive of the indirect object, as: *Jemanden einer Sache beschuldigen*, to accuse somebody of a thing; *Jemanden eines Dienstes entlassen*, to remove somebody from an office. 3) The other verbs requiring a genitive are mostly construed also with the accusative: *einer (eine) Sache bedürfen*, to need a thing; *einer (eine) Sache entbehren*, to lack a thing; *einer (eine) Sache erwähnen*, to mention a thing.
- b) The verbs requiring a simple object in the DATIVE mostly correspond to English verbs requiring the mere objective: *Jemandem danken*, to thank somebody; *Jemandem drohen*, to threaten somebody; *Jemandem entfliehen*, to escape somebody. Thus are construed *folgen*, to follow; *gehorden*, to obey; *helfen*, to help; *nützen*, to benefit; *entfagen*, to renounce; *widerstehen*, to resist; *schmeicheln*, to flatter, and many others.—Verbs that require two objects generally have one object (the direct) in the ACCUSATIVE, and the other (the indirect) in the DATIVE, as: *Einem etwas geben*, to give (to) somebody something; *Einem etwas erlauben*, to permit somebody something. This construction comprises verbs denoting the taking away of something from somebody. After such verbs the person from whom something is taken, is almost always placed in the DATIVE, as: *Einem etwas nehmen*, to take something from somebody; *Einem etwas stehlen* or *rauben*, to steal or rob something from somebody;

Einem etwas entziehen, to withdraw something from somebody. Thus are construed entwenden, to purloin; entreißen, to snatch away; abspänden, to distrain; abnötigen, to force away, and many other verbs expressing similar ideas.

- c) The following verbs, taking two objects, require, both of them, to be in the ACCUSATIVE: 1) fragen, to ask, and lehren, to teach;\* 2) those verbs which, in the passive, require a predicate-nominative (No. 1, b, b): Sie nannten ihn den Großen, they called him the Great. Verbs of considering, selecting, etc., require the prepositions zu or für.

3. GERMAN ADJECTIVES govern either the GENITIVE (as: fähig, capable; schuldig, guilty; verdächtig, suspected; würdig, worthy), or the DATIVE (as: ähnlich, similar; gleich, equal; nahe, near; nützlich, useful; gefährlich, dangerous), or they are construed with prepositions (as: gültig gegen, kind to; reich an, rich in; stolz auf, proud of; zornig über, angry at, etc.). Those that govern the genitive mostly correspond to English adjectives construed with of; those that govern the dative mostly answer to English adjectives construed with to or for. The accusative after adjectives is used only after a few adjectives in place of the usual genitive, as: Ich bin ihn (seiner) los, I am rid of him. Ich bin es müde, I am tired of it.

4. A NOUN, dependent on another noun, is placed either in the GENITIVE or connected by a preposition.† The English possessive case dependent on nouns, is either rendered by a German GENITIVE (which may be placed before its noun—the latter losing its article, as in English), or by a compound noun: My brother's children, meines Bruders Kinder (meine Bruderkinde); my sister's house, meiner Schwester Haus; a stone's throw, ein Steinwurf; my night's rest, meine Nachtruhe.

5. If the different cases neither complete the idea of a noun, nor that of a verb or adjective, they are called ADVERBIAL cases.

- a. The ADVERBIAL GENITIVE is of very frequent occurrence, but generally idiomatically confined to certain phrases, as: Rechter Hand, to the right; meines Erachtens, according to my opinion; er war seines

\* Fragen, however, is generally construed with an accusative of the person and a prepositional object (über, nach, wegen). Lehren is generally construed with two accusatives, but the object denoting the person who is taught, is not unfrequently found in the dative (Lessing, Gutzkow, Immermann). This is *always* the case in the passive construction: Mir (not mich) wird etwas gelehrt, I am taught something (not ich werde etwas gelehrt). In poetry, however, the accusative is sometimes found in connection with the passive of lehren, as: Das schlimmste, was uns widerfährt, das werden wir vom Tag gelehrt (Goethe). Some grammarians consider the dative after lehren to be faulty both in the active and in the passive.

† No noun governs a mere dative or accusative. Such constructions as mir zu Liebe (for the love of me) are elliptical, and the dative in these is an ADVERBIAL case (see No. 5, b).

- e) The indefinite substantive pronoun *man* (§ 22.) is very frequently an equivalent of the passive voice, if the doers of the action are indefinite persons, or if it is not convenient to mention them: *Man dachte daran, diese Maßregeln anzunehmen, it was considered to adopt these measures. Man mußte den Plan aufgeben, the plan had to be given up. Man überhäufte ihn mit Vorwürfen, he was overwhelmed with reproaches.*

For the double form of the passive with *sein* and *werden* see P. C. 74. 77.

2. *Personal and Impersonal Passives:*

- a) Only verbs governing an accusative as direct object form a complete passive voice, by changing the accusative into the nominative as passive subject. The active subject in the passive construction is introduced by the preposition *von* (by), sometimes by *durch* (by): *Der Lehrer lobt den Schüler, the teacher praises the pupil. PASSIVE: Der Schüler wird von dem Lehrer gelobt, the pupil is praised by the teacher.* Verbs, governing the accusative as direct object are called **TRANSITIVE**, and the passive voice formed from these is called the **PERSONAL PASSIVE** (having the transitive accusative as a subject). The existence of a personal passive is a certain evidence of the active verb being transitive, and of its governing the accusative.
- b) Verbs **NOT TRANSITIVE** form an **IMPERSONAL PASSIVE**, if their idea admits of a **PERSON** as subject. (The impersonal passive exists only in the infinitive (the governing verb taking the impersonal form), and in the third person singular of all tenses. In its complete form it is introduced by *es* (it), which is left out if it does not begin the sentence. It is translated in various ways: (*Es wurde über diese Bemerkung gelacht* (or: Über diese Bemerkung wurde gelacht), this remark was laughed at.) Hier darf nicht geraucht werden, smoking is not allowed here. *Es wird um Antwort gebeten* (or: Um Antwort wird gebeten), an answer is requested. *Es ist bis zum Abend gekämpft worden*, the battle lasted till evening. (S. § 79.)
- c) Verbs governing the genitive or dative form an **IMPERSONAL** passive only, in which the genitive or dative object remains unchanged, and generally is placed at the beginning of the passive phrase (without *es*). Such impersonals may generally be translated by English ordinary passives: *Es ward meiner nicht mehr bedurft* (or *meiner ward nicht mehr bedurft*), I was no longer needed; *Es wurde ihm nicht geglaubt* (ihm wurde nicht geglaubt), he was not believed. *Dem Feldherrn wurde geschmeichelt*, the general was flattered. *Deinem Freunde kann nicht geholfen werden*, your friend can not be helped.
- d) Neuter and intransitive verbs often take a **REFLEXIVE** form with the force of an impersonal passive (with or without *lassen* see No. 1): *Es stirbt sich schwer mit bösem Gewissen*, people die hard with a bad conscience. *Es geht sich hier gut*, here is good walking. Hier



läßt sich nur mit Mühe sprechen, it is difficult to speak here (one can speak here only with trouble).

§ 104. TENSES, INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES.

1. The PRESENT tense has sometimes the force of a future, of a command or of the English present perfect: Wann kommst du zurück, when *are you going* to return? Die Schweden rücken morgen in die Feste, the Swedes *will* enter the fortress to-morrow. Ihr schweigt, bis man euch fragt, *be silent* till you are asked. Du bleibst hier, you *must* remain. Ich warte schon lange hier, I *have* waited here for a long time.

2. In lively narration the present is often used with the force of an imperfect, and the perfect with the force of a pluperfect. Als dies geschah, stürzt er aus seinem Versteck hervor, und hat seinen Gegner bald übermächtig, when this happened, he *rushed* from his lurking place, and *had* soon overpowered his antagonist.

3. The IMPERFECT is, like the English past, the proper tense of the narrative. But in stating detached facts belonging to the past, the perfect is oftener used than the imperfect: Am vergangenen Freitag hat der Senat die Beratungen über das Finanzgesetz beendet (or beendigte der Senat), last Friday the Senate *finished* the deliberations on the finance-law.

4. The PERFECT, aside from having the force of the English past tense is employed, like the English present perfect, to indicate past events the results or effects of which exist at the time of the speaker: Karl Ritter hat durch seine Geographie von Asien die Wissenschaft der Erdkunde gänzlich umgestaltet, Charles Ritter, by his Geography of Asia, *has* entirely revolutionized geographical science. Der Degen hat den Kaiser arm gemacht, the sword *has impoverished* the emperor.

5. The FUTURE (first and second) is often used of probable events, referring to the present or past time: Er wird denken, daß du nicht hast kommen wollen, he *probably thinks* that you did not wish to come. Dein Vater wird (schon) dafür gesorgt haben, your father *has probably* taken care for that.

6. The INFINITIVE of any verb, in connection with the neuter article, is used with the force of a NOUN, corresponding to English substantives or participials in *ing*: Das Schreien und Toben der Menge, the *shouts (shouting) and raging(s) of the multitude*. Such infinitives have no plurals, but are declined (STRONG) in all cases of the singular.

7. The SUBJECT-INFINITIVE is used either with or without the preposition zu: Seine Neigungen besiegen ist schwer (or seine Neigungen zu besiegen ist schwer, or es ist schwer seine Neigungen zu besiegen), it is difficult to conquer one's inclinations.

8. The OBJECT-INFINITIVE is generally preceded by the preposition zu, and is used after verbs, adjectives or nouns, frequently with the force of the English participial in *ing* with or without prepositions, and of other forms of expression: Wir sangen an, den Platz zu räumen, we commenced to *evacuate* the place. Wir fuhren fort zu spielen, we continued *playing*. Er war unfähig zu sprechen, he was unable to *speak*. Die Gewohnheit zusammen

zu sein, the habit of *being* together. Der Feind verhinderte uns, weiter vorzurücken, the enemy prevented us *from advancing* any farther. Ich glaubte, ihn zu verstehen, I believed I understood him. Er wußte sich aus der Verlegenheit zu ziehen, he knew *how* to extricate himself from the dilemma.

9. Present infinitives of the active voice with *zu*, in connection with the verb *sein*, have a *PASSIVE* meaning, generally with the idea of possibility: Diese Meinung ist kaum zu vertheidigen, this opinion *can* hardly be defended (is hardly defensible). Daran war nicht zu denken, this *was* not to be thought of.

10. Infinitives with *zu* after the preposition *um* denote purpose, being rendered in *order to*: Er that dies, um mir zu schaden, he did this *in order to* hurt me.

11. The *OBJECT-INFINITIVE* is used without *zu* a) after the modal auxiliaries including *lassen*: Er darf nicht in die Stadt kommen, he is not allowed *to come* to the city: Ihr werdet euren Voratz nicht durchführen können, you will not be able *to carry out* your purpose. Es mag sein, wie ihr sagt, it may *be* as you say; b) after the verbs *hören*, *sehen*, *fühlen*, *finden*, *lernen*, *lehren*, *heißen*, *gehen*, *fahren*, *bleiben*, *haben*, *helfen*, *machen*: Ich höre ihn kommen, I hear him *come*. Wir sahen den Trupp sich langsam nähern, we saw the troop slowly *approaching*. Die Noth lehrte ihn arbeiten, necessity taught him *to work*. Geht schlafen! Go to bed (literally: to sleep. See P. C. p. 91.). c) The participle in the compound tenses of the modal auxiliaries and of the verbs *lassen*, *heißen*, *machen*, *sehen*, *helfen*, *hören* takes in these constructions the form of the present infinitive: Er hat nicht kommen wollen (instead of *gewollt*), he has not wished (did not wish) to come. Ihr hättet früher aufhören sollen (instead of *gesollt*), you ought to have stopped sooner. Ich habe ihn sprechen hören (instead of *gehört*), I have heard him talk. See § 80, 9.

12. Those English verbs which require a substantive object along with an infinitive, generally admit a similar construction in German, as: Er befahl mir zu kommen, he ordered *me to come*. Er zwang den Feind, die Waffen zu strecken, he compelled *the enemy to lay down* their arms. Wir hörten Jemand sprechen, we heard *somebody talk*. — But the verbs of *WISHING*, *EXPECTING*, *BELIEVING*, *DECLARING*, *CONSIDERING* do not admit this construction in German, generally requiring a clause with *daß*: Er wünschte, daß wir in der Stadt bleiben möchten (not: er wünschte uns in der Stadt zu bleiben), he wished *us to stay* in the city. Wir glaubten, daß er unserer Meinung sei, we believed *him to be* of our opinion.

13. Instead of construing the passives of these verbs (of wishing, etc.) with infinitives, the German language generally employs an *IMPERSONAL* construction followed by *daß*: He was believed to be in danger, es wurde geglaubt (man glaubte), daß er in Gefahr sei.

14. The English infinitives employed in indirect statements after interrogative adverbs or pronouns, and after *so as*, must be rendered by com-

plete sentences, *so as*, being translated by *so daß*: I was doubtful *what to do*, Ich war in Zweifel, was zu thun sei. — We were *so* near the battery *as to be exposed* to the guns, wir waren der Batterie so nahe, daß wir den Kanonen ausgesetzt waren.

15. German PARTICIPLES are used in the following instances:

a) With the force of ADJECTIVES, as: Anziehende Erzählungen, *interesting* tales. Nach vollbrachter Arbeit, after the labor had been accomplished (literally: after the *accomplished* labor). Here belongs the present participle preceded by *zu*, which is often called the FUTURE PARTICIPLE OF THE PASSIVE, and is rendered either by a passive infinitive, or by a relative clause with a passive verb: Eine später zu beantwortende Frage, a question *to be answered* at a later time. Diese nicht zu übersehende Tatsache, this fact *which ought not to be overlooked*. All these participles must be inflected like attributive adjectives.

b) Participles are used (without inflection) if an action is represented as ACCOMPANYING the action expressed by the main verb, or as being closely connected with it, as: Er ging fort, die Worte des Mannes überdenkend, he went away *reflecting* on the words of the man. But it is inadmissible thus to employ the participles of any auxiliary (modal or other). English participial constructions of this kind are generally changed into complete sentences: *Having spoken thus he went away*, nachdem er so gesprochen hatte, ging er hinweg (not: so gesprochen habend). English expressions with the auxiliary participle '*being*', and many of those with '*having*' that correspond to German verbs conjugated with *sein* (§ 69), may be generally rendered by the past participle of the main verb, as: Von diesem Vorhaben unterrichtet, rüstete er sich auf den Kampf, *being informed* of this design, he prepared for the conflict. — In der Stadt angekommen, erkundigte ich mich sogleich nach ihm, *having arrived* at the city, I immediately inquired for him.

c) Past participles are used to complete the verb *kommen* with the force of English present participles, and verbs of RECEIVING with the force of a noun in apposition: Er kam gelaufen (geritten, etc.), he came *running* (riding, etc.). Ich habe es geschenkt bekommen (erhalten), I received it *as a present*. Sometimes past participles (even in connection with reflexive pronouns) are used with the force of IMPERATIVES: Aufgepaßt! pay attention! Nur sich brav gewehrt, only *defend yourselves* bravely!

16. Aside from these instances, English participial constructions can generally not be expressed by means of German participles. The most usual German equivalents of English participial expressions are: a) INFINITIVES, either in the form of substantives (No. 6), or preceded by *zu*; b) COMPLETE CLAUSES introduced by *daß*, *indem*, *da*, *nachdem*; c) FINITE VERBS connected with the preceding sentence by means of the conjunction *und*.

Clauses with *daß*, and infinitives with *zu* are mostly used to render those participial constructions in which a participle in *ing* is preceded by a preposition. In these constructions the English preposition is regularly expressed by a prepositional adverb compounded with *da* (§ 95, 2): *By giving this advice*.

dadurch, daß er (man, ich, etc.) diesen Rath gab (gibt, etc.) [literally: *by this that he gave*]. *He insisted upon seeing him, er bestand darauf ihn zu sehen* (literally: *upon this to see him*).

EXAMPLES: *By teaching others*, we instruct ourselves, durch das Lehren Andre unterrichten wir uns selbst (or dadurch, daß wir Andere lehren, or indem wir Andere lehren). — I expected no reward for *delivering* him from this condition, ich erwartete keinen Lohn dafür, daß ich ihn aus dieser Lage rettete (or gerettet hatte, or retten würde, according to the connection). — I occupied myself *with reflecting* on the inconstancy of fortune, ich beschäftigte mich damit, über die Unbeständigkeit des Glücks nachzudenken (or mit Nachdenken über etc.). — I did not think of *his being* absent, ich dachte nicht daran, daß er abwesend sei. — *After delivering* my message, I returned, nachdem ich meine Botschaft abgestattet hatte, kehrte ich zurück. — Their conversation *turning* upon my favorite theme, I soon partook in the debates, da ihre Unterhaltung mein Lieblingsthema betraf, nahm ich bald Theil an den Verhandlungen. — I could not lend him those books, *needing* them for my own use, ich konnte ihm diese Bücher nicht leihen, da (indem) ich ihrer zum eigenen Gebrauche bedurfte. — *Knowing* that I would have your assistance, I engaged in the work, da ich wußte,\* daß ich Ihren Beistand haben würde, übernahm ich die Arbeit. — I told him all this, *adding* that he was expected by you, ich sagte ihm das Alles, und fügte hinzu, daß er von dir erwartet werde.

## § 105. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL.

The German subjunctive corresponds either to the English indicative, potential or imperative; rarely to the English subjunctive.

1. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE PRESENT is used in independent sentences conveying commands or requests: *Dr Bote trete ein!* let the messenger enter. *Es lebe der König*, (long) live the king! *Vertrauen wir, was wir diese Nacht gesehen*, dem jungen Hamlet, *let us impart* what we have seen to-night unto young Hamlet. This form is always used with the force of an imperative if the third person is used for direct address: *Sein Sie vorsichtig*, be cautious. *Sei Er kein Thor*, be no fool. Instead of this subjunctive, circumlocutions with the imperative *laßt*, (plur. *laßt, lassen Sie*), or with the present indicative of *mögen* or *wollen* are often employed: *Möge er unser bedenken*, may he remember us! *Er mag eintreten*, let him enter. *Laßt uns so-*

\* It would be grammatically correct to render this sentence and the next by literally employing German participles of the present: „*Wissend, daß ich etc.*“, and „*hinzufügend, daß er etc.*“. But in clauses denoting cause, and if the English participle has the force of a mere coordination, the German language generally prefers complete sentences introduced by conjunctions. This is especially the case when the English participle is connected with complicated adjuncts. Participial constructions are inadmissible in German, when the English participle has a subject different from that of the principal sentence, or when it is introduced by a preposition. See the examples.

† The use of *laß* or *laßt* is only admissible in direct address.

gleich anfangen, let us begin directly. Wir wollen uns entfernen, let us withdraw.

2. The subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect is used in exclamatory sentences expressing a wish of the speaker, not corresponding to reality. Such sentences have the inverted order (see § 106, 9.), and may be introduced by the interjection *Ö!* The verb is frequently followed by the particle *doch*. Such sentences are also introduced by the conjunction *daß*, or *Ö daß*, in which case the verb stands at the end: (*Ö*) *Wäre doch dein Bruder hier*, would that your brother were here! *Ö daß ich ihn nie gesehen hätte*, would that I had never seen him!

3. The subjunctive of all tenses is employed in indirect statements to represent an action as conceived, asserted, asked, commanded or wished, by a person introduced in the text by the author (or speaker). The author may thus introduce himself (*ich*) or a person addressed (*Du*, *Sie*)\*: *Er glaubte*,

\* The subjunctive of indirect statement is regularly used when the verb of the principal sentence is in the imperfect or pluperfect. If in this instance the verb of the stated clause is in the future, the indicative can never be used. If the principal verb is in the present or future, the subjunctive must likewise be used if the statement is against reality or doubtful: *Er wähnt, daß ich zu Hause sei*, he falsely supposes, that *I am* at home. *Er behauptet, daß sein Bruder mich nicht kenne*, he maintains, that his brother *does not know* me (if he really knows the speaker). Else, in indirect statements dependent on verbs in the present or future, the indicative is generally preferred to the subjunctive. In regard to the use of the subjunctive of indirect statement the following specialities should be noticed:

1. The most usual words which may govern a clause of indirect statement are these: a) *Verbs of conceiving*: denken, glauben, wähnen, vermuthen, zweifeln, hoffen, erwarten, fürchten, es scheint mir, kommt mir vor, and the nouns Gedanke, Wahn, Glaube, Absicht, etc. b) *Verbs of saying and asserting*: sagen, bemerken, behaupten, erklären, versichern, antworten, schreiben, benachrichtigen, and the corresponding nouns Bemerkung, Erklärung, etc. c) *Verbs expressing or implying a question*: fragen, sich erkundigen, nachforschen, zweifeln, nicht wissen (with *ob*), and the nouns Frage, Zweifel, etc. d) *Verbs of commanding*: verlangen, fordern, befehlen, verordnen, and the nouns Befehl, Auftrag, etc. e) *Verbs of wishing*: wünschen, bitten, wollen, with the nouns Wunsch, Bitte, etc.

2. If the indirect statement is conceived as a question, it is introduced by *ob* (whether) or by interrogative pronouns and adverbs. Other indirect statements are introduced by *daß*.

3. Sentences dependent on the clause introduced by *daß*, *ob* or interrogative adjectives or adverbs, have their verbs in the subjunctive, unless they represent the author's own conceptions: *Er sagte, daß er nicht gekommen sei*, weil Geschäfte ihn verhindert *h ä t t e n*, he said that he had not come because engagements *had* prevented him. But: *Er sagte, daß die Uhr, die er h ä t t e*, ihm nicht gehöre, he said that the watch which he *had*, did not belong to him.

4. Dependent clauses may be indirectly stated by means of the subjunctive, even if there is no principal sentence introduced by *daß*: *Ihr wünscht euch einen tugendhaften Sohn*, der eures Hauptes greise Locken *e h r e*, you wish

daß sein Bruder krank sei (wäre), he believed that his brother *was* sick. Ich antwortete, daß ich seinen Vorschlag annähme (annehme), I answered that I *accepted* his proposition. Man sagt, daß der Krieg ausgebrochen sei, it is said that war *has* broken out. Ich fragte ihn, ob er mich verstanden habe, I asked him, whether he *had* understood me. Es wurde allgemein verlangt, daß der General angreifen sollte, it was universally demanded that the general *should* make the attack. Sie wünschten, daß unsere Abreise aufgeschoben werden möchte, they wished that our departure *might* be postponed. Man erwartete, daß der Präsident das Gesetz nicht bestätigen werde, it was expected that the President *would* not confirm the law. Die Bemerkung, daß er den Brief nie gesehen habe, war un wahr, the remark that he *had* never seen the letter was untrue.

4. The subjunctive is used, in clauses introduced by daß, if the action is represented as necessary, expedient or desirable: Es ist erforderlich, daß dies geschehe, it is necessary that this *should* be done. Es ist unser Interesse, daß dies Gesetz geändert werde, it is our interest that this law *should* be changed. If such and similar sentences contain a fact that has actually happened, the indicative must be used even if in English the potential should

for a virtuous son, to honor the grey hair of your head. Dieser Vorschlag wurde verworfen, da er mit dem Vortheile der Stadt unvereinbar sei, this proposition was rejected since *it was held* that *it was* incompatible with the interest of the city.

5. The conjunction daß may be omitted, which is almost always the case in long QUOTATIONS. Sentences in which the conjunction daß is thus understood are arranged in the common order (§ 106. 5. 8). Er behauptete, der Brief sei ihm nie eingehändigt worden, he asserted (*that*) the letter had never been handed to him.

6. As to the TENSES of the subjunctive, a distinction must be made whether the principal verb is in a past tense or not. If the principal verb is in a past tense, three cases must be distinguished: a) if the stated action has happened at the time of the statement, the present or imperfect is used. The imperfect is always used if in the PLURAL of the present the subjunctive could not be distinguished from the indicative. Er sagte, daß seine Söhne noch in Berlin seien (or wären), but: er sagte, daß seine Söhne sich in Berlin befanden (not befinden), he said that his sons *were* in Berlin. b) If the stated action has happened BEFORE the statement, the perfect or pluperfect of the subjunctive is used: Er sagte, daß er dein Buch vor zwei Jahren verloren habe or hätte, he said that he *had* lost your book two years ago. c) If the stated action had not yet happened at the time of the statement, either the future subjunctive or the conditional is used in the clause; Er hoffte, daß du seinem Wunsche genügen werdest or würdest, he hoped that you *would* satisfy his wish. See Pr. C. p. 65.

If the principal verb is in a present tense, the subjunctive of the clause is in the PRESENT if the stated action is coincident with the time of the principal verb: Er wähnt, daß du abwesend seiest, he supposes that you *are* absent. If the stated action has happened before the time of the principal verb, the subjunctive is in the PERFECT: Er behauptet, daß du den Brief erhalten habest, he asserts that you *received* the letter. If the stated action lies in the future, the subjunctive is generally not used. After verbs of wishing the subjunctive present of mögen (möge) is employed.

ad, ich bebaure, daß sich dies  
use of this subjunctive generally

conjunctions damit (or daß if it  
als daß, if preceded by adject-  
im Pläze, damit ihm Niemand z u-  
fönnen), he hastened to the place  
Er war zu eifrig, als daß er die  
erfen sollen), he was too zealous to  
he should have noticed the interruption).  
or imperfect; the subjunctive after  
of the indirect subjunctive (No. 3),  
perfect if the principal verb is a present,

or pluperfect) is used (optionally with  
if the principal sentence contains a nega-  
relative clause: Ich kenne Niemanden, der dies  
not know anybody that tried this. Er hat  
Ansprüchen entgegenstände (or ent-  
tain anything contrary to thy claims (that  
ful).

(optionally with the indicative) is used after  
introduced by was auch, wer auch, wo auch, etc.

(in the same tenses as required by the indirect  
used in connection with denn in the meaning *unless*.

sentences corresponding to reality require the indicative:  
dies so ist (not sei). But hypothetical sentences (that is  
correspond to reality) require the following construction:  
conditional clause (introduced by wenn, if) has its verb in the  
relative imperfect or pluperfect.\*

principal sentence has its verb either in the conditional (which  
usual), or in the imperfect or pluperfect of the main verb or  
modal auxiliary (können, dürfen, müssen, etc.). See Pr. C. p. 65.  
so handelte (or handeln sollte), würde er angesehen sein  
angesehener), if he would act thus, he should be more respected.  
ste (würde) sich nicht ereignet haben, wenn du hier gewesen  
this would not have happened if you had been here. \*  
the omission of wenn see Pr. C. p. 102.

The conditional clause is frequently replaced by single words (sonst,  
beinahe, etc.), by phrases or infinitives, and sometimes entirely under-

writers use here often the conditional. But it is considered

stood: Diese Preise wären sonst für wohlfeil gehalten worden, these prices would have been *formerly* considered cheap (i. e. if we lived in former times). Ich wäre beinahe gefallen, I *nearly* had fallen (i. e. if I had not been favored by fortune or accident). Ueber den Vorzug eines dieser Männer zu streiten, wäre unangemessen, to *dispute* on the preference of either of these men would be inexpedient (i. e. if we would dispute). Gute Geister würde ich lieben, good ghosts I would love (i. e. the ghosts if they were good). Du solltest Zimmermann werden, you *should* turn a carpenter (i. e. if you were wise).

#### § 106. ORDER OF WORDS.

1. ORDER OF ATTRIBUTES. Adjectives are generally placed before their nouns, even if they are accompanied by adjuncts: Ein mit großer Mühe erungener Sieg, a victory obtained with great difficulty.

Genitives are placed either before or after their nouns; in the former instance the governing noun drops its article: Meines Bruders Kind, or das Kind meines Bruders.

2. Adjectives have their adjuncts generally before them: Der Mann ist des Hasses würdig, the man is worthy of hatred.

3. Among the adjuncts of verbs the personal pronouns stand first/ then follow the case-objects, and last the adverbial adjuncts.

4. The verb is placed differently according to the three orders of arrangement: a) common order; b) inverted order; c) dependent order.

5. The common order takes place if the sentence is not introduced by a subordinating conjunction (§ 90.) or a relative, and begins with the subject or its attributes.

6. The inverted order takes place if the verb or one of its adjuncts opens the sentence, which is the case in direct questions and for the sake of emphasis.

7. The dependent order takes place in sentences introduced by relative adjectives or adverbs, by subordinating conjunctions, and in indirect questions. See the foot-note (No. 2.) on page 87.

8. In the common order the finite verb (auxiliary, or simple tense of the verb) stands immediately after the subject and its adjuncts, and the infinitives and participles occupy the last place, so that all adjuncts of the verb stand between the finite verb and the infinitive or participle. If the finite verb is a separable compound the prefix stands at the end of the sentence. But infinitives with *zu* may follow the prefix of the finite verb:

Große Begebenheiten ereignen sich oft unerwartet.

Der Verbrecher ist aus dem Gefängniß entsprungen.

Die Sonne geht um sechs Uhr auf.

Die Sonne ist um acht Uhr untergegangen.

Er fängt an sich zu fürchten, or: er fängt sich zu fürchten an.

9. In the inverted order the finite verb is placed before the subject and its adjuncts, the arrangement being in all other respects the same as in the common order.



Oft ereignen sich große Begebenheiten unerwartet.  
Es ist ein Verbrecher aus dem Gefängniß entsprungen.  
Um sechs Uhr geht die Sonne auf.  
Um acht Uhr ist die Sonne untergegangen.  
Fängt er an sich zu fürchten?

10. In the dependent order the finite verb is placed after all other words of the sentence.


Weil große Begebenheiten sich oft unerwartet ereignen.  
Der Verbrecher, der aus dem Gefängniß entsprungen ist.  
Es ist Frühling oder Herbst, wenn die Sonne um sechs Uhr aufgeht.  
Er hat mich gefragt, wann du zurückkehren wirst?

Exceptions:

- a) The auxiliary in the dependent order is frequently omitted:  
Nachdem er dies mehrfach wiederholt (hatte), nahm er Abschied.
  - b) Those verbs whose participles take the form of an infinitive, have their auxiliaries *before* the object-infinitive (without *zu*):  
Da er unsern Vorschlag nicht hat annehmen wollen, sind wir unverrichteter Sache fortgegangen.
-

## List of Strong Verbs.

### REMARKS.

1. Forms in ordinary type are those alone in use.
  2. Forms in full faced type indicate that weak forms are also found, but that the strong form is preferable.
  3. Forms in parenthesis are less usual than the weak or the regular strong forms.
  4. Forms in Roman characters are only poetical.
  5. No compounds are given. Verbs found in composition only, are given under the first letter of the root, with a hyphen prefixed to it.
-  The irregular weak verbs are appended in a separate list.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present Indic- ative Sing.</i>	<i>Imper- ative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Indicative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
backen, bake	bäcst, bächt	.....	bak	bäke	gebacken
-bären	(-bierst, -biert)	.....	-bar	-bäre	-boren
Only gebären, bear (bring forth).					
beißen, bite	.....	.....	biß	bisse	gebissen
bergen, hide	birgst, birgt	birg	barg	bärge (bürge)	geborgen
bersten, burst	(birfstest, birfst)	(birfst)	barst (borst)	(bärste) börste	geborsten
biegen, bend	beugst, beugt	.....	bog	bäge	gebogen
bieten, offer	beutst, beut	beut	bot	böte	geboten
binden, bind	.....	.....	band	bände	gebunden
bitten, beg	.....	.....	bat	bäte	gebeten
blasen, blow	bläsest, bläset	.....	blies	bliese	geblasen
bleiben, stay	.....	.....	blieb	bliebe	geblieben
bleichen, bleach	.....	.....	blieh	bliehe	gebleichen
As transitive only of WEAK conjugation.					
braten, roast	brätst, brät	.....	(briet)	(briete)	gebraten
brechen, break	brichst, bricht	brich	brach	bräche	gebrochen
-beihen	.....	.....	-bieh	-biehe	-diehen
Only gedeihen, thrive.					
-berben	-birbst, -birbt	-birb	-barb	(-bärbe) -bürbe	-borben

Only verderben, perish, spoil.

As transitive (spoil, destroy), WEAK or STRONG.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present Indicative Sing.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Indicative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
dingen, engage	.....	.....	<b>ding</b> (ding)	(dünge)	gedungen
dreſchen, thrash	drifcht, driſcht	drifch	draſch (droſch)	dräſche dröſche	gedroſchen
-drieſſen	-dreuſſeſt -dreuſſt	.....	-droß	-dröſſe	-droſſen

Only verdrrieſſen, vex.

bringen, urge	.....	.....	<b>bring</b>	<b>bränge</b>	gebrungen
effen, eat	iſſeſt, ißt	iß	aß	äße	gegeſſen
-fahren, drive	fährſt, fährt	.....	fuhr	führe	gefahren
-fallen, fall	fällſt, fällt	.....	fiel	fiele	gefallen
ſalten, fold	.....	.....	<b>weak</b>	<b>weak</b>	<b>geſalten</b> (intransitive)
fangen, catch	fängſt, fängt	.....	ſing (ſieng)	ſinge	gefangen
Thus anfangen, begin; empfangen, receive and other compounds.					
ſechten, fight	(ſichteſt), ſicht	<b>ſicht</b>	ſocht	föchte	geſochten
-ſehlen	-ſiechſt, -ſieht	-ſiehl	-ſahl	(-ſähle) -föhle	-ſohlen

Thus befehlen, command; empfehlen, recommend, and ſeveral further compounds of theſe. **ſehlen**, fail, is **weak**.

finden, find	.....	.....	<b>ſand</b>	<b>ſände</b>	gefunden
ſlechten, braid	<b>ſlichteſt</b> , ſicht	<b>ſlicht</b>	<b>ſocht</b>	<b>ſöchte</b>	geſochten
-ſleißen	.....	.....	-ſieß	-ſiſſe	-ſiſſen

Only beſleißen, take pains.

ſiegen, fly	ſieugſt, ſieugt	ſieug	ſlog	ſlöge	geſlogen
ſiechen, ſlee	ſleuchſt, ſleucht	ſleuch	ſloh	ſlöhe	geſlohen
ſtießen, flow	ſleuſſeſt, ſleuſſt	ſleuſſ	ſloß	ſlöſſe	geſloſſen

fragen, ask	(frägſt, frägt)	.....	(frug)	(früge)	.....
-------------	-----------------	-------	--------	---------	-------

(Fragen is better conjugated **weak** throughout.)

freſſen, eat (of beaſts)	ſriſſeſt, frißt	ſriß	ſraß	ſräße	gefreſſen
frieren, freeze	.....	.....	ſror	ſröre	gefroren
gähren, ferment or gären	.....	.....	<b>gohr</b> (gor)	<b>göhre</b> (göre)	<b>gegohren</b> (ge- goren)
geben, give	giebeſt (gibſt) giebt (gibt)	gieb (gib)	gab	gäbe	gegeben
gehen, go	.....	.....	ging (gieng)	ginge (gienge)	gegangen
gelten, be valued	giſtſt, giſt	giſt	galt	gölte (gälte)	gegolten

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present Indicative Sing.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Indicative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
-geffen	-giffest, -giffst	-giß	-gaß	-gäße	-geffen
Only vergeffen, forget.					
gießen, pour	geussest, geusst	geuss	goß	göffe	gegossen
-ginnen	.....	.....	-gann	-gänne, -gönne	-gonnen
Only beginnen, begin.					
gleichen, resemble	.....	.....	glich	gließe	geglichen
gleiten, glide	.....	.....	glitt	glitte	geglitten
glimmen, gleam	.....	.....	glomm	glömme	geglommen
graben, dig	gräbst, gräbt	.....	grub	grübe	gegraben
greifen, seize	.....	.....	griff	griffe	gegriffen
halten, hold	hältst, hält	.....	hielt	hielte	gehalten
hängen, hängen	hängst, hängt	.....	hing	hinge	gehangen
hang (intrans.)	.....	.....	(hieng)	(hienge)	.....

The transitive hängen, hang, generally conjugates *WEAK*.

hauen, beat	.....	.....	hieb	hieße	gehauen
heben, raise	.....	.....	hob (hub)	höbe (hübe)	gehoben
heißen, call, be called	.....	.....	hieß	hieße	geheißen
helfen, help	hilfst, hilfst	hilf	half	hülfe (hälfe)	geholfen
heisen, chide	.....	.....	(tiff)	(tiffe)	(gefiffen)
-tiefen or -füren	.....	.....	-lor	-löre	-loren

Only erkiefen or erküren, single out.

klimmen, climb	.....	.....	klomm	kömmme	geklimmen
klingen, sound	.....	.....	klang	klänge	geklingen
kneifen, kneipen, pinch	.....	.....	kniff, knipp	kniffe, knippe	gekneiffen, geknippen
kommen, come	(kömmst, kömmt)	.....	kam	käme	gekommen
kriechen, creep	krenchst, krecht	kreuch	froch	fröche	gekrochen
laden, load	lädst, lädt	.....	lad	läde	geladen
lassen, let	lässest, läßt	.....	ließ	ließe	gelassen
laufen, run	läufst, läuft	.....	lief	ließe	gelaufen
leiden, suffer	.....	.....	litt	litte	gelitten
leihen, lend	.....	.....	lieh	liehe	geliehen
lesen, read	liesest, ließt	lies	las	läse	gelesen
liegen, lie (down)	.....	.....	lag	läge	gelegen
-lieren	.....	.....	-lor	-löre	-loren

Only verlieren, lose.

-lingen	.....	.....	-lang	-länge	-lungen
---------	-------	-------	-------	--------	---------

Only gelingen, succeed, and mißlingen, fail.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present Indic- ative Sing.</i>	<i>Imper- ative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Indicative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
--------------------	---------------------------------------	--------------------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------

**löschen**, extinguish **löschtst, löscht** **lös** **lös** **gelöscht**  
In transitive meanings always **WEAK**; in intransitive nearly always **STRONG**.

**lügen**, lie (tell a lie) **leugst, leugt** **leug** **log** **löge** **gelogen**

**mahlen**, grind ..... **WEAK** **WEAK** **gemahlen**

**meiden**, shun ..... **mied** **miede** **gemieden**

**messen**, milk (milfst, milst) ..... (moll) (mölle) **gemessen**

**messen**, measure **miffst, mißt** **miß** **maß** **mäße** **gemessen**

**nehmen**, take **nimmst, nimm** **nahm** **nähme** **genommen**  
**nimmt**

**-nemen** ..... **-nas** **-näse** **-nemen**

Only **genesen**, recover one's health.

**-niesen** **-neussst, -neuss** **-noß** **-nüsse** **-nossen**  
**-neusst**

Only **geniesen**, eat, enjoy.

**pfeifen**, whistle ..... **pfiff** **pfiffe** **gepfiffen**

**pflegen**, cherish ..... (pflog) (pfloge) (gepflogen)

In some phrases the strong forms are more usual than the weak ones.  
**pflegen**, be wont, conjugates **WEAK** only.

**preisen**, praise ..... **pries** **prieße** **gepriesen**  
**quellen**, gush **quillst, quillt** **quill** **quoll** **quölle** **gequollen, (swollen)**  
**forth**

**quellen**, make swell, conjugates **WEAK**.

**rächen**, revenge ..... **roch** **röche** **gerochen**

**rathen**, advise **räthst, räth** ..... **rieth** **riethe** **gerathen**

**reiben**, rub ..... **rieb** **riebe** **gerieben**

**reißen**, tear ..... **riß** **risse** **gerissen**

**reiten**, ride ..... **ritt** **ritte** **geritten**

**riechen**, smell **reuchst, reucht** **roch** **röche** **gerochen**

**ringen**, wrestle ..... **rang** **ränge (ränge)** **gerungen**

**rinnen**, run (flow) ..... **rann** **rönnete (rännte)** **geronnen**

**rufen**, call ..... **rief** **riefe** **gerufen**

**salzen**, salt ..... **WEAK** **WEAK** **gesalzen**

**saufen**, drink **saufst, sauft** ..... **soß** **soßte** **gesoffen**  
(of beasts and drunkards)

**saugen**, suck ..... **sog** **söge** **gesogen**

**schaffen**, create ..... **schuf** **schüfe** **geschaffen**

**schaffen** in **verschaffen**, procure, and in the meaning 'work' is **WEAK**.

**schallen**, sound ..... **scholl** **schölle** **geschollen**

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present Indicative Sing.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Indicative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
-ſchehen	-ſchiehſt, -ſchieht	-ſchieh	-ſchah	-ſchähe	-ſchehen

Only geſchehen, happen.

ſcheiden, part, sever	.....	.....	ſchied	ſchiede	geſchieden
ſcheinen, seem	.....	.....	ſchien	ſchiene	geſchienen
ſchelten, scold	ſchiltſt, ſchilt	ſchilt	ſchalt (ſcholt)	ſchölſte (ſchälte)	geſcholten
ſcheren, shear	(ſchierſt, ſchiert)	(ſchier)	ſchor	ſchöre	geſchoren
ſchieben, shove	.....	.....	ſchob	ſchöbe	geſchoben
ſchießen, shoot	.....	.....	ſchoß	ſchöſſe	geſchoſſen
ſchinden, flay	.....	.....	ſchand (ſchund)	ſchünbe (ſchände)	geſchunden
ſchlafen, sleep	ſchläfſt, ſchläft	.....	ſchlief	ſchliefe	geſchlafen
ſchlagen, strike	ſchlägſt, ſchlägt	.....	ſchlug	ſchläge	geſchlagen
rathſchlagen, deliberate, conjugates WEAK.					
ſchleichen, slink	.....	.....	ſchlich	ſchliche	geſchlichen
ſchleifen, whet	.....	.....	ſchliff	ſchliſſe	geſchliffen

In some senses it conjugates WEAK.

ſchleißen, slit	.....	.....	ſchliß	ſchliſſe	geſchliſſen
ſchließen, shut	ſchleuſſeſt, ſchleuſt	ſchleuſſ	ſchloß	ſchloſſe	geſchloſſen
ſchlingen, sling	.....	.....	ſchlang	ſchlänge (ſchlünge)	geſchlungen
ſchmeißen, throw	.....	.....	ſchmiß	ſchmiſſe	geſchmiſſen
ſchmelzen, melt	ſchmilzeſt, ſchmilzt	ſchmilz	ſchmolz	ſchmölze	geſchmolzen

Usually WEAK in transitive meaning.

ſchnauben, pant	.....	.....	ſchnob	ſchnöbe	geſchnoben
ſchneiden, cut	.....	.....	ſchnitt	ſchnitte	geſchnitten
ſchrauben, screw	.....	.....	ſchrab	ſchräbe	geſchroben
-ſchreden, be terrified	-ſchridſt, -ſchridt	-ſchrid	-ſchraß (-ſchrack)	-ſchräle (-ſchräde)	-ſchroden

Only in compounds (erſchreden, aufſchreden, etc.). In transitive meaning WEAK.

ſchreiben, write	.....	.....	ſchrieb	ſchriebe	geſchrieben
ſchreien, cry	.....	.....	ſchrie	ſchrie	geſchrien
ſchreiten, stride	.....	.....	ſchritt	ſchritte	geſchritten
ſchroten, grind	.....	.....	ſchriet	.....	geſchroten
ſchwären, ulcerate	(ſchwierſt, ſchwiert)	.....	ſchwor (ſchwur)	ſchwöre (ſchwüre)	geſchworen
ſchweigen, be silent	.....	.....	ſchwieg	ſchwiege	geſchwiegen

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present Indicative Sing.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Indicative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
schwollen, swell	schwillt, schwillt	schwill	schwoll	schwölle	geschwollen
In transitive meanings <b>WEAK.</b>					
schwimmen, swim	.....	.....	schwamm (schwomm)	schwämme (schwämme)	geschwommen
schwinden, vanish	.....	.....	schwand	schwände (schwände)	geschwunden
schwingen, swing	.....	.....	schwang	schwänge (schwänge)	geschwungen
schwören, swear	.....	.....	schwor or schwur	schwöre or schwüre	geschworen
sehen, see	siehst, sieht	sieh	sah	sähe	gesehen
sein, be	bin, bist, ist	sei	war	wäre	gewesen
sieden, boil	.....	.....	sott	sötte	gesotten
singen, sing	.....	.....	sang (sunge)	sänge (sänge)	gesungen
sinken, sink	.....	.....	sank(sunk)	sänke(sänke)	gesunken
sinnen, meditate	.....	.....	sann	sönne (sänne)	gesonnen
sitzen, sit	.....	.....	sass	säße	gesessen
spalten, split	.....	.....	<b>WEAK</b>	<b>WEAK</b>	gespalten
spien, spit	.....	.....	spie	spiee	gespien
spinnen, spin	.....	.....	spann	spönn (spänne)	gesponnen
spießen, slit	.....	.....	spieß	spieße	gespiessen
sprechen, speak	sprichst, spricht	sprich	sprach	spräche	gesprochen
sprießen, sprout	spreusset, spreusst	spreuss	sproß	sprosse	gesprossen
springen, spring	.....	.....	sprang	spränge	gesprungen
stechen, prick	stichst, sticht	stich	stach	stäche	gestochen
stechen, stick	(stichst, sticht)	(stich)	stach (stach)	stäche(stäche)	.....
stehen, stand	.....	.....	stand (stund)	stünde or stände	gestanden
stehlen, steal	stiehst, stiehlt	stiehl (stehle)	stahl	stähle (stähle)	gestohlen
steigen, step up	.....	.....	stieg	stiege	gestiegen
sterben, die	stirbst, stirbt	stirb	starb	stürbe (stärbe)	gestorben
stieben, disperse	.....	.....	stob	stöbe	gestoben
stinken, stink	.....	.....	stank	stänke (stinke)	gestunken
stoßen, thrust	stößest, stößt	.....	stieß	stieße	gestoßen
streichen, stroke	.....	.....	strich	striche	gestrichen

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present Indicative Sing.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Indicative.</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
streiten, struggle	.....	.....	stritt	stritte	gestritten
thun, do	.....	.....	that (that)	thäte	gethan
tragen, carry	trägst, trägt	.....	trug	trüge	getragen
treffen, hit	triffst, trifft	triff	traf	träfe	getroffen
treiben, drive	.....	.....	trieb	triebe	getrieben
treten, step	trittst, tritt	tritt	trat	träte	getreten
triefen, drip	treufst, treuft	treuf	troß	tröffe	(getroffen)
trinken, drink	.....	.....	trank	tränke (tränkte)	getrunken
trügen, deceive	treugst, treugt	treug	trog	tröge	getrogen
wachsen, grow	wächst, wächst	.....	wuchs	wüchse	gewachsen
wägen, weigh	.....	.....	wog	wöge	gewogen

wägen has transitive meaning and is conjugated either **STRONG** or **WEAK**.

waschen, wash	wäscht, wäscht	.....	wusch	wüsche	gewaschen
---------------	----------------	-------	-------	--------	-----------

weben, weave	.....	.....	web	wöbe	gewoben
-wegen	.....	.....	-wog	-wöge	-wogen

Only bewegen, move, which in some senses is conjugated **STRONG**, in others **WEAK**.

weichen, yield	.....	.....	wich	wiche	gewichen
weisen, show	.....	.....	wies	wiese	gewiesen
werben, woo	wirbst, wirbt	wirb	warb	würbe (würbe)	geworben

werden, become	wirft, wird	.....	ward or wurde	würde	geworden
----------------	-------------	-------	---------------	-------	----------

werfen, throw	wirft, wirft	wirf	warf	würfe (würfe)	geworfen
---------------	--------------	------	------	------------------	----------

winden, wind	.....	.....	wand	wände	gewunden
-winnen	.....	.....	-wann	-wänne	-wonnen

Only gewinnen, win.

zeihen, accuse	.....	.....	zieh	ziehe	geziehen
ziehen, draw	zuehst, zuecht	zuech	zog	zöge	gezogen

zwingen, force	.....	.....	zwang	zwänge	gezwungen
----------------	-------	-------	-------	--------	-----------



## Irregular Weak Verbs.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Pres. Ind. Sing.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indicative.</i>	<i>Imperf. Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
brennen, burn	reg.	brannte	brennte	gebrannt
bringen, bring	reg.	brachte	brächte	gebracht
däuchten (impers.) think	es däucht	es däuchte	es däuchte	gedäucht
denken, think	reg.	dachte	dächte	gedacht
dürfen, be allowed	darf, darfst, darf	durfte	dürfte	gedurft (dürfen)
haben, have	hast, hat	hatte	hätte	gehabt
kennen, know	reg.	kante	kante (kännte)	gekannt
können, be able	kann, kannst, kann	konnte	könnte	gekonnt (können)
mögen, like	mag, magst, mag	mochte	möchte	gemocht (mögen)
müssen, be obliged	muß, mußt, muß	mußte	müßte	gemußt (müssen)
nennen, call	reg.	nannte	nennte (näunte)	genannt
senden, send	reg.	sandte (sendete)	sendete	gesandt or gesendet
sollen, be obliged	soll, sollst, soll	reg.	reg.	gesollt (sollen)
wenden, turn	reg.	wandte (wendete)	wendete	gewandt or gewendet
wissen, know	weiß, weißt, weiß	wußte	wüßte	gewußt (wissen)
wollen, be willing	will, willst, will	wollte	wollte	gewollt (wollen)

## I N D E X.

---

**NOTE** The Roman figures refer to the Courses, I, denoting the Practical, II, the Theoretical Course. The English figures refer to the pages.

### A.

- Æ**, pronunciation I, 2; æ changed into *ā* in strong verbs I, 90. See *vowels*.
- ab**, prepos., used only in compounds II, 71.
- aber**, place of I, 97; coord. conjunction II, 65; difference from *sondern* I, 72; II, 65; difference from *allein* II, 65.
- accentuation** I, 7; on which syllable the accent is placed I, 7; in compound words, *ib.*; in compound verbs II, 60.
- accusative**, answers to the objective case without preposition II, 3; case of the direct object I, 15; II, 78; when it has the same form as the nominative I, 15; acc. singular of adjective pronouns formed by the ending *en* I, 15; dropping of the *e* in the ending I, 15; acc. of personal pronouns precedes the dative I, 54; verbs with two accusatives II, 79; no noun governs an accusative II, 79; accusative of space II, 80; acc. of time, measure, weight, and value II, 81; verbs that govern the objective in English may generally be rendered by verbs governing the accusative II, 78.
- acht Tage**, a week I, 60.
- adjectives** II, 13; adjectives and adj. pronouns agree in gender with their nouns I, 13; II, 13. 75; predicative adj. not declined I, 39; II, 13; weak declension of adj. I, 39; II, 14; II, 27. 28; weak and strong declension of adj. I, 40; II, 14; strong declension of adj. I, 41; II, 14. 28. 29; adj. used as adverbs I, 72; II, 68. 69; adj. generally preceded by their adjuncts I, 53; placed before their governing nouns together with their adjuncts I, 105; when their nouns are understood II, 13; placed after their nouns, they do not agree with them II, 75; indeclinable adj. II, 75; absolute adj. denoting persons are placed in the masculine gender, denoting things in the neuter gender II, 77; what pronominal adjectives may be used absolutely II, 77; inflection of absolute adjectives II, 77; adj. governing the genitive II, 79; adj. governing the dative mostly correspond to English adj. with *to* or *for* II, 79; adj. generally not construed with the accusative II, 79.

- adverbs**, how formed I, 72; II, 68. 69; their force and function in the sentence II, 68; derived from adjectives II, 68; comparison of adv. II, 69. 74; pronominal adv. II, 70 foll.
- after**, conjunction, translated by *nachdem* I, 81.
- agreement**, II, 75 foll.
- all**, when translated by *ganß* II, 22.
- allein**, coordinating conjunction II, 65; difference from *aber* II, 65.
- aller**, declined I, 32; II, 21; *alles*, used of persons II, 21. 77.
- allezeit**, indefinite adverb, II, 72.
- als**, *when*, I, 47; I, 74; subordinating conjunction II, 65; *als*, *as* II, 66; *als*, *than* II, 66; it requires the verb to be at the end I, 76; *als* ob II, 65; stands with the subjunctive II, 89; ob omitted in *als* ob II, 66; *als* omitted II, 66; *als*, distinguished from *wie* II, 66; *als* *baß*, idiomatically used after *zu* II, 66; requires the subjunctive in this connection II, 89.
- although**, how translated I, 102.
- an**, preposition, when it governs the accusative, and when the dative I, 93; II, 62.
- ander**, declines strong or weak I, 48; II, 23.
- anstatt**, preposition with gen. II, 61.
- any**, when not translated II, 20.
- apodosis** and **protasis**, I, 59; II, 67.
- apposition**, nouns in app., how they agree II, 75.
- ärgern**, personal and impersonal use of the verb I, 87.
- arrangement** of sentences, opened by objects, adverbs or prepositions I, 72; arr. of clauses in which the participles of modal auxiliaries have the form of infinitives I, 108; arr. of sentences which have compound verbs as predicates II, 60. See *order* of words.
- article**, repetition of I, 9, 15; definite art. I, 9. 14. 19; II, 3; indefinite art. I, 10. 15. 18. 20; II, 3; different usage of articles in German and English II, 74. 75.
- as**, how translated I, 13; II, 66.
- at** before nouns of places, how rendered I, 29.
- auch** in connection with interrogatives idiomatically used in a concessive sense II, 67; subjunctive in such clauses II, 89.
- augment**, when used in the past participle I, 71; II, 53; augment of compound verbs II, 60.
- aus**, preposition governing the dative II, 61.
- außer**, preposition with the dative II, 61; *außer wenn*, used as conjunction, *except if*, *unless* II, 67.
- außerhalb**, preposition with the genitive II, 61.
- auxiliaries** of the compound tenses I, 99; II, 38; verbs with the auxiliary *sein* II, 39; *werden* as aux. II, 39; I, 74. 77. 80.

## B.

- balb**, adverb, compared II, 74.
- Bär**, declined II, 5.
- Bediene**, difference from *Diener* and *Recht* I, 76.
- before**, conjunction, translated by *ehe* or *bevor* I, 81.
- bei**, preposition with dative I, 24; II, 61. 62.
- beides** and **beide** distinguished II, 26.
- betrüben**, *fid*, used personally, and impersonally I, 87.

**bevor**, subordinating conjunction II, 65.  
**binnen**, preposition with dative II, 61.  
**bis**, *till*, prepositional adverb I, 60; in connection with prepositions, II, 62; how translated and construed I, 94; II, 62; subordinating conjunction II, 65.  
**bisweilen**, *sometimes*, indefinite adverb II, 73.  
**bleiben**, construed with a predicate-

nominative II, 78; conjugated with *sein* I, 99.  
**es bittt**, I, 86.  
**both**, how rendered II, 26.  
**brennen**, imperfect of I, 58; II, 35; subjunctive imperfect I, 62; II, 35.  
**bringen**, imperfect of I, 58; II, 35; subjunctive imperfect I, 62; II, 35.  
**but**, when translated by *sondern* I, 72.  
**by**, preposition, how translated I, 21. 74. 94.

### C.

**C**, consonant, used only in foreign words I, 4.  
**cases**, theory of II, 77 foll; when the general equivalents of cases can not be employed II, 77, note; what is meant by adverbial cases II, 79.  
**Ch**, pronunciation I, 4.  
**cities**, gender of I, 29.  
**clock**, rendering of the phrases with, I, 95. 96.  
**comparatives**, formed I, 32; II, 30; change their radical vowels I, 32; II, 30; comparative of adverbs II, 69. 74.  
**comparison of adjectives** II, 30; irregular comp. II, 31; of adverbs II, 74.  
**compound verbs**, see *verbs*; comp. nouns, see *nouns*.  
**conditional mood**, conjugation of I, 64; formation 2, 39; cond. mood in hypothetical clauses I, 65; II, 89.  
**conditional sentences**, generally require the indicative II,

89; when they must have the verb in the subjunctive or conditional, see *hypothetical clauses*; cond. clauses understood I, 65; II, 89. 90.  
**conjugation**, strong and weak, preface V, note; model of conjugation of weak verbs II, 34; of strong verbs II, 37. 38; irregular conj. of weak verbs I, 58; II, 35; of strong verbs II, 35 foll.  
**conjunctions**, II, 65 foll.; clauses introduced by subordinate conjunctions require the verb to be at the end II, 65.  
**consonants pronounced** I, 4 foll.  
**to continue**, when translated by *fortsetzen*, and when by *fortfahren* I, 110.  
**correlative adjectives** I, 26; cor-rel. adverbs II, 74.  
**could**, translated by *könnte* I, 65; in clauses introduced by *that* I, 65; English potential pluperfect with *could*, how translated I, 108.  
**countries**, gender of I, 29.

### D.

**da**, adverb I, 23; adverb of time and loose connective II, 72; relative adverb II, 73; demonstrative adverb II, 74; combined with prepositions

I, 98; II, 64. 72; when these combinations must be used I, 99; *da*, conjunction (*since*) II, 65; *da*, *since*, requires the verb to be at the end, I, 53.

**damals**, adverb of time, II, 70.  
**damit**, *in order that*, subordinating conjunction II, 65; subjunctive after *damit* II, 89.  
**danken**, with dative II, 78.  
**dann**, adverb of time, II, 70.  
**darum**, adverb of cause II, 70.  
**das ist**, *that is* I, 39; **das sind**, *they are* I, 40.  
**das**, *was* I, 26; II, 19.  
**daß**, subordinating conjunction II, 65; clauses introduced by *daß* require the verb at the end I, 54; with subjunctive I, 62; II, 88. 89; *daß* omitted I, 63; II, 88; in connection with prepositions (*für, außer, ohne*) and prepositional adverbs (*dadurch*, etc.) II, 66. Clauses with *daß* preceded by a prepositional adverb, compounded with *da*, are equivalents to English participial constructions II, 86.  
**dative**, how rendered II, 3; formation I, 19; when the dative drops the ending *e* II, 7; generally precedes the accusative I, 19; dat. of personal pronouns generally follows the accusative I, 54; verbs governing the dative II, 78; verbs requiring two objects generally have the direct object in the accusative, and the indirect in the dative II, 78; no noun governs a dative II, 79; adjectives with dative II, 79; dative after prepositions II, 61. 62; adverbial dative is either possessive or the dative of the interested person II, 80; ethical dative II, 80.  
**declension**, strong and weak, preface V, note; decl. of nouns I, 14. 17. 19. 30. 71; II, 5; of nouns in *er, el, en* I, 19. 33; II, 7; of nouns in *e* I, 34; II, 6; weak declension of nouns II, 5; scheme of weak declension II, 5; of nouns in

*e* with genitives in *en* II, 6; scheme of strong declension II, 6; nouns that soften the radical vowel in declension II, 7. 8; feminine nouns of the strong declension II, 7; nouns strong in the singular, and weak in the plural II, 9; declension of proper names I, 28; II, 9 foll.; declension of the definite article, I, 19; II, 3; of the indefinite article I, 20; II, 3; of possessives I, 20; II, 24; of pronominal adjectives I, 14. 17. 18. 19. 31; II, 15 foll.; of ordinary adjectives I, 39. 40. 44; II, 27 foll.; mixed declension II, 29; declension of comparatives and superlatives II, 31; of adjectives whose nouns are understood I, 40; of cardinal and ordinal numerals I, 42; II, 26.  
**dein**, possessive adjective II, 23.  
**deiner**, genitive of *du* II, 23.  
**demonstratives** I, 9. 12. 18. 31; II, 17; they agree with their nouns I, 13; demonstrative adverbs II, 70; their roots *hi* and *da* II, 70.  
**denken**, formation of imperfect I, 58; II, 35; subjunctive imperfect I, 62; II, 35.  
**denn**, *for*, coordinating conjunction II, 65; idiomatically used with a subjunctive (*es sei denn*) in the meaning *unless*, II, 67. 89.  
**der**, *die*, *das*, article I, 9. 14. 19; II, 3; relative pronoun II, 15. 16; its difference from *welcher* II, 16, note; *der* as demonstrative II, 17. 18; in the plural used instead of *diejenigen*, *die* II, 19; *der* instead of *derjenige* II, 19.  
**derer**, genitive plural of the demonstrative *der*, used instead of *deren* II, 19.  
**derjenige**, *der* (*welcher*); *der*, *welcher* I, 26. 27; II, 17. 18.

- derſelbe, demonstrative pronoun II, 17. 18.  
 beſhalb, deswegen, demonstrative adverbs of cause II, 70; whether to spell *beß* or *beß* II, 64.  
 beſto in connection with *je* II, 65.  
 dich, accusative of *du* II, 11; used as reflexive II, 12.  
 dieſer, demonstrative adjective, declined I, 14. 17. 19; II, 14. 17; *dieſe* contracted into *dieß* II, 14.  
 dießſeit, preposition with genitive II, 61.  
 diminutives, how formed I, 102.  
 diphthongs, pronunciation of I, 3.  
 dir, dative of *du* II, 11; used reflexively II, 12.  
 doch, coordinating conjunction II, 65; *doch*, *dennoch*, adverbs, not translated in the apodosis after the equivalents of *although* I, 102.  
 es donnert I, 86.  
 drei, cardinal numeral, when inflected II, 26.  
 drohen, with dative II, 78.  
 du, pers. pronoun, declined II, 11.  
 durch, preposition with accusative II, 61; exponent of the passive agent I, 74; in compound verbs, II, 58.  
 dürfen, modal auxiliary, conjugated I, 107; II, 57; peculiarities of *dürfen* II, 55.  
 dürſten, used personally and impersonally I, 87.

## E.

- ē, vowel, pronunciation I, 2; when dropped in the declension of nouns II, 7; when dropped or retained in the conjugation of verbs I, 50. 90. 91; not dropped in the subjunctive I, 62; when dropped in the imperative of strong verbs I, 90; II, 36; changed into *i* in the present and imperative of strong verbs I, 90.  
 each other, how translated I, 83.  
 eben, adverb, corresponding to the adjective *derſelbe* II, 72; used in connection with pronouns II, 72.  
 ehe, before, subordinating conjunction II, 63; requires the verb to be at the end I, 81.  
 ein, indefinite article II, 3; declines strong or weak I, 48; II, 20. 23. 26.  
 ein, indefinite pronominal adjective (*some, any*), II, 20; used substantively II, 20; instead of the oblique cases of *man* II, 12. 13; *ein*, numeral II, 25; when the form *einß* must be used II, 26.  
 einander, each other, I, 83.  
 einbilden, *ſich*, has the reflexive pronoun in the dative I, 83.  
 einiger, indefinite adjective II, 20; translated by *some* or *any* II, 21.  
 eitel, meaning *nothing but* is indeclinable II, 75.  
 eſen, *ſich*, personally and impersonally used I, 87.  
 emphatic form of the English verb, how expressed I, 19.  
 entgegen, preposition with dative II, 61.  
 entlang, preposition with dative II, 61.  
 entſagen, governs dative II, 78.  
 entweder — oder, coordinating conjunction II, 65.  
 er, *ſie*, *es*, personal pronoun I, 45; declined II, 11.  
 erſt, not till I, 94.  
 es, impersonal pronoun, omitted I, 34. 87; II, 54.  
 etliſher, instead of *einiger* II, 21.  
 etwa, indefinite adverb, meaning of II, 72.

- etwas**, substantive pronoun I, 23; II, 13; used adjectively II, 20.  
**euſ**, dative and accusative plural of **bu** II, 11; used reflexively II, 12.  
**euer**, genitive plural of **bu** II, 11; possessive adjective II, 23.  
**everything**, rendered by **alles** II, 21.

F.

- falls**, used as conjunction instead of **wenn, if** (in the case that) II, 66.  
**feminine nouns**, indeclinable in the singular I, 17; feminine personal nouns in in I, 102; II, 4; they double the **n** in the plural II, 6; feminine gender of derivatives II, 4.  
**a few**, translated by **einige** or **etliche** II, 22; *not a few* translated by **nicht wenige** or **manche** II, 22.  
**folgen**, conjugated with **sein** I, 99; governs the dative II, 78.  
**fractions** I, 46; II, 27; mixed fractions, how translated I, 56.  
**fragen**, construction with double accusative II, 79.  
**Frau, Fräulein**, as titles, translated I, 46.  
**freuen, sich**, personal and impersonal use of I, 87.  
**früheren**, differently translated I, 86; personally, and impersonally used I, 86.  
**für**, preposition with accusative I, 15; II, 61.  
**fürchten**, *to be afraid*, when used with a reflexive pronoun, and when without I, 89.  
**Fürst**, declension of II, 5.  
**future tense**, how formed I, 60; subjunctive of the future I, 64; both futures used of probable present or past events II, 83.

G.

- ©**, letter, different pronunciation of I, 5.  
**gan**, when not declined II, 75.  
**gar**, adverb of intensity, its meaning II, 73.  
**ge**, see *augment*.  
**gegen**, preposition with the accusative II, 61.  
**gegenüber**, preposition with the dative II, 61.  
**gehen**, irregularly conjugated I, 91; II, 37.  
**gehören**, governs the dative II, 78.  
**gelingen**, conjugated with **sein** I, 99.  
**gemäß**, preposition with the dative II, 61.  
**gender of nouns in general** II, 4; of persons and things I, 9; II, 4; of countries and cities I, 29; II, 5; gender denoted by the ending in several derivatives I, 102; II, 4; natural gender of nouns II, 4; no common gender in German II, 4; gender of diminutives II, 4; gender of compound nouns II, 5; nouns with two genders II, 5; pronominal subjects followed by a predicate noun, generally placed in the neuter gender II, 76; the neuters **alles** and **was** used of persons II, 77; neuter gender applied to indicate persons of either sex II, 77.  
**genitive**, how formed I, 17; how translated II, 3; genitive of nouns I, 71; when the vowel **e** in the ending **es** is dropped II, 7; genitive in **en** of nouns II, 6; genitive preceding its governing noun corresponds to the English possessive case I, 73; genitive singular of

adjectives generally assumes the weak inflection II, 29; genitive governed by prepositions II, 61; genitive after verbs II, 78; after adjectives II, 79; most of the simple verbs governing a genitive, also

construed with an accusative II, 78; genitive after nouns II, 79; adverbial genitive II, 79.

gern, adverb, how compared II, 74.

Gräf, declension of II, 5.

## H.

haben, *to have*, the present conjugated I, 13; imperfect I, 48; is an irregular verb II, 35; paradigm of II, 40; what verbs require haben as an auxiliary I, 99; II, 38. 39. 89; *Zust haben* I, 49.

halb, numeral II, 27; when not declined II, 75.

halber, preposition with the genitive II, 61.

heint, *to-night*, used in local dialects II, 72.

heißen, *to be called* I, 28; construed with a predicate-nominative II, 78.

Selb, declined II, 5.

helfen, governs the dative II, 78.

her, particle II, 71; combined with prepositions I, 98; with adverbs II, 70; meaning of her in these connections I, 99; difference from hin I, 99; II, 70.

Herr, declined II, 5; Herr, Frau, Fräulein as titles I, 46.

heuer, adverb of time, *in this year*, II, 72.

heute, adverb of time, *to-day*, II, 72.

hi, demonstrative root II, 70. 72.

hier, demonstrative adverb of place II, 70; in composition with prepositions II, 72.

hin, particle II, 71; combined with prepositions and adverbs I, 98; II, 70; difference from her I, 99; II, 70.

hinter, preposition with dative and accusative II, 61.

Hirt, declined II, 5.

however (much), wenn auch noch so I, 103.

hungern, used personally and impersonally I, 86.

hypothetical clauses require the finite verb to be in the subjunctive I, 64. 65; the verb in the principal sentence of such clauses is in the conditional or the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect I, 65; II, 89.

## I.

3, vowel, pronunciation I, 2.

ich, pers. pronoun, declined II, 11; used as noun II, 11.

if, translated by wenn or ob I, 74; even if, how translated I, 102.

ich, dative singular of er II, 11.

ihn, accusative singular of er II, 11.

ihnen, dative plural of er II, 12.

ih, how translated I, 10; dative fem. sing. of er (sic, es) II, 11; possessive adjective (*her, their*) II, 23.

ihrer, genitive plural of er (sic, es) II, 11. 12.

immer, indefinite adverb II, 72.

imperative drops the ending *e* in certain strong verbs I, 90; II, 36; imper. passive formed with the auxiliary sein II, 50.

imperfect of sein I, 47; of haben I, 48; of weak verbs I, 58; II, 33; when the *e* in the ending etc is dropped or retained I, 58; II, 33;



- irregular imperfect of *bringen*, *ben-  
ten*, *nennen*, *senden*, etc., of *wollen*,  
*können*, *müssen* I, 58; II, 35; im-  
perfect passive I, 77; the imperfect  
is the tense of the narrative II, 83.
- impersonal expressions, more  
numerous in German than in Eng-  
lish I, 87; impersonal form may be  
given to almost all sentences I, 87;  
when preferred to the personal  
form I, 87; impersonal verbs I, 86;  
II, 54 foll.; impersonal passive II,  
54. 82; reflexive impersonals II,  
54. 55; impersonal passives of verbs  
of believing, saying, etc., followed  
by *daß*, correspond to English per-  
sonal constructions II, 84.
- in, preposition with dative or ac-  
cusative I, 24. 93; II, 62; in com-  
position takes the form *ein*, if gov-  
erning the accusative II, 71.
- indefinite pronouns II, 12. 20;  
indefinite adverbs II, 70. 72.
- indem, *indessen* subordinating  
conjunctions II, 65.
- infinitive, termination of I, 50;  
II, 32; with *zu* I, 50; place of the  
inf. in the sentence I, 50; inf. with  
*zu* in compound verbs I, 72; inf.  
without *zu* idiomatically rendered  
I, 91; used as a neuter noun I,  
105; II, 47. 83; inf. after *sähe* I,
- 109 after *um* I, 72; inf. of transitive  
verbs after *lassen* has a passive mean-  
ing II, 81; active inf. with *zu* after  
*sein* has a passive meaning II, 81. 82.  
83; subject-infinitive is used with or  
without *zu* II, 83; object-infinitive is  
generally preceded by the preposi-  
tion *zu* II, 83. 84; verbs requiring the  
object-infinitive without *zu* II, 84;  
the English construction of the ob-  
ject-infinitive in connection with a  
substantive object after verbs of  
wishing, expecting, believing, declar-  
ing, considering is not used in Ger-  
man II, 84; the English infinitive  
after *so as* must be rendered by  
finite verbs after *so daß* II, 85.
- innerhalb, preposition with gen-  
itive II, 61.
- inseparable compound verbs, see  
*verbs*.
- interrogative adjectives de-  
clined I, 24. 31; interr. substantive  
pronouns declined I, 23; II, 10  
foll.; interrogative adverbs II, 70.
- inversion of the apodosis I,  
58.
- irgend in combination with in-  
definite pronouns II, 13. 20. 21;  
in combination with relative ad-  
verbs II, 72.
- it, how rendered I, 23.

#### J. (Consonant.)

- ja, affirmative particle I, 45.
- je, *jemaß*, indefinite adverbs of  
time II, 72; indefinite adjectives  
and adverbs derived from the root  
*je* II, 73.
- je — desto, subordinating conjunc-  
tions II, 65.
- jedenfalls, indefinite adverb II, 72.
- jeder, indefinite adjective I, 39;  
used substantively II, 20.
- jedermann, indefinite substantive  
pronoun II, 12; declined II, 13.
- jederzeit, indefinite adverb of  
time, synonym of *immer* II, 72.
- jedesmal, indefinite adverb of  
time II, 72.
- jemand, indefinite substantive pro-  
noun I, 23; II, 12; declined II, 13.
- jener, demonstrative adjective, de-  
clined I, 18; II, 17. 21.
- jenzeit, preposition with genitive  
II, 61.
- jetzt, demonstrative adverb of time  
II, 70.

K.

- kalt**, es ist (mir) I, 86.  
**kein**, indefinite adjective, declined I, 40; II, 21; used substantively II, 20.  
**keinenfalls**, indefinite adverb II, 72.  
**keineswegs**, indefinite adverb II, 72.  
**kennen**, formation of imperfect I, 58; II, 35; distinguished from **wissen** I, 58; subjunctive imperfect I, 62; II, 35.  
**es klopft** I, 86.  
**kommen**, es kommt mir vor, als ob I, 86.  
**können**, modal auxiliary, conjugated I, 49; II, 55; imperfect I, 58; peculiarities of conjugation II, 55.  
**kraft**, preposition governing the genitive II, 61.

L

- lange**, preposition with genitive or dative II, 61.  
**lassen**, when the active infinitive depending on it has a passive meaning II, 81.  
**laut**, preposition with genitive II, 61.  
**lauter**, meaning *nothing but* is indeclinable II, 75.  
**es lautet** I, 86.  
**lehren**, construction of II, 79.  
**leid thun**, impersonally used I, 87.  
**lesen**, to read, how distinguished from **vorlesen**, **ablesen** I, 84.  
**letters**, use of capitals in German I, 9.  
**Leute**, plural of **Mann** I, 105.  
**little**, translated I, 37; II, 22; *not a little*, **nicht wenig** II, 22.

M.

- machen**, how distinguished from **thun** I, 49.  
**mal**, numerals with **mal** I, 46; II, 26. 73.  
**man**, indefinite substantive pronoun, how to translate I, 54; II, 12; **man**, *one*, *they* I, 35; **man** as equivalent of the passive voice II, 82.  
**mancher**, **manch** ein, declined II, 23; **manchmal**, indefinite adverb II, 73.  
**Mann**, different from **Mensch** I, 37.  
**may**, when to be translated by **dürfen** I, 108.  
**mehr**, indeclinable I, 37; II, 23; different from **mehrere** II, 23; used as adverb II, 73; corresponding to *longer* II, 73.  
**mein**, possessive adj., see *possessives*; used predicatively II, 24.  
**meiner**, der **meinige**, possessive adj., substantively used I, 43. 44; II, 24; **das Meinige**, **Deinige**, etc., my, they, etc. property II, 25; **die Meinigen**, **Deinigen**, etc. my, thy, etc. friends II, 25.  
**meiner**, genitive of **ich** II, 11.  
**Mensch**, declined II, 5; distinguished from **Mann** I, 37.  
**mich**, accusative singular of **ich** II, 11; reflexively used II, 12.  
**might**, translated by **könnte** I, 65; by **möchte** I, 65.  
**mine**, how to translate I, 43; II, 24 foll.  
**mir**, dative singular of **ich** II, 11; as a reflexive II, 12.  
**mißlingen**, conjugated with **sein** I, 99.  
**mit**, preposition governing the dative I, 24; II, 61.

**mittelst**, preposition governing the genitive II, 61.  
**möchte**, how translated I, 65.  
**modal auxiliaries** II, 54; their participles take the forms of infinitives I, 108; II, 35; their peculiarities in conjugation II, 55.  
**mögen**, conjugated I, 107; II, 55 foll.; meaning of I, 108; peculiarities of conjugation II, 55.  
**moods** of the verb II, 32.

**Mr., Miss, Mrs.**, how translated I, 46.  
**much, many**, II, 22; the adverb *much* generally translated by *seht* II, 73.  
**must** with negatives translated by *dürfen* I, 108.  
**müssen**, conjugated I, 54; II, 57; imperfect, how formed and rendered I, 58; peculiarities in conjugation II, 55; *müßte*, how rendered I, 65.

# N.

**nach**, preposition with the dative II, 61; before names of places I, 29.  
**nachdem**, *after*, subordinating conjunction II, 65; requires the verb to be at the end I, 81.  
**nachst**, preposition with dative II, 61.  
**Narr**, how to decline II, 5.  
**neben**, preposition with dative or accusative I, 93; II, 62.  
**nebst**, preposition with dative II, 61.  
**nehmen**, *to take*, governs the dative of the person from whom something is taken II, 78.  
**nein**, adverb I, 45; nature of II, 72.  
**nennen**, formation of the imperfect I, 58; II, 35; subjunctive imperfect I, 62; II, 35; in the active construed with two accusatives II, 79; in the passive requires a predicate-nominative II, 78.  
**nicht**, indefinite adverb II, 72; *nicht nur* — *sondern auch*, used as coordinating conjunctions II, 65.  
**nichts**, indefinite substantive pronoun I, 23; II, 13.  
**nie, niemals**, indefinite adverbs II, 72.  
**Niemand**, indefinite substantive

pronoun I, 23; II, 12; declined II, 13.  
**nirgend**, indefinite adverb of place II, 72.  
**nicht, not yet** I, 14; *nicht einmal*, once more I, 60.  
**nominative** II, 3; case of the subject and predicate II, 77; when a predicate-nominative is required II, 78; English predicate-nominatives after verbs of considering, electing, etc., generally rendered by the preposition *zu* or *für* II, 78; nominative with the force of a vocative II, 78.  
**nouns** II, 4 foll.; declined I, 14. 17. 19. 30; plurals of nouns formed by the ending *er* I, 32; by the ending *en* I, 34; when nouns denoting measurement or weight are not inflected I, 38; II, 76; how predicate-nouns, and nouns in apposition agree with their governing words II, 75.  
**numerals** I, 34; cardinals II, 25; when they are inflected II, 26; ordinals I, 42; II, 26; numeral adverbs II, 26; II, 70.  
**nügen**, governs a dative II, 78.

# O.

**ob**, *whether, if*, subordinating conjunction II, 65; with subjunctive

I, 63; II, 88; translated by *if* I, 74; separated or dropped in the com-

- pound conjunctions *obgleich*, *ob-*  
*schon*, *obwohl* I, 102.
- oberhalb*, preposition with the  
genitive II, 61.
- obgleich*, *obschon*, and the subor-  
dinating conjunctions synonymous  
to it I, 102; II, 65; they require  
the verb to be at the end I, 102.
- objective case, German equiv-  
alent of II, 3; English verbs gov-  
erning the objective case generally  
rendered by German verbs with  
the accusative II, 78; when ren-  
dered by the dative I, 50; II, 78.
- occupy, *to*, how translated I,  
76.
- Ödø*, inflection of II, 5.
- oder*, coordinating conjunction II,  
65.
- of, English preposition, translated  
by the genitive II, 3; when trans-  
lated by the preposition *von*, and  
when by the genitive I, 21. 28; not  
translated after nouns of measure-  
ment and weight I, 38; not trans-  
lated after fractions I, 46; in what  
other instances it is not translated,  
I, 42; II, 78.
- officer, how to translate I, 86.
- oft, indefinite adverb of time II, 73;  
comparison of II, 74.
- ohne*, preposition with the accusa-  
tive II, 61; followed by an infiniti-  
ve I, 109.
- one another, how translated I,  
83.
- order of words II, 90, 91. See  
*Arrangement*.

## P.

- participle, present, how formed  
I, 105; past participle, how formed  
I, 70. 71; without augment in in-  
separable compounds, and in verbs  
with the ending *iren* I, 71; II, 33;  
past participles of strong verbs have  
the ending *en* I, 71; past participles  
of the modal auxiliaries and some  
other verbs (*lassen*, *hören*, *sehen*, *hei-*  
*ßen*, *heißen*) often take the form of  
infinitives I, 108; II, 55; future par-  
ticiples of the passive with *zu*, used  
attributively II, 85; participles de-  
clined and compared I, 105; II, 48.  
85; place of the past participle I,  
14; II, 90; participles and their  
adjuncts placed before their gov-  
erning nouns I, 105; II, 90; past  
participles after *kommen* with the  
force of a present participle II, 85;  
past participles with the force of an  
imperative II, 85; participles with  
the force of adjectives II, 85; in-  
stances in which the German lan-  
guage admits of participial con-  
structions II, 85. 86; participial  
constructions cannot be formed by  
means of auxiliaries II. 85; parti-  
cipial constructions generally used  
to express an accompanying action  
II, 85; German equivalents for  
English participial constructions  
II, 85. 86; past participles after  
verbs of receiving II, 86.
- parts of speech II, 3.
- passive voice II, 48. 81; present  
indicative of the passive conjugated  
I, 74; imperfect indicative and sub-  
junctive I, 77; perfect and pluper-  
fect indicative and subjunctive I,  
80; complete paradigm of the pas-  
sive II, 49 foll. The passive voice  
formed by the auxiliary *werden* or  
*sein* I, 74. 77; II, 48; place of the  
participle of the auxiliary in the  
passive tenses II, 48; the passive  
agent (with *by*) expressed by *von*  
or *durch* I, 74; II, 82; impersonal

- passive II, 54. 82; German equivalents of the passive voice II, 81; what verbs admit of a complete passive voice II, 82.
- people, how translated I, 86.
- perfect indicative and subjunctive, how formed I, 62; II, 38; of the passive I, 80; German perfect tense used with the force of the English past tense I, 81; especially in detached statements II, 83; has the force of the English present-perfect II, 83.
- pflügen with the infinitive, how translated I, 109.
- pluperfect indicative and subjunctive conjugated I, 62; of the passive I, 80; the exceptional pluperfect „ich hätte gelobt gehabt“ II, 46.
- plural of nouns I, 30. 32. 34; of feminine nouns I, 59; plurals in er I, 32; II, 7. 8; irregular plurals II, 9; plurals in s II, 9; plurals of proper names II, 10; plural of the finite verb, when the subject consists of two nouns connected by und II, 75.
- possessive case, English, how translated into German I, 73; II, 3; the English possessive case rendered either by a genitive or by a compound noun II, 79.
- possessive pronominal adjectives I, 20. 11. 16; II, 23. 24. 43; declined like the indefinite article I, 18. 20; plural of I, 31; possessives of the third person used for address II, 23; possessives used predicatively II, 24; substantively I, 43; II, 24. 25; der meine, der meinige, meiner II, 25; possessive pronouns have a double agreement II, 76.
- potential mood, English, with *could* or *might* how translated I, 65; II, 58; potential with *should* or *would* after the conjunction *that*, how translated I, 65; the English potential pluperfect with *should* (*ought to*), *could* and *would*, how translated I, 80. 108; II, 58.
- potential verbs II, 35. 55.
- prefixes of separable compound verbs placed at the end I, 68; II, 59; they are often placed before the infinitive with zu I, 69; when they are not separated from the verb I, 69; II, 60; prefixes partly separable, partly inseparable I, 69; II, 59; compound prefixes II, 60.
- prepositions II, 61; with genitive, dative, and accusative I, 93; II, 61; requiring the dative or accusative II, 62; I, 93; II, 63; contracted with the article I, 93. 100; II, 64; often translated by prepositions differing from their original meanings I, 93. 94; II, 62; prepositions in connection with the adverbs wo, da, her, hin, hier I, 98. 99; II, 64. 71. 72.
- present indicative of the regular verb in the active voice I, 56; present subjunctive I, 62; present indic. of the passive I, 74; present subjunctive of the passive I, 77; present tense with the force of the English perfect I, 54; with the force of an English past tense II, 83; with the force of a future II, 83; with the force of an imperative II, 83.
- pronouns, personal I, 45. 49. 51; II, 10 foll.; place of I, 50; pronouns of the second person used only in relations of intimacy II, 12; pronouns of the third person in polite conversation used instead of the pronouns of the second person I, 11; II, 12; indefinite substantive pronouns II, 12; indefinite pronominal adjectives II, 20; used sub-

stantively II, 20; adjective pronouns agree with their governing words II, 75. See *relatives, demonstratives, possessives, reflexives, interrogatives*

pronunciation I, 2 foll.  
proper names, declension of I, 28; II, 9 foll.  
protasis and apodosis I, 59; II, 67.

## R.

*recht*, adverb of intensity, how to translate it II, 73.

*Recht haben*, to be right I, 13.

reciprocal pronouns, rendered by reflexives I, 83.

reflexive pronouns, their form and use I, 52; II, 12.

reflexive verbs, definition of II, 51; paradigms of I, 83; II, 52; how translated into English I, 83; English neuter verbs that have also an active meaning, generally rendered by German reflexives II, 51; reflexive verbs have generally the reflexive pronoun in the accusative I, 83; II, 52; ordinary transitive verbs may become reflexive II, 51; proper reflexives II, 51 foll.; they have no past participles II, 52; reflexive impersonals II, 54. 55. 82; reflexive verbs in connection with *lassen* have a passive meaning II, 81; reflexive verbs with or without *lassen* have often a passive

meaning II, 81; reflexive verbs governing the genitive II, 78.

*es regnet*, I, 86.

relative pronouns, declined I, 25. 31; agreement with their antecedents I, 25. 31; II, 76; examples of relative constructions II, 17; clauses introduced by relatives have the finite verb at the end I, 25; II, 65; if the antecedent of a relative is a personal pronoun of the first or second person, either the finite verb is placed in the third person, or the antecedent must be repeated II, 76; relative adverbs II, 70. 73; in correlation to demonstratives II, 74; subjunctive in relative clauses II, 89; clauses introduced by relatives must be separated by commas II, 73.

*rennen*, imperfect indicative, how formed I, 58; II, 35; imperfect subjunctive I, 62; II, 35.

to rise, translated by *aufstehen* or *aufgehen* I, 68.

## S.

ſ, ſ, ſ, when these characters for the German sound of *s* are used I, 6.

ß (sz) final, changed into ff after a short vowel when an ending is added to the word I, 32 (foot-note); II, 6.

*am* *nt*, preposition with the dative II, 61.

*ſcheinen*, connected with a predicate-nominative II, 78.

*ſchelten*, *ſchimpfen* in the passive, construed with a predicate-nominative II, 78; in the active

they require two accusatives II, 79.

*ſchmeicheln*, governs the dative II, 78; has the reflexive pronoun in the dative I, 83.

*ſchmerzen*, impersonally used I, 87.

*es ſchneit*, I, 86.

*ſehr*, the adverb of *viel* II, 73.

*ſein*, irregular verb II, 36; paradigm of II, 41 foll.; present indicative conjugated I, 8; imperfect I, 47; perfect I, 46; pluperfect I, 62;

- subjunctive of present and imperfect I, 62; of perfect and pluperfect I, 62; used impersonally (*es* iff *mir*) I, 86; used as auxiliary of the active voice instead of *haben* I, 99; II, 39; used as auxiliary of the passive instead of *werden* I, 74, 77; II, 48; takes *sein* as an auxiliary in the perfect II, 39.
- sein*, possessive adjective of the third person, see *possessive pronominal adjectives*.
- seiner*, genitive of *er* II, 11; genitive and dative feminine of *sein* I, 18, 20.
- seit*, *since*, preposition with the dative I, 34; II, 61; use of *seit* II, 62; subordinating conjunction II, 65.
- seitdem* subordinating conjunction, synonym of *seit* II, 65.
- self*, compounds with *self* correspond either to *selbst*, or to German reflexives I, 83.
- selten*, indefinite adverb of time II, 73.
- senden*, imperfect indicative I, 58; II, 35; imperfect subjunctive I, 62; II, 35.
- sentences*, dependent, require the finite verb to be at the end II, 65.
- separable compound verbs*, see *verbs*.
- shall*, corresponds to the auxiliary *werden* II, 39; when it must be translated by *sollen* I, 60.
- sich*, dative and accusative singular and plural of the reflexive pronoun of the third person I, 52; II, 12.
- sie*, personal pronoun of the third person, either nominative or accusative singular feminine, or nominative or accusative of the plural of all genders I, 45; II, 11, 12; if spelled with a capital, it has the meaning of a pronoun of the second person, in singular or plural I, 11.
- so* (*so, thus*), adverb of manner and intensity II, 70; *so* in the apodosis not translated I, 59; II, 67; I, 102; *so*, translated by *as* in the first part of a comparison I, 13; *so* followed by *auch*, idiomatically used in a concessive sense II, 67.
- so — als* (*as—as*), subordinating conjunctions II, 65; the *so* often combined with adverbs of time (*sobald, so oft* etc.), in which case the following *als* may be omitted II, 66.
- solder, solden*, demonstrative adjective II, 17.
- sollen*, translated by *shall* I, 60; peculiarities of conjugation II, 55, 58.
- some*, when not translated II, 20 foll.
- sonder*, obsolete preposition with accusative II, 61.
- sondern*, coordinating conjunction II, 65; when *but* must be translated by it I, 72; II, 65; *nicht nur — sondern auch* II, 65.
- sowohl — als auch*, have the force of coordinating conjunctions II, 65.
- statt*, *instead*, preposition with genitive II, 61.
- stehen*, *to stand*, irregular strong verb I, 91; II, 37.
- stets*, indefinite adverb of time, synonym to *immer* II, 72.
- subject*, placed in the nominative II, 77; when placed after the verb I, 72; II, 90; for subject-infinitive see *infinitive*.
- subjunctive formation of I*, 62; of the passive I, 77; of the future I, 64; of *können, müssen, haben, sein* I, 62; subjunctive of indirect statement II, 87, 88; after *daß* and *damit* I, 62; II, 87, 88; in relative clauses II, 89; in general concessive clauses II, 89; tenses of the subjunctive I, 63, 80; II, 88; subjunctive after verbs of asking and doubting fol-

- lowed by *ob* I, 63. 64. 65; II, 88; subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect in hypothetical clauses I, 65; II, 89; present subjunctive in imperative sentences II, 87; subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect in exclamatory sentences II, 87.
- substantives, German, written with capital initials I, 9.
- superlative, how formed I, 22; II, 30; irregular II, 31; predicative superlative with *am* II, 30; agreement of the predicative superlative in connection with the article II, 30; absolute and relative superlatives II, 69; adverbial superlative II, 69.
- syllabication I, 7.

## T.

- es tagt* I, 86.
- taufen*, construed with a double accusative II, 79; in the passive with a predicate-nominative II, 78.
- tenses of the verb, simple and compound II, 32; formation of compound tenses II, 38; use of the tenses of the subjunctive II, 88 foll.
- than*, how translated II, 66.
- that*, rendered by *daß* or *daß* I, 56; by *jener* I, 12; by *derjenige* I, 26. 27; by *daß* I, 54; II, 65; by *der*, *die*, *das* II, 16; *that* which, how translated I, 94.
- there is. *es ist*; there are, *es sind* I, 34; *es gibt* I, 36.
- Ther*, declension of II, 5.
- thun*, irregular strong verb I, 91; II, 57; how distinguished from *machen* I, 49.
- till*, translated I, 60. 94; not till, *erst* I, 94.
- time of the day I, 95. 96.
- titles I, 46.
- to and for before names of places rendered by *nach* I, 29; *to*, how translated I, 94.
- transitive verbs are those which govern the accusative as direct object II, 82.
- trögt*, preposition with the genitive II, 61.

## U.

- über*, preposition with the accusative or dative I, 93; II, 62.
- überall*, indefinite adverb of place II, 72.
- um*, preposition with the accusative II, 61; with the infinitive and *zu*, translated *in order that* I, 72; *um* — *willen*, compound preposition with the genitive II, 61.
- und*, *and*, coordinating conjunction II, 65.
- ungeachtet*, *in spite of*, preposition with genitive II, 61; *ungeachtet*, *although*, subordinating conjunction II, 65.
- unless*, translated by *wenn nicht*, *außer wenn*, *wenn nicht*, *es sei denn* *daß* II, 67.
- Unrecht haben*, to be wrong I, 13.
- uns*, *us*, dative and accusative plural of *ich*; used reflexively II, 12.
- unser*, possessive adjective I, 11; II, 23; genitive plural of *ich* II, 11.
- unter*, preposition with dative or accusative I, 93; II, 62.
- unterhalb*, preposition with genitive II, 61.
- unweit*, preposition with dative II, 61.



V.

verbs, II, 32 foll.; strong and weak verbs, Preface V, note; II, 32; paradigm of weak verbs II, 45; how the stem of a verb is found II, 32; irregular weak verbs II, 35. 99; emphatic form of verbs, how rendered I, 19. 21; progressive form, how rendered I, 21; paradigm of compound verbs I, 63; II, 59; inseparable compound verbs, how treated I, 68. 69; II, 58; separable compound verbs I, 68. 69; II, 59. 60; accent of compound verbs II, 60; strong verbs, how conjugated I, 90; II, 35 foll.; peculiarities of strong verbs I, 87; II, 36. 48; formulas of strong verbs II, 36; irregular strong verbs II, 36 foll.; list of strong verbs II, 92 foll.; impersonal verbs I, 86. 87; II, 54 foll.; the impersonal relation of verbs expressed by *es* II, 54; potential verbs (modal auxiliaries) II, 55 foll.; finite verbs in the plural, if the subject consists of coordinate nouns II, 76; finite verbs placed at the end in relative sentences, indirect questions, and clauses intro-

duced by subordinating conjunctions I, 25; II, 65. 90; thus in clauses introduced by *als* I, 47. 76; *wenn* I, 51; *weil* or *da* I, 53; *daß* I, 54; *während* I, 58; *bis* I, 60; *nachdem*, *ehe*, *bevor* I, 81; *obgleich*, etc. I, 102; verbs construed with a predicate-nominative II, 78; with a genitive II, 78; with a dative II, 78; with two accusatives II, 79; transitive verbs II, 82; voices of the verb II, 81.

*verdrießen*, to vex, personally and impersonally used I, 87.

*vermöge*, preposition with genitive II, 61.

*viel*, declension of I, 36; II, 22; difference of *viel* and *vieler* II, 22; adverbs corresponding to it II, 73; *vielmals*, indefinite adverb II, 73.

voices II, 81.

*von*, preposition with the dative I, 21; as passive agent I, 74.

*vor*, preposition with dative and accusative II, 62.

vowels, how pronounced I, 2 foll.; signs of length I, 4.

W.

*während*, during, preposition with the genitive I, 93; II, 61; subordinating conjunction (*while*) II, 65; requires the verb to be at the end I, 58.

*wann*, when, interrogative adverb of time I, 60. 74; II, 70'.

*warum*, why, interrogative adverb of cause II, 70; I, 13.

*was*, declined II, 10; how translated I, 23. 26. 27; takes the form *wo* in connection with prepositions I, 99; II, 11. 17; instead of *etwas* II, 13; *was*, used as a relative II, 15. 16; instead of *basjenige*, *was*

I, 27; II, 19; *was*, used of persons II, 77.

*was für*, *was für ein* II, 15.

*weder* — *noch*, neither — nor, coordinating conjunctions II, 65.

*wegen*, on account of, preposition with the genitive II, 61; compounds with *wegen*, (*deswegen*, *weswegen*) II, 64.

*weil*, because, subordinating conjunction II, 65; requires the verb to be at the end I, 53.

*welcher*, which, interrogative pronominal adjective, declined I, 24. 31; II, 15; *welch ein*, what a, II, 15.

- 16; *welcher* (who, which), relative pronoun I, 25. 31; II, 16; as a relative generally does not form a genitive II, 16; *welcher* (some), as indefinite II, 20. 21.
- wem*, dative sing. of *wer* I, 23; II, 10.
- wen*, accusative sing. of *wer* I, 23; II, 10.
- wenden*, imperfect indicative I, 58; imperfect subjunctive I, 62; II, 35.
- wenig*, *little*, *few*, declined I, 36; II, 22; *weniger*, declined II, 23; adverbs corresponding to *wenig* II, 73.
- wenn*, subordinating conjunction II, 65; translated by *if* I, 51. 74; by *when* I, 74; by *although* in combination with *gleich*, *schon*, *auch* I, 102; these combinations may be separated I, 102; *wenn* may be dropped I, 102; *wenn* requires the verb to be at the end I, 51; *wenn auch noch so*, *however (much)* I, 103; *wenn nicht*, *unless*, II, 67.
- wer*, *who*? interrogative substantive pronoun, declined I, 23; II, 10; used as indefinite pronoun with the force of *Jemand* (*somebody*) II, 13; instead of *derjenige*, *der* II, 19; *wer* not used as a relative II, 16.
- werden*, *to become*, I, 60; irregular verb II, 36; paradigm of II, 44; used as an auxiliary of the future and conditional II, 39; as auxiliary of the passive voice I, 74. 77. 80; II, 48; its past participle has no augment as an auxiliary I, 80; II, 49; omission of the participle *worden* I, 81.
- weshalb*, *weswegen*, *wherefore*, *from what (which) reason*, interrogative and relative adverbs of cause; spelling of II, 64.
- wessen*, genitive sing. of *wer* and *was*; cannot be used as a relative II, 16.
- what*, *how* translated I, 23. 24. 26. 27. 28.
- when*, translated by *wann* I, 60; by *wenn* I, 74; by *als* I, 47. 74.
- wider*, preposition with the accusative II, 61.
- widerstehen*, *to resist*, governs the dative II, 78.
- wie*, *as*, subordinating conjunction II, 65; distinguished from *als* II, 66; *wie*, interrogative adverb of manner and intensity (*how*?) II, 70; in combination with adjectives or other adverbs II, 70.
- der wievielfte*, interrogative numeral adjective I, 42; II, 26.
- will*, rendered by the future or by *wollen* I, 60.
- wir*, declined II, 11.
- wissen*, *to know*, conjugated I, 107; II, 57; construed with the infinitive with *zu* I, 109; II, 84; distinguished from *kennen*, *to know*, I, 58.
- without* before a verbal noun in *ing*, translated by *ohne zu* with an infinitive I, 109.
- wo*, *where*? interrogative and relative adverb II, 70. 73; I, 10; used as indefinite adverb (*somewhere*, *anywhere*) II, 72; *wo*, in connection with prepositions with the force of a relative pronoun I, 98; II, 11. 17. 64. 70; when these combinations must be employed I, 99; *wohin*, *woher* II, 70.
- wofern*, used with the force of a subordinating conjunction instead of *wenn* II, 66; *wofern nicht*, *unless* II, 67.
- wollen*, modal auxiliary, conjugated I, 51; II, 55 foll.; how the imperfect is translated I, 58; peculiarities of conjugation II, 55; when translated by *will* I, 60.
- Worte*, *words*, distinguished from *Wörter* II, 8.

w o b e n, *of what*, distinguished from w u n d e r n, personally and impersonally used I, 87.  
 b o n w o, *whence* I, 100.

Z.

3, pronunciation I, 7.

3 u, preposition with the dative, when translated by *to* I, 94; II, 61; as an adverb corresponds to *too* I, 12; II, 73; the preposition 3 u used instead of an accusative of space II, 81.

3 u f o l g e, preposition with the dative II, 61.

3 u w e i ß e n, *sometimes*, indefinite adverb of time II, 73.

3 u w i d e r, preposition with the dative II, 61.

3 w e i, numeral, when inflected II, 26.

3 w i ß c h e n, *between*, preposition with dative or accusative II, 62.









